

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  
**CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION**

PATENT NO. : 9,034,388 B2  
APPLICATION NO. : 12/057775  
DATED : May 19, 2015  
INVENTOR(S) : Bruheim et al.

Page 1 of 1

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

In the claims, column 38, lines 31-33 should be deleted and replaced with:

c) providing

i) dilapidated krill meal following said extraction comprising greater than 65% protein and less than 50 g/kg total fat.

Signed and Sealed this  
Twelfth Day of April, 2016



Michelle K. Lee  
*Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office*



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO., EXAMINER, ART UNIT, PAPER NUMBER, NOTIFICATION DATE, DELIVERY MODE. Includes application details for Inge Bruheim and examiner WARE, DEBORAH K.

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

docketing@casimirjones.com
pto.correspondence@casimirjones.com



**UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

Commissioner for Patents  
United States Patent and Trademark Office  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450  
www.uspto.gov

Patent No. 9034388  
Issued Date: 19 May, 2015  
Appl. No: 12/057,775  
Filed.: 28 March 2008

**PART (A) RESPONSE FOR CERTIFICATES OF CORRECTION**

This is a decision on the Certificate of Correction request filed 01 February 2016.

The request for issuance of Certificate of Correction for the above-identified correction(s) under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.322 and/or 1.323 is hereby:

(Check one)

Approved                       Approved in Part                       Denied

Comments:

**PART (B) PETITION UNDER 37 CFR 1.324 OR 37 CFR 1.48**

This is a decision on the petition filed \_\_\_\_\_ to correct inventorship under 37 CFR 1.324.

This is a decision on the request under 37 CFR 1.48, petition filed \_\_\_\_\_. In view of the fact that the patent has already issued, the request under 37 CFR 1.48 has been treated as a petition to correct inventorship under 37 CFR 1.324.

The petition is hereby:                       Granted                       Dismissed

The patented filed is being forwarded to Certificate of Corrections Branch for issuance of a certificate naming only the actual inventor or inventors.

/Renee Claytor/  
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 1651  
Technology Center 1600  
Phone: 571-272-8394

Certificates of Correction Branch email: CustomerServiceCoC@uspto.gov CoC Central Phone Number: (703) 756-1814



Patent No. 9,034,388  
Request for Certificate of Correction

Respectfully submitted,

CASIMIR JONES, S.C.

Dated: February 1, 2016

/J. Mitchell Jones/  
J. Mitchell Jones  
Reg. No. 44,174  
2275 Deming Way, Suite 310  
Middleton, WI 53562  
608 662 1277

**UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION**Page 1 of 1

PATENT NO. : 9,034,388

APPLICATION NO.: 12/057,775

ISSUE DATE : 19-May-2015

INVENTOR(S) : Inge Bruheim, Mikko Griinari, Snorre Tilseth, Sebastiano Banni, Jeffrey Stuart Cohn, Daniele Mancinelli

It is certified that an error appears or errors appear in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

In the claims, column 38, lines 31-33 should be deleted and replaced with:

c) providing

i) dilapidated krill meal following said extraction comprising greater than 65% protein and less than 50 g/kg total fat.

**MAILING ADDRESS OF SENDER (Please do not use customer number below):**

Casimir Jones SC  
2275 Deming Way, Suite 310  
Middleton, WI 53562

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.322, 1.323, and 1.324. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1.0 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: **Attention Certificate of Corrections Branch, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

*If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.*

## Privacy Act Statement

The **Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579)** requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (*i.e.*, GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

## Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775			
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-Mar-2008			
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS			
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim			
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones/Mallory Checkett			
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD			
Filed as Large Entity				
<b>Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)</b>				
<b>Description</b>	<b>Fee Code</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Sub-Total in USD(\$)</b>
<b>Basic Filing:</b>				
<b>Pages:</b>				
<b>Claims:</b>				
<b>Miscellaneous-Filing:</b>				
<b>Petition:</b>				
<b>Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:</b>				
<b>Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:</b>				
Certificate of Correction	1811	1	100	100

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
<b>Extension-of-Time:</b>				
<b>Miscellaneous:</b>				
<b>Total in USD (\$)</b>				<b>100</b>

## Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

<b>EFS ID:</b>	24777203
<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775
<b>International Application Number:</b>	
<b>Confirmation Number:</b>	1945
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim
<b>Customer Number:</b>	72960
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones/Mallory Checkett
<b>Filer Authorized By:</b>	John Mitchell Jones
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD
<b>Receipt Date:</b>	01-FEB-2016
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-MAR-2008
<b>Time Stamp:</b>	16:41:11
<b>Application Type:</b>	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

### Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$100
RAM confirmation Number	3564
Deposit Account	504302
Authorized User	JONES, J. MITCHELL

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

--	--	--	--	--	--

**File Listing:**

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Request for Certificate of Correction	14409US5ORD_RequestCertCorrection.pdf	78865 e102065c527c48713be6e1e0902a48cc10a1b5f7	no	2

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

2	Request for Certificate of Correction	14409US5ORD_CertCorrection Form.pdf	164978 1fd095619afa4504a9f0df783ac38383053f5e21	no	2
---	---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--	----	---

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

3	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30235 a34f7428035f9d713876c4534a287c9a3e2cf6dc	no	2
---	----------------------	--------------	---	----	---

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

<b>Total Files Size (in bytes):</b>			274078		
-------------------------------------	--	--	--------	--	--

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**

**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**

**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**

**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**



APPLICATION NO.	ISSUE DATE	PATENT NO.	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
12/057,775	05/19/2015	9034388	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	1945

72960 7590 04/29/2015  
Casimir Jones, S.C.  
2275 DEMING WAY, SUITE 310  
MIDDLETON, WI 53562

### ISSUE NOTIFICATION

The projected patent number and issue date are specified above.

#### **Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)** (application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment is 1181 day(s). Any patent to issue from the above-identified application will include an indication of the adjustment on the front page.

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (<http://pair.uspto.gov>).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Application Assistance Unit (AAU) of the Office of Data Management (ODM) at (571)-272-4200.

APPLICANT(s) (Please see PAIR WEB site <http://pair.uspto.gov> for additional applicants):

Inge Bruheim, Volda, NORWAY;  
Mikko Griinari, Espoo, FINLAND;  
Snorre Tilseth, Bergen, NORWAY;  
Sebastiano Banni, Cagliari, ITALY;  
Jeffrey Stuart Cohn, Camperdown, AUSTRALIA;  
Daniele Mancinelli, Orsta, NORWAY;

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The USA offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to encourage and facilitate business investment. To learn more about why the USA is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, and grow your business, visit [SelectUSA.gov](http://SelectUSA.gov).

Receipt date: 03/08/2011

12057775 - GAI: 1651

Doc code: IDS

Doc description: Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed

Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1636		
	Examiner Name			
	Attorney Docket Number	NATNUT-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S.PATENTS							Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	
	1	4119619		1978-10-10	ROGOZHIN SERGEI VASILIEVICH et al.		
	2	5434183		1995-07-18	LARSSON-BACKSTROM		
	3	6537787		2003-03-25	<del>GILDAS</del> Breton		
	4	6800299		2004-10-05	BEAUDOIN & MARTIN		
	5	5266564		1993-11-30	MODELELL et al		

Change(s) applied to document, /C.C.B./ 4/17/2015

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button. Add

U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS							Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	
	1	20030044495		2003-03-06	KAGAN and BRAUN		



## Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775			
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-Mar-2008			
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS			
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim			
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones/Mallory Checkett			
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD			
Filed as Large Entity				
<b>Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)</b>				
<b>Description</b>	<b>Fee Code</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Sub-Total in USD(\$)</b>
<b>Basic Filing:</b>				
<b>Pages:</b>				
<b>Claims:</b>				
<b>Miscellaneous-Filing:</b>				
<b>Petition:</b>				
<b>Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:</b>				
<b>Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:</b>				
Utility Appl Issue Fee	1501	1	960	960

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
<b>Extension-of-Time:</b>				
<b>Miscellaneous:</b>				
<b>Total in USD (\$)</b>				<b>960</b>

## Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

<b>EFS ID:</b>	22027720
<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775
<b>International Application Number:</b>	
<b>Confirmation Number:</b>	1945
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim
<b>Customer Number:</b>	72960
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones/Mallory Checkett
<b>Filer Authorized By:</b>	John Mitchell Jones
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD
<b>Receipt Date:</b>	10-APR-2015
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-MAR-2008
<b>Time Stamp:</b>	14:33:46
<b>Application Type:</b>	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

### Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$960
RAM confirmation Number	789
Deposit Account	504302
Authorized User	

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application filing, search, and examination fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

### File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Issue Fee Payment (PTO-85B)	14409US5ORD_IssueFeeTransmittal.pdf	96594	no	1
			9cc571f46d62e41920ac092236f683991b6cd33d		

### Warnings:

### Information:

2	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30610	no	2
			1ee84de6076c8f4dbaaab430995198fca0170829		

### Warnings:

### Information:

**Total Files Size (in bytes):** 127204

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

#### New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

#### National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

#### New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**



NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

72960 7590 04/08/2015
Casimir Jones, S.C.
2275 DEMING WAY, SUITE 310
MIDDLETON, WI 53562

EXAMINER
WARE, DEBORAH K
ART UNIT PAPER NUMBER

1651
DATE MAILED: 04/08/2015

Table with 5 columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO.

12/057,775 03/28/2008 Inge Bruheim AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD 1945
TITLE OF INVENTION: BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS

Table with 7 columns: APPLN. TYPE, ENTITY STATUS, ISSUE FEE DUE, PUBLICATION FEE DUE, PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE, TOTAL FEE(S) DUE, DATE DUE

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN THREE MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE DOES NOT REFLECT A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE IN THIS APPLICATION. IF AN ISSUE FEE HAS PREVIOUSLY BEEN PAID IN THIS APPLICATION (AS SHOWN ABOVE), THE RETURN OF PART B OF THIS FORM WILL BE CONSIDERED A REQUEST TO REAPPLY THE PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE TOWARD THE ISSUE FEE NOW DUE.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the ENTITY STATUS shown above. If the ENTITY STATUS is shown as SMALL or MICRO, verify whether entitlement to that entity status still applies.
If the ENTITY STATUS is the same as shown above, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.
If the ENTITY STATUS is changed from that shown above, on PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, complete section number 5 titled "Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)".
For purposes of this notice, small entity fees are 1/2 the amount of undiscounted fees, and micro entity fees are 1/2 the amount of small entity fees.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, or its equivalent, must be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted. If an equivalent of Part B is filed, a request to reapply a previously paid issue fee must be clearly made, and delays in processing may occur due to the difficulty in recognizing the paper as an equivalent of Part B.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

**PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL**

**Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: Mail Mail Stop ISSUE FEE  
 Commissioner for Patents  
 P.O. Box 1450  
 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450  
 or Fax (571)-273-2885**

**INSTRUCTIONS:** This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

72960                      7590                      04/08/2015  
**Casimir Jones, S.C.**  
 2275 DEMING WAY, SUITE 310  
 MIDDLETON, WI 53562

**Certificate of Mailing or Transmission**

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

(Depositor's name)
(Signature)
(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
12/057,775	03/28/2008	Inge Bruheim	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	1945

TITLE OF INVENTION: BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	UNDISCOUNTED	\$960	\$0	\$0	\$960	07/08/2015

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
WARE, DEBORAH K	1651	424-520000

<p>1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. <b>Use of a Customer Number is required.</b></p>	<p>2. For printing on the patent front page, list</p> <p>(1) The names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively, _____ 1</p> <p>(2) The name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed. _____ 2</p> <p>_____ 3</p>
---	---

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE \_\_\_\_\_ (B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY) \_\_\_\_\_

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent) :  Individual  Corporation or other private group entity  Government

<p>4a. The following fee(s) are submitted:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Issue Fee</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Advance Order - # of Copies _____</p>	<p>4b. Payment of Fee(s): (Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> A check is enclosed.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> The director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credits any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number _____ (enclose an extra copy of this form).</p>
---	---

5. **Change in Entity Status** (from status indicated above)

Applicant certifying micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29

Applicant asserting small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27

Applicant changing to regular undiscounted fee status.

**NOTE:** Absent a valid certification of Micro Entity Status (see forms PTO/SB/15A and 15B), issue fee payment in the micro entity amount will not be accepted at the risk of application abandonment.

**NOTE:** If the application was previously under micro entity status, checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to micro entity status.

**NOTE:** Checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to small or micro entity status, as applicable.

**NOTE:** This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.31 and 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications.

Authorized Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Typed or printed name \_\_\_\_\_ Registration No. \_\_\_\_\_



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 5 columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO.
12/057,775 03/28/2008 Inge Bruheim AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD 1945

72960 7590 04/08/2015
Casimir Jones, S.C.
2275 DEMING WAY, SUITE 310
MIDDLETON, WI 53562

EXAMINER

WARE, DEBORAH K

ART UNIT PAPER NUMBER

1651

DATE MAILED: 04/08/2015

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)
(Applications filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Office has discontinued providing a Patent Term Adjustment (PTA) calculation with the Notice of Allowance.

Section 1(h)(2) of the AIA Technical Corrections Act amended 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3)(B)(i) to eliminate the requirement that the Office provide a patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. See Revisions to Patent Term Adjustment, 78 Fed. Reg. 19416, 19417 (Apr. 1, 2013). Therefore, the Office is no longer providing an initial patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. The Office will continue to provide a patent term adjustment determination with the Issue Notification Letter that is mailed to applicant approximately three weeks prior to the issue date of the patent, and will include the patent term adjustment on the patent. Any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment determination (or reinstatement of patent term adjustment) should follow the process outlined in 37 CFR 1.705.

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at 1-(888)-786-0101 or (571)-272-4200.

## OMB Clearance and PRA Burden Statement for PTOL-85 Part B

The Paperwork Reduction Act (PRA) of 1995 requires Federal agencies to obtain Office of Management and Budget approval before requesting most types of information from the public. When OMB approves an agency request to collect information from the public, OMB (i) provides a valid OMB Control Number and expiration date for the agency to display on the instrument that will be used to collect the information and (ii) requires the agency to inform the public about the OMB Control Number's legal significance in accordance with 5 CFR 1320.5(b).

The information collected by PTOL-85 Part B is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

### Privacy Act Statement

**The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579)** requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation of the Patent and Trademark Act of 1980 or regulation.

<b>Examiner-Initiated Interview Summary</b>	<b>Application No.</b> 12/057,775	<b>Applicant(s)</b> BRUHEIM ET AL.	
	<b>Examiner</b> DEBBIE K. WARE	<b>Art Unit</b> 1651	

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

- (1) DEBBIE K. WARE. (3)\_\_\_\_\_.
- (2) J. MITCHELL JONES. (4)\_\_\_\_\_.

Date of Interview: 13 March 2015.

Type:  Telephonic  Video Conference  
 Personal [copy given to:  applicant  applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted:  Yes  No.  
If Yes, brief description: \_\_\_\_\_.

Issues Discussed 101 112 102 103 Others  
(For each of the checked box(es) above, please describe below the issue and detailed description of the discussion)

Claim(s) discussed: all pending claims.

Identification of prior art discussed: art of record.

**Substance of Interview**

(For each issue discussed, provide a detailed description and indicate if agreement was reached. Some topics may include: identification or clarification of a reference or a portion thereof, claim interpretation, proposed amendments, arguments of any applied references etc...)

Discussed the claims and claims 50 and 52-54 previously indicated as allowed on the record. Applicants' Representative agreed to cancel claim 55 in order to place the case into condition for allowance. Therefore, this interview will serve as Applicants' response to the last final office action on record and the Applicants' Representative authorized changes by Examiner Amendment to allow the case. All withdrawn claims were authorized as well to be canceled by Examiner Amendment. Applicants maintain their right to file one or more divisional applications to the non-elected claimed invention(s).

**Applicant recordation instructions:** It is not necessary for applicant to provide a separate record of the substance of interview.

**Examiner recordation instructions:** Examiners must summarize the substance of any interview of record. A complete and proper recordation of the substance of an interview should include the items listed in MPEP 713.04 for complete and proper recordation including the identification of the general thrust of each argument or issue discussed, a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed regarding patentability and the general results or outcome of the interview, to include an indication as to whether or not agreement was reached on the issues raised.

Attachment

/Deborah K. Ware/  
Deborah K. Ware  
Primary Examiner  
Art Unit 1651

<b>Notice of Allowability</b>	<b>Application No.</b> 12/057,775	<b>Applicant(s)</b> BRUHEIM ET AL.	
	<b>Examiner</b> DEBBIE K. WARE	<b>Art Unit</b> 1651	<b>AIA (First Inventor to File) Status</b> No

**-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address--**

All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) or other appropriate communication will be mailed in due course. **THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS.** This application is subject to withdrawal from issue at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313 and MPEP 1308.

1.  This communication is responsive to 3/13/2015.  
 A declaration(s)/affidavit(s) under **37 CFR 1.130(b)** was/were filed on \_\_\_\_\_.
2.  An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on \_\_\_\_\_; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.
3.  The allowed claim(s) is/are 50 and 52-54. As a result of the allowed claim(s), you may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at a participating intellectual property office for the corresponding application. For more information, please see [http://www.uspto.gov/patents/init\\_events/oph/index.jsp](http://www.uspto.gov/patents/init_events/oph/index.jsp) or send an inquiry to [PPHfeedback@uspto.gov](mailto:PPHfeedback@uspto.gov).
4.  Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).

**Certified copies:**

- a)  All    b)  Some    \*c)  None of the:
1.  Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
  2.  Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. \_\_\_\_\_.
  3.  Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this national stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

\* Certified copies not received: \_\_\_\_\_.

Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" of this communication to file a reply complying with the requirements noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.

**THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.**

5.  CORRECTED DRAWINGS ( as "replacement sheets") must be submitted.  
 including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment / Comment or in the Office action of Paper No./Mail Date \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the drawings in the front (not the back) of each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in the header according to 37 CFR 1.121(d).**
6.  DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL must be submitted. Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

**Attachment(s)**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)   | 5. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Examiner's Amendment/Comment       |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> Information Disclosure Statements (PTO/SB/08),<br>Paper No./Mail Date _____    | 6. <input type="checkbox"/> Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> Examiner's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit<br>of Biological Material | 7. <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____.                                  |
| 4. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Interview Summary (PTO-413),<br>Paper No./Mail Date _____.          |   |

/Deborah K. Ware/  
Deborah K. Ware  
Primary Examiner  
Art Unit 1651

Art Unit: 1651

### **EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT**

An examiner's amendment to the record appears below. Should the changes and/or additions be unacceptable to applicant, an amendment may be filed as provided by 37 CFR 1.312. To ensure consideration of such an amendment, it MUST be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee.

Authorization for this examiner's amendment was given in a telephone interview with J. Mitchell Jones on March 13, 2015.

The application has been amended as follows:

#### In the Claims

Claims 1-49 and 55-90, canceled .

Claims 50 and 52-54 are placed into condition for allowance.

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to DEBBIE K. WARE whose telephone number is (571)272-0924. The examiner can normally be reached on 9:30-6:00.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Taeyoon Kim can be reached on 571-272-9041. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Art Unit: 1651

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/Deborah K. Ware/  
Deborah K. Ware  
Primary Examiner  
Art Unit 1651

<b>Examiner-Initiated Interview Summary</b>	<b>Application No.</b> 12/057,775	<b>Applicant(s)</b> BRUHEIM ET AL.	
	<b>Examiner</b> DEBBIE K. WARE	<b>Art Unit</b> 1651	

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

- (1) DEBBIE K. WARE. (3)\_\_\_\_\_.
- (2) J. MITCHELL JONES. (4)\_\_\_\_\_.

Date of Interview: 13 March 2015.

Type:  Telephonic  Video Conference  
 Personal [copy given to:  applicant  applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted:  Yes  No.  
If Yes, brief description: \_\_\_\_\_.

Issues Discussed 101 112 102 103 Others  
(For each of the checked box(es) above, please describe below the issue and detailed description of the discussion)

Claim(s) discussed: all pending claims.

Identification of prior art discussed: art of record.

**Substance of Interview**

(For each issue discussed, provide a detailed description and indicate if agreement was reached. Some topics may include: identification or clarification of a reference or a portion thereof, claim interpretation, proposed amendments, arguments of any applied references etc...)

Discussed the claims and claims 50 and 52-54 previously indicated as allowed on the record. Applicants' Representative agreed to cancel claim 55 in order to place the case into condition for allowance. Therefore, this interview will serve as Applicants' response to the last final office action on record and the Applicants' Representative authorized changes by Examiner Amendment to allow the case. All withdrawn claims were authorized as well to be canceled by Examiner Amendment. Applicants maintain their right to file one or more divisional applications to the non-elected claimed invention(s).

**Applicant recordation instructions:** It is not necessary for applicant to provide a separate record of the substance of interview.

**Examiner recordation instructions:** Examiners must summarize the substance of any interview of record. A complete and proper recordation of the substance of an interview should include the items listed in MPEP 713.04 for complete and proper recordation including the identification of the general thrust of each argument or issue discussed, a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed regarding patentability and the general results or outcome of the interview, to include an indication as to whether or not agreement was reached on the issues raised.

Attachment

/Deborah K. Ware/  
Deborah K. Ware  
Primary Examiner  
Art Unit 1651

<b>Search Notes</b>  	<b>Application/Control No.</b>  12057775	<b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b>  BRUHEIM ET AL.
	<b>Examiner</b>  DEBBIE K WARE	<b>Art Unit</b>  1651

<b>CPC- SEARCHED</b>		
<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Examiner</b>
A61K2300/00   A61K31/122   A61K31/23   A61K31/683   A61K31/685   A61K35/612   A61K31/202   A61K45/06   A61K9/4858   C11B3/006	1/2015	dkw
A61K2300/00   A61K31/685   A61K31/122   A61K31/683   A61K35/612   A61K31/23   A61K31/202   A61K45/06   A61K9/2054   A61K9/4858   A61K47/44   A61K31/05   A61K31/12   A61K31/133   A61K31/198   A61K31/57	03/2015- 04/2015	dkw

<b>CPC COMBINATION SETS - SEARCHED</b>		
<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Examiner</b>

<b>US CLASSIFICATION SEARCHED</b>			
<b>Class</b>	<b>Subclass</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Examiner</b>

<b>SEARCH NOTES</b>		
<b>Search Notes</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Examiner</b>
WEST, NPL and INV: see search history print out	12/2011-1/2012	DKW
WEST, NPL and INV: see search history print out	6/2012	DKW
CPC-WEST, NPL and INV: see search history print out	01/2015	dkw
CPC-WEST, NPL and INV: see search history print out	03/2015- 04/2015	dkw

<b>INTERFERENCE SEARCH</b>			
<b>US Class/ CPC Symbol</b>	<b>US Subclass / CPC Group</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Examiner</b>
	WEST Interference Search: see search history print out	04/2015	dkw

--	--

# WEST Search History for Application 12057775

Creation Date: 2015040121:57

## Interference Searches

Query	DB	Op.	Plur.	Thes.	Date
krill.clm. and oil.clm.	PGPB, USPT, UPAD	OR	YES		04-01-2015
(krill.clm. and oil.clm.) and meal.clm. and phospholipid	PGPB, USPT, UPAD	OR	YES		04-01-2015
(krill.clm. and oil.clm. and meal.clm. and phospholipid) and ether.clm.	PGPB, USPT, UPAD	OR	YES		04-01-2015

## Prior Art Searches

Query	DB	Op.	Plur.	Thes.	Date
"krill oil"	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
("krill oil" ) and "krill meal"	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
("krill oil" and "krill meal" ) and "supercritical fluid"	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
extract? and krill and oil and meal and supercritical	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB,	OR	YES		01-03-2012

	DWPI, TDBD				
<b>2004241249</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>200400241249</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>20040241249</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(20040241249 ) and "supercritical"</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(20040241249 ) and "solvent extraction"</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(20040241249 ) and "extract"</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(20040241249 and "extract" ) and "oil"</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(20040241249 and "extract" and "oil" ) and "meal"</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>supercritical and extraction and krill</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(supercritical and extraction and krill ) and co-solvent</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(supercritical and extraction and krill and co-solvent ) and oil</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>supercritical and extraction and alcohol</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>(supercritical and extraction and alcohol ) and monohydric</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB,	OR	YES		01-03-2012

	JPAB, DWPI, TDBD				
<b>(supercritical and extraction and alcohol and monohydric ) and krill and meal</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		01-03-2012
<b>krill and oil and cooking and drying</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(krill and oil and cooking and drying ) and extracting</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>20030113432</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 ) and extracting</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting ) and cooking</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting ) and drying</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying ) and asta</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying ) and oil</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil ) and stickwater</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater ) and meal</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater and meal ) and stored</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater and meal and stored ) and supercritical</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater and meal and stored ) and extraction</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012

<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater and meal and stored ) and extracting</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater and meal and stored and extracting ) and "oil"</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater and meal and stored and extracting and "oil" ) and oil</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(20030113432 and extracting and drying and oil and stickwater and meal and stored and extracting and "oil" and oil ) and extracting</b>	PGPB	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>supercritical and extraction and krill and oil</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(supercritical and extraction and krill and oil ) and ethanol</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(supercritical and extraction and krill and oil and ethanol ) carbon dioxide</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(supercritical and extraction and krill and oil and ethanol ) and dioxide</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>(supercritical and extraction and krill and oil and ethanol and dioxide ) and (ethanol or butanol)</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI,	OR	YES		05-29-2012

	TDBD				
<b>(supercritical and extraction and krill and oil and ethanol and dioxide and (ethanol or butanol) ) and "krill oil"</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD	OR	YES		05-29-2012
<b>Inge.in. and Bruheim.in.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Inge.in. and Bruheim.in. ) and krill.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Inge.in. and Bruheim.in. and krill.clm. ) and oil.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Inge.in. and Bruheim.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. ) and dried.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Inge.in. and Bruheim.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. and dried.clm. ) and meal.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI,	OR	YES		04-01-2015

	TDBD, FPRS				
<b>8557297.pn.</b>	USPT	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>Mikko.in. and Griinari.in.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Mikko.in. and Griinari.in. ) and krill.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Mikko.in. and Griinari.in. and krill.clm. ) and oil.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Mikko.in. and Griinari.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. ) and dried.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>Snorre.in. and Tilseth.in.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Snorre.in. and Tilseth.in. ) and krill.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC,	OR	YES		04-01-2015

	EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS				
<b>(Snorre.in. and Tilseth.in. and krill.clm. ) and oil.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Snorre.in. and Tilseth.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. ) and dried.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in. ) and krill.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in. and krill.clm. ) and oil.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. )</b>	PGPB,	OR	YES		04-01-2015

<b>and phospholipid.clm.</b>	USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS				
<b>(Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. and phospholipid.clm. ) and dried.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. and phospholipid.clm. ) and cook.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. and phospholipid.clm. ) and cooking.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Sebastiano.in. and Banni.in. and krill.clm. and oil.clm. and phospholipid.clm. ) and extract.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>Jeffrey.in. and Cohn.in.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015

<b>(Jeffrey.in. and Cohn.in. ) and krill.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>Daniele.in. and Mancinelli.in.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Daniele.in. and Mancinelli.in. ) and krill.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Daniele.in. and Mancinelli.in. and krill.clm. ) and extract.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(Daniele.in. and Mancinelli.in. and krill.clm. and extract.clm. ) and dried.clm.</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>krill and oil and ether and phospholipids and cook? and delipi? and extract? and polar</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD,	OR	YES		04-01-2015

	FPRS				
<b>krill and oil and ether and phospholipids and cook? and delipi? and extract?</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>krill and oil and ether and phospholipids</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(krill and oil and ether and phospholipids ) and delipid?</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(krill and oil and ether and phospholipids ) and extract?</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(krill and oil and ether and phospholipids and extract? ) and cook?</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
<b>(krill and oil and ether and phospholipids and extract? ) and dried and meal</b>	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB,	OR	YES		04-01-2015

	DWPI, TDBD, FPRS				
(krill and oil and ether and phospholipids and extract? and dried and meal ) and "krill oil"	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES		04-01-2015
(krill and oil and ether and phospholipids and extract? and dried and meal and "krill oil" ) and ( ( A61K2300/00   A61K31/685   A61K31/122   A61K31/683   A61K35/612   A61K31/23   A61K31/202   A61K45/06   A61K9/2054   A61K9/4858   A61K47/44   A61K31/05   A61K31/12   A61K31/133   A61K31/198   A61K31/575   A61K31/7004   A61K31/7048   A61K31/714   A61K33/06   A61K38/02   A61K38/1767   A61K47/22   A61K9/0019   A61K9/06   A61K9/12   A61K9/2009   A61K9/2018   A61K9/2866   A61K2800/10   A61K31/232   A61K31/352   A61K31/66   A61K35/60   A61K36/00   A61K47/26   A61K47/36   A61K47/48053   A61K47/481   A61K8/062   A61K8/14   A61K8/553   A61K8/645   A61K8/925   A61K9/107   A61K9/4816   A61K9/5036   A23V2002/00   A23V2250/18   A23V2250/194   A23V2250/21   A23V2250/2136   A23V2250/1882   A23V2200/306   A23V2200/318   A23V2250/2132   A23V2250/314   A23V2250/714   A23V2200/322   A23V2250/1842   A23V2250/1942   A23L1/3006   A23L1/33   A23L1/305   A23L1/0152   A23L1/0153   A23L1/3053   A23L1/3252   A23L1/0026   A23L1/3008   A23L1/30   A23L1/3002   A23L1/3004   A23L1/302   C11B1/10   C11B3/006   C11B1/06   C11B1/025   C11B1/104   C11B13/00   A23K1/164   A23K1/188   A23K1/103   A23K1/1606   A23K1/1893   A23D9/013   A23D9/007   A23D9/02   A23D7/0053   A23D7/013   A23J1/04   A23J3/34   C07K14/43509   C07K19/00   C07F9/103   C07F9/10   A21D2/32   A23G3/40   A61Q19/00 ).CPC.)	PGPB, USPT, USOC, EPAB, JPAB, DWPI, TDBD, FPRS	OR	YES	04-01-2015	

<b>Issue Classification</b> 	<b>Application/Control No.</b> 12057775	<b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b> BRUHEIM ET AL.	
	<b>Examiner</b> DEBBIE K WARE	<b>Art Unit</b> 1651	

CPC						
Symbol					Type	Version
A61K		35		612	F	2013-01-01
A61K		9		4858	I	2013-01-01
A61K		31		122	I	2013-01-01
A61K		31		23	I	2013-01-01
A61K		31		683	I	2013-01-01
A61K		31		685	I	2013-01-01
A61K		45		06	I	2013-01-01
C11B		3		006	I	2013-01-01
A61K		31		202	I	2013-01-01

CPC Combination Sets								
Symbol					Type	Set	Ranking	Version
A61K		31		23	I	1	1	2013-01-01
A61K		2300		00	A	1	2	2013-01-01
A61K		31		683	I	2	1	2013-01-01
A61K		2300		00	A	2	2	2013-01-01
A61K		31		685	I	3	1	2013-01-01
A61K		2300		00	A	3	2	2013-01-01
A61K		31		122	I	4	1	2013-01-01
A61K		2300		00	A	4	2	2013-01-01

NONE		<b>Total Claims Allowed:</b>	
		4	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
/DEBBIE K WARE/ Primary Examiner.Art Unit 1651	04/02/2015	1	None
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)		



<b>Issue Classification</b> 	<b>Application/Control No.</b> 12057775	<b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b> BRUHEIM ET AL.
	<b>Examiner</b> DEBBIE K WARE	<b>Art Unit</b> 1651

<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant</b>																<input type="checkbox"/> <b>CPA</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> <b>T.D.</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> <b>R.1.47</b>	
Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original						
	1		17		33		49		65		81										
	2		18		34	1	50		66		82										
	3		19		35		51		67		83										
	4		20		36	2	52		68		84										
	5		21		37	3	53		69		85										
	6		22		38	4	54		70		86										
	7		23		39		55		71		87										
	8		24		40		56		72		88										
	9		25		41		57		73		89										
	10		26		42		58		74		90										
	11		27		43		59		75												
	12		28		44		60		76												
	13		29		45		61		77												
	14		30		46		62		78												
	15		31		47		63		79												
	16		32		48		64		80												

NONE		<b>Total Claims Allowed:</b>	
		4	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
/DEBBIE K WARE/ Primary Examiner.Art Unit 1651	04/02/2015	1	None
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)		

Connecting via Winsock to STN at pto-stn on port 23

Welcome to STN International! Enter x:X

LOGINID:ssspt189dxw

PASSWORD:

TERMINAL (ENTER 1, 2, 3, OR ?):2

\* \* \* \* \* Welcome to STN International \* \* \* \* \*

NEWS 1 OCT 11 Instructor-led and self paced STN learning resources  
available at <https://cas.csod.com/Default.aspx?c=001>

NEWS 2 APR 26 Expanded Swedish Patent Application Coverage in CA/CAplus  
Provides More Current and Complete Information

NEWS 3 APR 28 The DWPI (files WPINDEX, WPIDS and WPIX) on STN have been  
enhanced with thesauri for the European Patent Classifications

NEWS 4 MAY 02 MEDLINE Improvements Provide Fast and Simple Access to DOI and  
Chemical Name Information

NEWS 5 MAY 12 European Patent Classification thesauri added to the INPADOC  
files, PCTFULL, GBFULL and FRFULL

NEWS 6 MAY 23 Enhanced performance of STN biosequence searches

NEWS 7 JUN 20 STN on the Web Enhanced with New Patent Family Assistant and  
Updated Structure Plug-In

NEWS 8 JUN 20 INPADOC databases enhanced with first page images

NEWS 9 JUN 20 PATDPA database updates to end in June 2011

NEWS 10 JUN 26 MARPAT Enhancements Save Time and Increase Usability

NEWS 11 JUL 25 STN adds Australian patent full-text database,  
AUPATFULL, including the new numeric search feature.

NEWS 12 AUG 01 CA Sections Added to ACS Publications Web Editions  
Platform

NEWS 13 AUG 16 INPADOC: Coverage of German Patent Data resumed,  
enhanced legal status

NEWS 14 AUG 18 Upgrade now to STN Express, Version 8.5

NEWS 15 SEP 01 CAS Journal Coverage Now Includes Ahead-of-Print  
Articles for More Than 100 Journal Titles

NEWS 16 SEP 01 Older Versions of STN Express to be Discontinued  
Beginning in March 2012

NEWS 17 SEP 09 USAN Database Updates Offer Superior Currency on STN(R)

NEWS 18 SEP 26 STN Adds Canadian Patent Full-text Database - CANPATFULL

NEWS 19 SEP 26 GEOREF and ENCOMPLIT databases were reloaded on  
September 24, 2011.

NEWS 20 SEP 26 Updates to the IFIPAT/IFIUDB/IFICDB databases have resumed.

NEWS 21 SEP 26 ECLA Thesaurus in CA/CAplus Improves Patent Searching on STN

NEWS 22 SEP 26 Access AUPATFULL and CANPATFULL databases with STN Viewer

NEWS 23 OCT 26 New STN Revolutionizes Patent Searching for Professionals

NEWS 24 DEC 1 CA/CAplus Now Includes Examiner Citations for Japanese Patents

NEWS 25 DEC 1 CAS Expands Global Patent Coverage - Intellectual Property  
Corporation of Malaysia Becomes 62nd Authority on CA/CAplus

NEWS 26 DEC 5 STN on the Web Enhancements Include Compatibility with  
Microsoft Windows 7

NEWS 27 DEC 14 Removal of ITRD and PATIPC databases from STN

NEWS 28 DEC 15 Rolled-up IPC Core Codes Removed from IPC Reclassifications in  
Patent Databases on STN

NEWS EXPRESS 18 AUGUST 2011 CURRENT WINDOWS VERSION IS V8.5,  
AND CURRENT DISCOVER FILE IS DATED 11 AUGUST 2011.

NEWS HOURS STN Operating Hours Plus Help Desk Availability  
NEWS LOGIN Welcome Banner and News Items  
NEWS TRAINING Find instructor-led and self-directed training opportunities

Enter NEWS followed by the item number or name to see news on that specific topic.

All use of STN is subject to the provisions of the STN customer agreement. This agreement limits use to scientific research. Use for software development or design, implementation of commercial gateways, or use of CAS and STN data in the building of commercial products is prohibited and may result in loss of user privileges and other penalties.

\* \* \* \* \* STN Columbus \* \* \* \* \*

FILE 'HOME' ENTERED AT 15:15:33 ON 03 JAN 2012

=> index bioscience		
COST IN U.S. DOLLARS	SINCE FILE	TOTAL
	ENTRY	SESSION
FULL ESTIMATED COST	0.24	0.24

INDEX 'ADISCTI, ADISINSIGHT, ADISNEWS, AGRICOLA, ANABSTR, ANTE, AQUALINE, AQUASCI, BIOENG, BIOSIS, BIOTECHABS, BIOTECHDS, BIOTECHNO, CABA, CAPLUS, CEABA-VTB, CIN, CONFSCI, CROPB, CROPU, DDFB, DDFU, DGENE, DISSABS, DRUGB, DRUGU, EMBAL, EMBASE, ESBIODBASE, ...' ENTERED AT 15:15:47 ON 03 JAN 2012

56 FILES IN THE FILE LIST IN STNINDEX

Enter SET DETAIL ON to see search term postings or to view search error messages that display as 0\* with SET DETAIL OFF.

=> s krill and oil and meal and supercritical(p)extract? and solvent and heat? and treat?

- 0\* FILE ADISNEWS
- 0\* FILE ANTE
- 0\* FILE AQUALINE
- 0\* FILE BIOENG
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHABS
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHDS
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHNO
- 0\* FILE CEABA-VTB
- 0\* FILE CIN

22 FILES SEARCHED...

- 0\* FILE FOMAD
- 0\* FILE FROSTI
- 0\* FILE FSTA

33 FILES SEARCHED...

- 1 FILE IFIPAT
- 0\* FILE KOSMET
- 0\* FILE NTIS
- 0\* FILE PASCAL

48 FILES SEARCHED...

- 28 FILE USPATFULL
- 4 FILE USPAT2

51 FILES SEARCHED...

- 0\* FILE WATER
- 1 FILE WPIDS
- 1 FILE WPINDEX

5 FILES HAVE ONE OR MORE ANSWERS, 56 FILES SEARCHED IN STNINDEX

L1 QUE KRILL AND OIL AND MEAL AND SUPERCRITICAL(P)EXTRACT? AND SOLVENT AND HEAT? AND TREAT?

=> file ifipat uspatfull uspat2

COST IN U.S. DOLLARS

SINCE FILE	TOTAL
ENTRY	SESSION
3.70	3.94

FULL ESTIMATED COST

FILE 'IFIPAT' ENTERED AT 15:19:01 ON 03 JAN 2012  
COPYRIGHT (C) 2012 IFI CLAIMS(R) Patent Services (IFI)

FILE 'USPATFULL' ENTERED AT 15:19:01 ON 03 JAN 2012  
CA INDEXING COPYRIGHT (C) 2012 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY (ACS)

FILE 'USPAT2' ENTERED AT 15:19:01 ON 03 JAN 2012  
CA INDEXING COPYRIGHT (C) 2012 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY (ACS)

=> s l1

L2 33 L1

=> dup rem l2

PROCESSING COMPLETED FOR L2

L3 32 DUP REM L2 (1 DUPLICATE REMOVED)

=> s l3 andcarbon(p)dioxide

MISSING OPERATOR L3 ANDCARBON

The search profile that was entered contains terms or nested terms that are not separated by a logical operator.

=> s l3 and dioxide

L4 27 L3 AND DIOXIDE

=> d l4 1-27

L4 ANSWER 1 OF 27 IFIPAT COPYRIGHT 2012 IFI on STN  
AN 11934106 IFIPAT;IFIUDB;IFICDB  
TI BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS; Having high amounts of phospholipids, astaxanthin esters and/or omega-3 contents; antiinflammation, antioxidant effects, improving insulin resistance and blood lipid profile  
IN Banni Sebastiano (IT); Bruheim Inge (NO); Cohn Jeffrey Stuart (AU); Griinari Mikko (FI); Mancinelli Daniele (NO); Tilseth Snorre (NO)  
PA Aker BioMarine ASA NO (79725)  
PI US 20080274203 A1 20081106  
AI US 2008-57775 20080328 (12)  
PRAI US 2007-920483P 20070328 (Provisional)  
US 2007-975058P 20070925 (Provisional)  
US 2007-983446P 20071029 (Provisional)  
FI US 20080274203 20081106  
DT Utility; Patent Application - First Publication  
FS CHEMICAL APPLICATION  
ED Entered STN: 7 Nov 2008  
Last Updated on STN: Jan 2011  
CLMN 90

L4 ANSWER 2 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:287830 USPATFULL  
TI Reducing the Risk of Pathological Effects of Traumatic Brain Injury  
IN Hadley, Kevin, Elkridge, MD, UNITED STATES

Fealey, Terence, Marietta, GA, UNITED STATES  
Bailes, Julian E., Morgantown, WV, UNITED STATES  
PI US 20110257267 A1 20111020  
AI US 2010-904049 A1 20101013 (12)  
PRAI US 2009-251230P 20091013 (61)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2397  
INCL INCLM: 514/547.000  
INCLS: 514/560.000; 514/549.000  
NCL NCLM: 514/547.000  
NCLS: 514/549.000; 514/560.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-232 [I,A]; A61P0025-00 [I,A]; A61K0031-202 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 3 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:251469 USPATFULL  
TI SOLVENT-FREE PROCESS FOR OBTAINING PHOSPHOLIPIDS AND NEUTRAL ENRICHED  
KRILL OILS  
IN Sclabos Katevas, Dimitri, Santiago, CHILE  
Toro Guerra, Raul R., Santiago, CHILE  
Chiong Lay, Mario M., Santiago, CHILE  
PA THAROS LTD., Santiago, CHILE (non-U.S. corporation)  
LONZA LTD., Basel, SWITZERLAND (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20110224450 A1 20110915  
AI US 2011-96644 A1 20110428 (13)  
RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. WO 2009-IB7269, filed on 30 Oct 2009,  
PENDING  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2021  
INCL INCLM: 554/023.000  
INCLS: 554/008.000; 554/078.000  
NCL NCLM: 554/023.000  
NCLS: 554/008.000; 554/078.000  
IPC IPCI C11B0001-00 [I,A]; C07F0009-10 [I,A]  
IPCR C11B0001-00 [I,A]; C07F0009-10 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 4 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:212256 USPATFULL  
TI METHOD FOR PRODUCING LIPIDS  
IN Yoshikawa, Kazuhiro, Tokyo, JAPAN  
Mikajiri, Akihiro, Tokyo, JAPAN  
PA NIPPON SUISAN KAISHA, LTD., Tokyo, JAPAN (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20110189760 A1 20110804  
AI US 2009-120842 A1 20090924 (13)  
WO 2009-JP66530 20090924  
20110425 PCT 371 date  
PRAI JP 2008-248986 20080926  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 1345  
INCL INCLM: 435/271.000  
INCLS: 554/020.000  
NCL NCLM: 435/271.000  
NCLS: 554/020.000  
IPC IPCI C11C0001-00 [I,A]; C11B0001-00 [I,A]  
IPCR C11C0001-00 [I,A]; C11B0001-00 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 5 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN

AN 2011:211870 USPATFULL  
TI METHOD FOR CONCENTRATING LIPIDS  
IN Yoshikawa, Kazuhiro, Tokyo, JAPAN  
PA NIPPON SUISAN KAISHA, LTD., Tokyo, JAPAN (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20110189374 A1 20110804  
AI US 2009-120875 A1 20090924 (13)  
WO 2009-JP66529 20090924  
20110425 PCT 371 date  
PRAI JP 2008-248986 20080926  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 961  
INCL INCLM: 426/601.000  
INCLS: 554/008.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/601.000  
NCLS: 554/008.000  
IPC IPCI A23D0009-00 [I,A]; C11B0001-06 [I,A]  
IPCR A23D0009-00 [I,A]; C11B0001-06 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 6 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:198158 USPATFULL  
TI METHODS OF TREATING AND PREVENTING NEUROLOGICAL DISORDERS USING  
DOCOSAHEXAENOIC ACID  
IN AISEN, Paul S., Solana Beach, CA, UNITED STATES  
Quinn, Joseph F., Portland, OR, UNITED STATES  
Yurko-Mauro, Karin, Silver Spring, MD, UNITED STATES  
PA MARTEK BIOSCIENCES CORPORATION, Columbia, MD, UNITED STATES (U.S.  
corporation)  
PI US 20110177061 A1 20110721  
AI US 2010-833913 A1 20100709 (12)  
PRAI US 2009-224836P 20090710 (61)  
US 2010-359792P 20100629 (61)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2653  
INCL INCLM: 424/133.100  
INCLS: 514/560.000; 514/120.000; 514/547.000; 514/549.000; 514/297.000;  
514/319.000; 514/479.000; 514/215.000; 424/184.100; 424/172.100;  
424/152.100; 514/458.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/133.100  
NCLS: 424/152.100; 424/172.100; 424/184.100; 514/120.000; 514/215.000;  
514/297.000; 514/319.000; 514/458.000; 514/479.000; 514/547.000;  
514/549.000; 514/560.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-202 [I,A]; A61K0031-661 [I,A]; A61K0031-232 [I,A];  
A61K0031-473 [I,A]; A61K0031-445 [I,A]; A61K0031-27 [I,A];  
A61K0031-55 [I,A]; A61K0039-00 [I,A]; A61K0039-395 [I,A];  
A61K0031-355 [I,A]; A61P0025-28 [I,A]; A61P0025-00 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-202 [I,A]; A61K0031-232 [I,A]; A61K0031-27 [I,A];  
A61K0031-355 [I,A]; A61K0031-445 [I,A]; A61K0031-473 [I,A];  
A61K0031-55 [I,A]; A61K0031-661 [I,A]; A61K0039-00 [I,A];  
A61K0039-395 [I,A]; A61P0025-00 [I,A]; A61P0025-28 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 7 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:146375 USPATFULL  
TI KRILL OIL PROCESS  
IN Breivik, Harald, Porsgrunn, NORWAY  
Thorstad, Olav, Porsgrunn, NORWAY  
PA PRONOVA BIOPHARMA NORGE AS, Lysaker, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20110130458 A1 20110602  
AI US 2009-992365 A1 20090515 (12)

WO 2009-NO184 20090515  
 20110211 PCT 371 date  
 PRAI US 2008-53455P 20080515 (61)  
 DT Utility  
 FS APPLICATION  
 LN.CNT 688  
 INCL INCLM: 514/560.000  
 INCLS: 426/608.000; 426/417.000  
 NCL NCLM: 514/560.000  
 NCLS: 426/417.000; 426/608.000  
 IPC IPCI A61K0031-202 [I,A]; A61P0003-06 [I,A]; A61P0003-00 [I,A];  
 A61P0009-00 [I,A]; A61P0009-04 [I,A]; A61P0009-10 [I,A];  
 A23D0007-00 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A]  
 IPCR A61K0031-202 [I,A]; A23D0007-00 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A];  
 A61P0003-00 [I,A]; A61P0003-06 [I,A]; A61P0009-00 [I,A];  
 A61P0009-04 [I,A]; A61P0009-10 [I,A]  
 CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.  
  
 L4 ANSWER 8 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
 AN 2011:117434 USPATFULL  
 TI POWDERED COMPOSITION CONTAINING OIL-SOLUBLE COMPONENT, FUNCTIONAL FOOD  
 USING THE SAME, AND PACKAGED PRODUCT THEREOF  
 IN Suzuki, Keiichi, Kanagawa, JAPAN  
 Sasaki, Hidemi, Kanagawa, JAPAN  
 Serizawa, Shinichiro, Kanagawa, JAPAN  
 Arakawa, Jun, Kanagawa, JAPAN  
 PA FUJIFILM CORPORATION, Minato-ku, Tokyo, JAPAN (non-U.S. corporation)  
 PI US 20110104340 A1 20110505  
 AI US 2008-673977 A1 20080819 (12)  
 WO 2008-JP65061 20080819  
 20100218 PCT 371 date  
 PRAI JP 2007-213712 20070820  
 JP 2007-230582 20070905  
 DT Utility  
 FS APPLICATION  
 LN.CNT 2345  
 INCL INCLM: 426/096.000  
 INCLS: 426/654.000; 426/590.000  
 NCL NCLM: 426/096.000  
 NCLS: 426/590.000; 426/654.000  
 IPC IPCI A21D0002-16 [I,A]; A23L0002-52 [I,A]  
 IPCR A21D0002-16 [I,A]; A23L0002-52 [I,A]  
 CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.  
  
 L4 ANSWER 9 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
 AN 2011:117391 USPATFULL  
 TI METHODS OF USING KRILL OIL TO TREAT RISK FACTORS FOR  
 CARDIOVASCULAR, METABOLIC, AND INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS  
 IN BRUHEIM, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
 Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
 Cohn, Jeffery, Sydney, AUSTRALIA  
 Griinari, Mikko, Espoo, FINLAND  
 Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
 Hoem, Nils, Oslo, NORWAY  
 Vik, Hogne, Eiksmarka, NORWAY  
 Banni, Sebastiano, Calgliari, ITALY  
 PA Aker BioMarine A.S.A., Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
 PI US 20110104297 A1 20110505  
 AI US 2010-790575 A1 20100528 (12)  
 RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar 2008,  
 PENDING  
 PRAI US 2007-975058P 20070925 (60)

US 2007-983446P 20071029 (60)  
US 2008-24072P 20080128 (61)  
US 2009-181743P 20090528 (61)  
US 2007-920483P 20070328 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2547  
INCL INCLM: 424/522.000  
INCLS: 426/002.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/522.000  
NCLS: 426/002.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I,A]; A61P0009-10 [I,A]; A61P0003-04 [I,A];  
A61P0003-00 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0035-56 [I,A]; A61P0003-00 [I,A]; A61P0003-04 [I,A];  
A61P0009-10 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 10 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:97925 USPATFULL  
TI Methods for Treating Traumatic Brain Injury  
IN Bailes, Julian E., Morgantown, WV, UNITED STATES  
PI US 20110086914 A1 20110414  
AI US 2010-904045 A1 20101013 (12)  
PRAI US 2009-251234P 20091013 (61)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2356  
INCL INCLM: 514/549.000  
INCLS: 514/560.000  
NCL NCLM: 514/549.000  
NCLS: 514/560.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-232 [I,A]; A61K0031-20 [I,A]; A61P0025-00 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-232 [I,A]; A61K0031-20 [I,A]; A61P0025-00 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 11 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:92475 USPATFULL  
TI Docosahexaenoic Acid Gel Caps  
IN PANKER, Cynthia A., Jessup, MD, UNITED STATES  
Billard, Michael Ames, Laurel, MD, UNITED STATES  
Ryan, Alan, Ellicott City, MD, UNITED STATES  
Dangi, Bindi, Elkridge, MD, UNITED STATES  
PI US 20110082205 A1 20110407  
AI US 2010-896763 A1 20101001 (12)  
PRAI US 2009-247944P 20091001 (61)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2444  
INCL INCLM: 514/549.000  
NCL NCLM: 514/549.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-232 [I,A]; A61P0003-06 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-232 [I,A]; A61P0003-06 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 12 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2010:256169 USPATFULL  
TI PHOSPHOLIPID AND PROTEIN TABLETS  
IN Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Hoem, Nils, Oslo, NORWAY  
PA AKER BIOMARINE ASA, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20100227792 A1 20100909  
AI US 2010-711822 A1 20100224 (12)

PRAI US 2009-155758P 20090226 (61)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 3112  
INCL INCLM: 514 2  
NCL NCLM: 514/005.500  
NCLS: 514/691.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0038-02 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0038-02 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 13 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2010:255355 USPATFULL  
TI LOW VISCOSITY PHOSPHOLIPID COMPOSITIONS  
IN Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
PA AKER BIOMARINE ASA, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20100226977 A1 20100909  
AI US 2010-711553 A1 20100224 (12)  
RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2008-201325, filed on 29 Aug 2008,  
PENDING

PRAI US 2009-155767P 20090226 (61)  
US 2007-968765P 20070829 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 2394  
INCL INCLM: 424/456.000  
INCLS: 426/601.000; 426/417.000; 514/078.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/456.000  
NCLS: 426/417.000; 426/601.000; 514/078.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-685 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A]; A23D0009-02 [I,A];  
A61K0009-48 [I,A]; A61P0009-00 [I,A]; A61P0019-00 [I,A];  
A61P0029-00 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-685 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A]; A23D0009-02 [I,A];  
A61K0009-48 [I,A]; A61P0009-00 [I,A]; A61P0019-00 [I,A];  
A61P0029-00 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 14 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2010:228249 USPATFULL  
TI METHODS FOR IMPROVING COGNITIVE FUNCTION AND DECREASING HEART RATE  
IN YURKO-MAURO, Karin, Silver Spring, MD, UNITED STATES  
PA MARTEK BIOSCIENCES CORPORATION, Columbia, MD, UNITED STATES (U.S.  
corporation)

PI US 20100203123 A1 20100812  
AI US 2010-699009 A1 20100202 (12)  
PRAI US 2009-149310P 20090202 (61)  
US 2009-183548P 20090602 (61)

DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 2358  
INCL INCLM: 424/456.000  
INCLS: 514/560.000; 514/549.000; 514/458.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/456.000  
NCLS: 514/458.000; 514/549.000; 514/560.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0009-64 [I,A]; A61K0031-20 [I,A]; A61K0031-22 [I,A];  
A61K0031-355 [I,A]; A61P0025-00 [I,A]; A61P0009-00 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0009-64 [I,A]; A61K0031-20 [I,A]; A61K0031-22 [I,A];  
A61K0031-355 [I,A]; A61P0009-00 [I,A]; A61P0025-00 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 15 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2010:161551 USPATFULL

TI PROCESS FOR PRODUCTION OF OMEGA-3 RICH MARINE PHOSPHOLIPIDS FROM KRILL  
IN Breivik, Harald, Porsgrunn, NORWAY  
PI US 20100143571 A1 20100610  
AI US 2007-515098 A1 20071115 (12)  
WO 2007-NO402 20071115  
20100217 PCT 371 date  
PRAI US 2006-859289P 20061116 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 537  
INCL INCLM: 426/643.000  
INCLS: 426/417.000; 554/021.000; 568/366.000; 536/020.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/643.000  
NCLS: 426/417.000; 536/020.000; 554/021.000; 568/366.000  
IPC IPCI A23L0001-325 [I,A]; A23K0001-10 [I,A]; A23K0001-18 [I,A];  
C11B0001-10 [I,A]; C07C0045-78 [I,A]; C08B0037-08 [I,A]  
IPCR A23L0001-325 [I,A]; A23K0001-10 [I,A]; A23K0001-18 [I,A];  
C07C0045-78 [I,A]; C08B0037-08 [I,A]; C11B0001-10 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 16 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2009:109974 USPATFULL  
TI Polyunsaturated Fatty Acid-Containing Solid Fat Compositions and Uses  
and Production Thereof  
IN Namal Senanayake, S.P. Janaka, Lexington, KY, UNITED STATES  
Ahmed, Naseer, Lexington, KY, UNITED STATES  
Fichtali, Jaouad, Lexington, KY, UNITED STATES  
PA Martek Biosciences Corporation, Columbia, MD, UNITED STATES (U.S.  
corporation)  
PI US 20090099260 A1 20090416  
AI US 2008-201728 A1 20080829 (12)  
PRAI US 2007-969536P 20070831 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2660  
INCL INCLM: 514/560.000  
INCLS: 426/601.000; 426/072.000  
NCL NCLM: 514/560.000  
NCLS: 426/072.000; 426/601.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-20 [I,A]; A23D0007-005 [I,A]; A23L0001-30 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-20 [I,A]; A23D0007-005 [I,A]; A23L0001-30 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 17 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2009:67318 USPATFULL  
TI METHOD FOR MAKING KRILL MEAL  
IN Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Hostmark, Oistein, Loddefjord, NORWAY  
PA Aker BioMarine ASA, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20090061067 A1 20090305  
AI US 2008-201325 A1 20080829 (12)  
PRAI US 2007-968765P 20070829 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2307  
INCL INCLM: 426/602.000  
INCLS: 426/417.000; 210/149.000; 426/480.000; 426/609.000; 426/648.000;  
426/608.000; 366/145.000; 366/147.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/602.000  
NCLS: 210/149.000; 366/145.000; 366/147.000; 426/417.000; 426/480.000;  
426/608.000; 426/609.000; 426/648.000  
IPC IPCI A23D0007-005 [I,A]; A23D0007-02 [I,A]; A23D0007-04 [I,A];

A23L0001-29 [I,A]; B01F0015-06 [I,A]; A23L0001-33 [I,A];  
A23L0001-326 [I,A]; B01D0021-30 [I,A]  
IPCR A23D0007-005 [I,A]; A23D0007-02 [I,A]; A23D0007-04 [I,A];  
A23L0001-29 [I,A]; A23L0001-326 [I,A]; A23L0001-33 [I,A];  
B01D0021-30 [I,A]; B01F0015-06 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 18 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2006:254989 USPATFULL  
TI Natural astaxanthin extract reduces dna oxidation  
IN Chew, Boon P., Pullman, WA, UNITED STATES  
Park, Jean Soon, Pullman, WA, UNITED STATES  
PI US 20060217445 A1 20060928  
AI US 2004-565717 A1 20040726 (10)  
WO 2004-US24314 20040726  
20060123 PCT 371 date  
PRAI US 2003-490121P 20030725 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 1366

INCL INCLM: 514/690.000  
INCLS: 514/763.000; 514/560.000

NCL NCLM: 514/690.000  
NCLS: 514/560.000; 514/763.000

IPC IPCI A61K0031-12 [I,A]; A61K0031-015 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-12 [I,A]; A61K0031-015 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 19 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2006:227598 USPATFULL  
TI Preventive or remedy for arthritis  
IN Kamiya, Toshikazu, Ibaraki, JAPAN  
Nakagiri, Ryusuke, Chapel Hill, NC, UNITED STATES  
PA Kyowa Hakko Kogyo Co., Ltd., Tokyo, JAPAN, 100-8185 (non-U.S.  
corporation)  
PI US 20060193962 A1 20060831  
AI US 2004-552526 A1 20040409 (10)  
WO 2004-JP5115 20040409  
20051011 PCT 371 date  
PRAI JP 2003-107405 20030411  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 1047

INCL INCLM: 426/615.000

NCL NCLM: 426/615.000

IPC IPCI A23L0001-212 [I,A]  
IPCR A23L0001-212 [I,A]; A23K0001-14 [I,A]; A23K0001-16 [I,A];  
A23L0001-30 [I,A]; A61K0031-7008 [I,A]; A61K0031-726 [I,A];  
A61K0036-00 [I,A]; A61K0036-185 [I,A]; A61P0019-02 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 20 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2004:209092 USPATFULL  
TI Process for producing a plant extract containing plant powder  
IN Sakai, Yasushi, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
Yokoo, Yoshiharu, Sagamihara-shi, JAPAN  
PI US 20040161524 A1 20040819  
US 7521079 B2 20090421  
AI US 2003-481519 A1 20031219 (10)  
WO 2002-JP6226 20020621  
PRAI JP 2001-188480 20010621  
DT Utility

FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 1479  
INCL INCLM: 426/655.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/655.000  
NCLS: 426/433.000; 426/594.000; 426/597.000  
IPC [7]  
IPCI A23L0001-28 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A23L0001-28 [I,A]  
IPCR A23L0001-28 [I,A]; A23K0001-14 [I,A]; A23K0001-16 [I,A];  
A23L0001-30 [I,A]; A61K0036-185 [I,A]

L4 ANSWER 21 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2004:209046 USPATFULL  
TI Preventives or remedies for arthritis  
IN Nakagiri, Rysuke, Tokyo, JAPAN  
Kamiya, Toshikazu, Tsuchiura-shi, JAPAN  
Suda, Toshio, Sunto-gun, JAPAN  
Miki, Ichiro, Mishima-shi, JAPAN  
PI US 20040161478 A1 20040819  
AI US 2003-480044 A1 20031209 (10)  
WO 2002-JP5790 20020611  
PRAI JP 2001-181947 20010615  
JP 2002-70702 20020314

DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 1301  
INCL INCLM: 424/725.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/725.000  
IPC [7]  
IPCI A61K0035-78 [ICM,7]  
IPCR A21D0002-36 [I,A]; A21D0013-08 [I,A]; A23K0001-14 [I,A];  
A23K0001-16 [I,A]; A23L0001-30 [I,A]; A61K0036-185 [I,A];  
A61P0019-02 [I,A]; A61P0029-00 [I,A]

L4 ANSWER 22 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2004:159281 USPATFULL  
TI Liver funcion protecting or ameliorating agent  
IN Sakai, Yasushi, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
Kayahashi, Shun, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
Hashizume, Erika, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
Nakagiri, Ryusuke, Tokyo, JAPAN  
PI US 20040122085 A1 20040624  
US 7332522 B2 20080219  
AI US 2003-473867 A1 20031003 (10)  
WO 2002-JP3098 20020328

DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 1146  
INCL INCLM: 514/470.000  
NCL NCLM: 514/457.000; 514/470.000  
NCLS: 514/470.000; 549/283.000  
IPC [7]  
IPCI A61K0031-365 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A61K0031-34 [I,A]; A61K0031-343 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-34 [I,A]; A23L0001-30 [I,A]; A61K0031-343 [I,A];  
A61K0031-365 [I,A]; A61K0031-366 [I,A]; A61P0001-16 [I,A];  
C07D0307-88 [I,A]; C07D0311-76 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 23 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2003:64375 USPATFULL  
TI Processes for extracting carotenoids and for preparing feed materials

IN Kagan, Michael, Jerusalem, ISRAEL  
Braun, Sergei, Zur Hadassa, ISRAEL  
PI US 20030044495 A1 20030306  
US 6818239 B2 20041116  
AI US 2002-172747 A1 20020617 (10)  
RLI Continuation of Ser. No. WO 2000-IL846, filed on 18 Dec 2000, UNKNOWN  
PRAI GB 1999-30194 19991221  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 526  
INCL INCLM: 426/250.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/429.000; 426/250.000  
NCLS: 426/250.000; 426/253.000; 426/431.000; 426/478.000; 426/540.000  
IPC [7]  
IPCI A23L0001-27 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A23L0001-28 [ICM,7]; A23L0001-27 [ICS,7]  
IPCR A23L0001-27 [I,A]; A23L0001-275 [I,A]; C07C0403-00 [I,A];  
C07C0403-24 [I,A]; C09B0061-00 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 24 OF 27 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2002:205917 USPATFULL  
TI Liver function protecting or improving agent  
IN Nakagiri, Ryusuke, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
Kamiya, Toshikazu, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
Hashizume, Erika, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
Sakai, Yasushi, Inashiki-gun, JAPAN  
Kayahashi, Shun, Tsukuba-shi, JAPAN  
PI US 20020110605 A1 20020815  
AI US 2001-10154 A1 20011210 (10)  
PRAI JP 2000-375510 20001211  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 1786  
INCL INCLM: 424/725.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/725.000  
IPC [7]  
IPCI A61K0035-78 [ICM,7]  
IPCR A21D0002-36 [I,A]; A21D0013-08 [I,A]; A23K0001-14 [I,A];  
A23K0001-16 [I,A]; A23L0001-212 [I,A]; A23L0001-30 [I,A];  
A61K0036-185 [I,A]; A61P0001-16 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 25 OF 27 USPAT2 on STN  
AN 2004:209092 USPAT2  
TI Process for producing an extract of Hydrangea containing plant powder  
IN Sakai, Yasushi, Tsukuba, JAPAN  
Yokoo, Yoshiharu, Sagamihara, JAPAN  
PA Kyowa Hakko Kogyo Co., Ltd., Tokyo, JAPAN (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 7521079 B2 20090421  
WO 2003000074 20030301  
AI US 2002-481519 20020621 (10)  
WO 2002-JP6226 20020621  
20031219 PCT 371 date  
PRAI JP 2001-188480 20010621  
DT Utility  
FS GRANTED  
LN.CNT 1371  
INCL INCLM: 426/655.000  
INCLS: 426/594.000; 426/597.000; 426/433.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/655.000  
NCLS: 426/433.000; 426/594.000; 426/597.000

IPC IPCI A23L0001-28 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A23L0001-28 [I,A]  
IPCR A23L0001-28 [I,A]; A23K0001-14 [I,A]; A23K0001-16 [I,A];  
A23L0001-30 [I,A]; A61K0036-185 [I,A]  
EXF 426/597; 426/433; 426/594

L4 ANSWER 26 OF 27 USPAT2 on STN  
AN 2004:159281 USPAT2  
TI Liver function protecting or ameliorating agent  
IN Sakai, Yasushi, Tsukuba, JAPAN  
Kayahashi, Shun, Tsukuba, JAPAN  
Hashizume, Erika, Tsukuba, JAPAN  
Nakagiri, Ryusuke, Tokyo, JAPAN  
PA Kyowa Hakko Kogyo Co., Ltd., Tokyo, JAPAN (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 7332522 B2 20080219  
WO 2002080904 20021017  
AI US 2002-473867 20020328 (10)  
WO 2002-JP3098 20020328  
20031003 PCT 371 date  
PRAI JP 2001-106600 20010405  
DT Utility  
FS GRANTED  
LN.CNT 1099  
INCL INCLM: 514/457.000  
INCLS: 514/470.000; 549/283.000  
NCL NCLM: 514/457.000; 514/470.000  
NCLS: 514/470.000; 549/283.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-365 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A61K0031-34 [I,A]; A61K0031-343 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-34 [I,A]; A23L0001-30 [I,A]; A61K0031-343 [I,A];  
A61K0031-365 [I,A]; A61K0031-366 [I,A]; A61P0001-16 [I,A];  
C07D0307-88 [I,A]; C07D0311-76 [I,A]  
EXF 549/283; 549/290; 549/307; 549/289; 514/457; 514/470  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L4 ANSWER 27 OF 27 USPAT2 on STN  
AN 2003:64375 USPAT2  
TI Processes for extracting carotenoids and for preparing feed materials  
IN Kagan, Michael, Jerusalem, ISRAEL  
Braun, Sergei, Zur Hadassa, ISRAEL  
PA Fermentron Ltd., Jerusalem, ISRAEL (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 6818239 B2 20041116  
AI US 2002-172747 20020617 (10)  
RLI Continuation of Ser. No. WO 2000-IL846, filed on 18 Dec 2000  
PRAI GB 1999-30194 19991221  
DT Utility  
FS GRANTED  
LN.CNT 501  
INCL INCLM: 426/429.000  
INCLS: 426/431.000; 426/478.000; 426/250.000; 426/253.000; 426/540.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/429.000; 426/250.000  
NCLS: 426/250.000; 426/253.000; 426/431.000; 426/478.000; 426/540.000  
IPC [7]  
IPCI A23L0001-27 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A23L0001-28 [ICM,7]; A23L0001-27 [ICS,7]  
IPCR A23L0001-27 [I,A]; A23L0001-275 [I,A]; C07C0403-00 [I,A];  
C07C0403-24 [I,A]; C09B0061-00 [I,A]  
EXF 426/807; 426/250; 426/253; 426/635; 426/425; 426/429; 426/430; 426/431;  
426/478; 426/540; 424/439; 424/451  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

=> d hist

(FILE 'HOME' ENTERED AT 15:15:33 ON 03 JAN 2012)

INDEX 'ADISCTI, ADISINSIGHT, ADISNEWS, AGRICOLA, ANABSTR, ANTE, AQUALINE, AQUASCI, BIOENG, BIOSIS, BIOTECHABS, BIOTECHDS, BIOTECHNO, CABA, CAPLUS, CEABA-VTB, CIN, CONFSCI, CROPB, CROPU, DDFB, DDFU, DGENE, DISSABS, DRUGB, DRUGU, EMBAL, EMBASE, ESBIOBASE, ...' ENTERED AT 15:15:47 ON 03 JAN 2012  
SEA KRILL AND OIL AND MEAL AND SUPERCRITICAL(P)EXTRACT? AND SOL

- 0\* FILE ADISNEWS
- 0\* FILE ANTE
- 0\* FILE AQUALINE
- 0\* FILE BIOENG
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHABS
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHDS
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHNO
- 0\* FILE CEABA-VTB
- 0\* FILE CIN
- 0\* FILE FOMAD
- 0\* FILE FROSTI
- 0\* FILE FSTA
- 1 FILE IFIPAT
- 0\* FILE KOSMET
- 0\* FILE NTIS
- 0\* FILE PASCAL
- 28 FILE USPATFULL
- 4 FILE USPAT2
- 0\* FILE WATER
- 1 FILE WPIDS
- 1 FILE WPINDEX

L1 QUE KRILL AND OIL AND MEAL AND SUPERCRITICAL(P)EXTRACT? AND SOL

FILE 'IFIPAT, USPATFULL, USPAT2' ENTERED AT 15:19:01 ON 03 JAN 2012

- L2 33 S L1
- L3 32 DUP REM L2 (1 DUPLICATE REMOVED)
- L4 27 S L3 AND DIOXIDE

=> logoff

ALL L# QUERIES AND ANSWER SETS ARE DELETED AT LOGOFF

LOGOFF? (Y)/N/HOLD:y

COST IN U.S. DOLLARS

SINCE FILE TOTAL

ENTRY SESSION

FULL ESTIMATED COST

43.57 47.51

STN INTERNATIONAL LOGOFF AT 15:21:58 ON 03 JAN 2012

Connecting via Winsock to STN at pto-stn on port 23

Welcome to STN International! Enter x:X

LOGINID:ssspt189dxw

PASSWORD:

TERMINAL (ENTER 1, 2, 3, OR ?):2

\* \* \* \* \* Welcome to STN International \* \* \* \* \*

NEWS 1 FEB 1 Instructor-led and on-demand STN training options available from CAS

NEWS 2 AUG 01 CA Sections Added to ACS Publications Web Editions Platform

NEWS 3 AUG 16 INPADOC: Coverage of German Patent Data resumed, enhanced legal status

NEWS 4 AUG 18 Upgrade now to STN Express, Version 8.5

NEWS 5 SEP 01 CAS Journal Coverage Now Includes Ahead-of-Print Articles for More Than 100 Journal Titles

NEWS 6 SEP 01 Older Versions of STN Express to be Discontinued Beginning in March 2012

NEWS 7 SEP 09 USAN Database Updates Offer Superior Currency on STN(R)

NEWS 8 SEP 26 STN Adds Canadian Patent Full-text Database - CANPATFULL

NEWS 9 SEP 26 GEOREF and ENCOMPLIT databases were reloaded on September 24, 2011.

NEWS 10 SEP 26 Updates to the IFIPAT/IFIUDB/IFICDB databases have resumed.

NEWS 11 SEP 26 ECLA Thesaurus in CA/CAPLUS Improves Patent Searching on STN

NEWS 12 SEP 26 Access AUPATFULL and CANPATFULL databases with STN Viewer

NEWS 13 OCT 26 New STN Revolutionizes Patent Searching for Professionals

NEWS 14 DEC 1 CA/CAPLUS Now Includes Examiner Citations for Japanese Patents

NEWS 15 DEC 1 CAS Expands Global Patent Coverage - Intellectual Property Corporation of Malaysia Becomes 62nd Authority on CA/CAPLUS

NEWS 16 DEC 5 STN on the Web Enhancements Include Compatibility with Microsoft Windows 7

NEWS 17 DEC 14 Removal of ITRD and PATIPC databases from STN

NEWS 18 DEC 15 Rolled-up IPC Core Codes Removed from IPC Reclassifications in Patent Databases on STN

NEWS 19 JAN 12 Structure Graphics Have Been Added to Abstracts for MARPAT and CA/CAPLUS on STN

NEWS 20 JAN 15 Online Access to Very Large Chemical Structure Images Enhanced on STN

NEWS 21 JAN 26 IFICLS Updates Resume on STN

NEWS 22 JAN 31 MEDLINE Reload - Updated MeSH Vocabulary and Two New Fields on STN

NEWS 23 FEB 1 INPADOC Databases Enhanced with Japanese Patent Classifications, Current U.S. Classification and Japanese Legal Status.

NEWS 24 FEB 3 Access More Than 32,000 Harmonized Tariff Codes Now in CHEMLIST on STN

NEWS 25 FEB 13 PCTFULL Documents with Non-Latin Filing Language Enhanced with English Machine Translations

NEWS 26 FEB 28 REACH List of Registered Substances Now in CHEMLIST on STN

NEWS 27 MAR 12 RTECS Database on STN Enhanced with Aquatic and In Vitro Exposure Toxicity Data

NEWS 28 MAR 12 MARPAT Database Enhanced with Additional Markush Backfile Content for STN

NEWS 29 MAR 19 The 1MOBILITY and 2MOBILITY databases were reloaded on March 18, 2012

NEWS 30 MAR 19 STN Adds Chinese Patent Full Text Database - CNFULL

NEWS 31 MAR 19 Get the Content You Need Sooner with ePub Ahead of Print Records Available in MEDLINE on STN!

NEWS 32 MAR 30 NAPRALERT Updated with More Natural Products Information

NEWS 33 APR 9 CAS Expands Global Patent Coverage - The Eurasian Patent Organization Becomes 63rd Authority on CA/CAPLUS

NEWS 34 APR 16 DWPI Database (WPINDEX, WPIDS, WPIX) Enhanced with Numerical Property Search Feature

NEWS 35 APR 23 RSS Delivery for STN Alerts (SDIs) is Now Available on STN

NEWS 36 MAY 9 INIS, BABS and GMELIN97 Databases Removed from STN

NEWS 37 MAY 21 Reload of FSTA Database

NEWS 38 MAY 21 Search DOIs in CA/CAplus on STN  
NEWS 39 MAY 23 Get the Latest Version of STN Express, Version 8.5.1!

NEWS EXPRESS 23 MAY 2012 CURRENT WINDOWS VERSION IS V8.5.1,  
AND CURRENT DISCOVER FILE IS DATED 19 APRIL 2012.

NEWS HOURS STN Operating Hours Plus Help Desk Availability  
NEWS LOGIN Welcome Banner and News Items  
NEWS TRAINING Find instructor-led and self-directed training opportunities

Enter NEWS followed by the item number or name to see news on that specific topic.

All use of STN is subject to the provisions of the STN customer agreement. This agreement limits use to scientific research. Use for software development or design, implementation of commercial gateways, or use of CAS and STN data in the building of commercial products is prohibited and may result in loss of user privileges and other penalties.

\* \* \* \* \* STN Columbus \* \* \* \* \*

FILE 'HOME' ENTERED AT 14:50:46 ON 29 MAY 2012

=> index bioscience  
COST IN U.S. DOLLARS

SINCE FILE	TOTAL
ENTRY	SESSION
0.24	0.24

FULL ESTIMATED COST

INDEX 'ADISCTI, ADISINSIGHT, ADISNEWS, AGRICOLA, ANABSTR, ANTE, AQUALINE, AQUASCI, BIOENG, BIOSIS, BIOTECHABS, BIOTECHDS, BIOTECHNO, CABA, CAPLUS, CEABA-VTB, CIN, CONFSCI, CROPB, CROPU, DDFB, DDFU, DGENE, DISSABS, DRUGB, DRUGU, EMBAL, EMBASE, ESBIODBASE, ...' ENTERED AT 14:51:15 ON 29 MAY 2012

56 FILES IN THE FILE LIST IN STNINDEX

Enter SET DETAIL ON to see search term postings or to view search error messages that display as 0\* with SET DETAIL OFF.

=> s krill and oil and cook? and dry?(p)krill and krill(p)meal and extract?(p)krill(p)oil

- 0\* FILE ADISNEWS
- 0\* FILE ANTE
- 0\* FILE AQUALINE
- 0\* FILE BIOENG
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHABS
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHDS
- 0\* FILE BIOTECHNO
- 0\* FILE CEABA-VTB
- 0\* FILE CIN

29 FILES SEARCHED...

- 0\* FILE FOMAD
- 0\* FILE FROSTI
- 3 FILE IFIPAT
- 0\* FILE KOSMET
- 0\* FILE NTIS
- 0\* FILE PASCAL
- 9 FILE USPATFULL

50 FILES SEARCHED...

- 3 FILE USPAT2
- 0\* FILE WATER

4 FILE WPIDS  
4 FILE WPINDEX

5 FILES HAVE ONE OR MORE ANSWERS, 56 FILES SEARCHED IN STNINDEX

L1 QUE KRILL AND OIL AND COOK? AND DRY?(P)KRILL AND KRILL(P)MEAL AND EXTRACT?  
(P)KRILL(P)OIL

=> file ifipat uspatfull uspat2  
COST IN U.S. DOLLARS

	SINCE FILE	TOTAL
	ENTRY	SESSION
FULL ESTIMATED COST	1.48	1.72

FILE 'IFIPAT' ENTERED AT 14:52:35 ON 29 MAY 2012  
COPYRIGHT (C) 2012 IFI CLAIMS(R) Patent Services (IFI)

FILE 'USPATFULL' ENTERED AT 14:52:35 ON 29 MAY 2012  
CA INDEXING COPYRIGHT (C) 2012 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY (ACS)

FILE 'USPAT2' ENTERED AT 14:52:35 ON 29 MAY 2012  
CA INDEXING COPYRIGHT (C) 2012 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY (ACS)

=> s l1  
L2 15 L1

=> dup rem l2  
PROCESSING COMPLETED FOR L2  
L3 13 DUP REM L2 (2 DUPLICATES REMOVED)

=> d l3 1-13

L3 ANSWER 1 OF 13 IFIPAT COPYRIGHT 2012 IFI on STN DUPLICATE 1  
AN 12887434 IFIPAT;IFIUDB;IFICDB  
TI SOLVENT-FREE PROCESS FOR OBTAINING PHOSPHOLIPIDS AND NEUTRAL ENRICHED  
KRILL OILS  
IN Sclabos Katevas Dimitri (CL); Toro Guerra Raul R (CL); Chiong Lay Mario M  
(CL)  
PA THAROS LTD CL  
LONZA LTD CH  
(50035)  
PI US 20110224450 A1 20110915  
AI US 2011-96644 20110428 (13)  
RLI WO 2009-IB7269 20091030 CONTINUATION-IN-PART PENDING  
FI US 20110224450 20110915  
DT Utility; Patent Application - First Publication  
FS CHEMICAL  
APPLICATION  
ED Entered STN: 21 Oct 2011  
Last Updated on STN: 13 Jan 2012  
CLMN 25

L3 ANSWER 2 OF 13 USPAT2 on STN  
AN 2007:272601 USPAT2  
TI Gels, gel composites, and gel articles  
IN Chen, John Y., Hillsborough, CA, UNITED STATES  
PA Applied Elastomerics, Inc., South San Francisco, CA, UNITED STATES (U.S.  
corporation)  
PI US 7930782 B2 20110426  
AI US 2007-810584 20070605 (11)  
RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2007-787257, filed on 12 Apr 2007,  
Pat. No. US 7661164 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2004-912464,  
filed on 4 Aug 2004, Pat. No. US 7226484 Continuation-in-part of Ser.

No. US 2002-420489, filed on 21 Apr 2002, Pat. No. US 7222380  
Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2003-420492, filed on 21 Apr 2003,  
Pat. No. US 7344568 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2000-721213,  
filed on 21 Nov 2000, Pat. No. US 6867253

DT Utility  
FS GRANTED  
LN.CNT 5886  
INCL INCLM: 005/655.500  
INCLS: 005/636.000; 005/652.000; 005/654.000; 005/909.000; 602/041.000;  
602/061.000; 602/062.000; 602/063.000; 623/016.110; 623/020.140;  
623/021.110; 623/023.400; 623/027.000; 623/033.000; 623/036.000;  
524/270.000; 524/284.000; 524/490.000; 524/491.000; 524/549.000;  
524/571.000; 524/575.000; 521/050.000; 521/054.000; 521/139.000;  
521/140.000; 521/148.000  
NCL NCLM: 005/655.500; 525/240.000  
NCLS: 005/636.000; 005/652.000; 005/654.000; 005/909.000; 521/050.000;  
521/054.000; 521/139.000; 521/140.000; 521/148.000; 524/270.000;  
524/284.000; 524/490.000; 524/491.000; 524/549.000; 524/571.000;  
524/575.000; 602/041.000; 602/061.000; 602/062.000; 602/063.000;  
623/016.110; 623/020.140; 623/021.110; 623/023.400; 623/027.000;  
623/033.000; 623/036.000  
IPC IPCI C08L0023-16 [I,A]  
IPCI-2 B29C0067-20 [I,A]; B60R0021-26 [I,A]; A61F0002-80 [I,A];  
B60K0028-00 [I,A]; A47C0007-00 [I,A]  
IPCR B29C0067-20 [I,A]; A47C0007-00 [I,A]; A61F0002-80 [I,A];  
B60K0028-00 [I,A]; B60R0021-26 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 3 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2010:256169 USPATFULL  
TI PHOSPHOLIPID AND PROTEIN TABLETS  
IN Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Hoem, Nils, Oslo, NORWAY  
PA AKER BIOMARINE ASA, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20100227792 A1 20100909  
AI US 2010-711822 A1 20100224 (12)  
PRAI US 2009-155758P 20090226 (61)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 3112  
INCL INCLM: 514 2  
NCL NCLM: 514/005.500  
NCLS: 514/691.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0038-02 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0038-02 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 4 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2010:255355 USPATFULL  
TI LOW VISCOSITY PHOSPHOLIPID COMPOSITIONS  
IN Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
PA AKER BIOMARINE ASA, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20100226977 A1 20100909  
AI US 2010-711553 A1 20100224 (12)  
RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2008-201325, filed on 29 Aug 2008,  
PENDING  
PRAI US 2009-155767P 20090226 (61)  
US 2007-968765P 20070829 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2394  
INCL INCLM: 424/456.000

INCLS: 426/601.000; 426/417.000; 514/078.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/456.000  
NCLS: 426/417.000; 426/601.000; 514/078.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0031-685 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A]; A23D0009-02 [I,A];  
A61K0009-48 [I,A]; A61P0009-00 [I,A]; A61P0019-00 [I,A];  
A61P0029-00 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0031-685 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A]; A23D0009-02 [I,A];  
A61K0009-48 [I,A]; A61P0009-00 [I,A]; A61P0019-00 [I,A];  
A61P0029-00 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 5 OF 13 IFIPAT COPYRIGHT 2012 IFI on STN DUPLICATE 2  
AN 12061067 IFIPAT;IFIUDB;IFICDB  
TI METHOD FOR MAKING KRILL MEAL  
IN Hostmark Oistein (NO); Tilseth Snorre (NO)  
PA Aker BioMarine ASA NO (79725)  
PI US 20090061067 A1 20090305  
AI US 2008-201325 20080829 (12)  
PRAI US 2007-968765P 20070829 (Provisional)  
FI US 20090061067 20090305  
DT Utility; Patent Application - First Publication  
FS CHEMICAL  
APPLICATION  
ED Entered STN: 10 Mar 2009  
Last Updated on STN: 9 Apr 2009  
CLMN 51

L3 ANSWER 6 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2008:312554 USPATFULL  
TI BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS  
IN Bruheim, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
Griinari, Mikko, Espoo, FINLAND  
Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Banni, Sebastiano, Cagliari, ITALY  
Cohn, Jeffrey Stuart, Camperdown, AUSTRALIA  
Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
PA AKER BIOMARINE ASA, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20080274203 A1 20081106  
AI US 2008-57775 A1 20080328 (12)  
PRAI US 2007-920483P 20070328 (60)  
US 2007-975058P 20070925 (60)  
US 2007-983446P 20071029 (60)  
US 2008-24072P 20080128 (61)

DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 2199

INCL INCLM: 424/522.000  
INCLS: 514/121.000; 514/078.000; 514/114.000; 426/601.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/522.000  
NCLS: 426/601.000; 514/078.000; 514/114.000; 514/121.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I,A]; A61K0031-661 [I,A]; A61K0031-685 [I,A];  
A61P0003-02 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A]; A61K0031-66 [I,A]  
IPCR A61K0035-56 [I,A]; A23D0009-00 [I,A]; A61K0031-66 [I,A];  
A61K0031-661 [I,A]; A61K0031-685 [I,A]; A61P0003-02 [I,A]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 7 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2007:272601 USPATFULL  
TI Gels, gel composites, and gel articles  
IN Chen, John Y., Hillsborough, CA, UNITED STATES  
PI US 20070238835 A1 20071011  
US 7930782 B2 20110426

AI US 2007-810584 A1 20070605 (11)  
 RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2007-787257, filed on 12 Apr 2007,  
 PENDING Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2004-912464, filed on 4 Aug  
 2004, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7226484 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 2003-613567, filed on 2 Jul 2003, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7093316  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2003-420489, filed on 21 Apr 2003,  
 GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7222380 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 2003-420487, filed on 21 Apr 2003, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7193002  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2003-420488, filed on 21 Apr 2003,  
 GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7134929 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 2003-420490, filed on 21 Apr 2003, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7105607  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2003-420491, filed on 21 Apr 2003,  
 GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7093599 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 2003-420492, filed on 21 Apr 2003, PENDING Continuation-in-part of Ser.  
 No. US 2003-420493, filed on 21 Apr 2003, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7067583  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2004-896047, filed on 22 Jul 2004,  
 PENDING Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2002-273828, filed on 17 Oct  
 2002, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 6909220 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 2002-334542, filed on 31 Dec 2002, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7159259  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2002-299073, filed on 18 Nov 2002,  
 ABANDONED Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2002-199364, filed on 20  
 Jul 2002, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 6794440 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No.  
 US 2002-199361, filed on 20 Jul 2002, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7134236  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2002-199362, filed on 20 Jul 2002,  
 GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7208184 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 2002-199363, filed on 20 Jul 2002, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 7108873  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2000-721213, filed on 21 Nov 2000,  
 GRANTED, Pat. No. US 6867253 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 1998-130545, filed on 8 Aug 1998, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 6627275  
 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1999-230940, filed on 3 Feb 1999,  
 GRANTED, Pat. No. US 6161555 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US  
 1997-863794, filed on 27 May 1997, GRANTED, Pat. No. US 6117176  
 PRAI JP 2003-204428 20030731  
 WO 1994-US4278 19940419  
 WO 1994-US7314 19940627  
 DT Utility  
 FS APPLICATION  
 LN.CNT 5757  
 INCL INCLM: 525/240.000  
 NCL NCLM: 005/655.500; 525/240.000  
 NCLS: 005/636.000; 005/652.000; 005/654.000; 005/909.000; 521/050.000;  
 521/054.000; 521/139.000; 521/140.000; 521/148.000; 524/270.000;  
 524/284.000; 524/490.000; 524/491.000; 524/549.000; 524/571.000;  
 524/575.000; 602/041.000; 602/061.000; 602/062.000; 602/063.000;  
 623/016.110; 623/020.140; 623/021.110; 623/023.400; 623/027.000;  
 623/033.000; 623/036.000  
 IPC IPCI C08L0023-16 [I,A]  
 IPCI-2 B29C0067-20 [I,A]; B60R0021-26 [I,A]; A61F0002-80 [I,A];  
 B60K0028-00 [I,A]; A47C0007-00 [I,A]  
 IPCR B29C0067-20 [I,A]; A47C0007-00 [I,A]; A61F0002-80 [I,A];  
 B60K0028-00 [I,A]; B60R0021-26 [I,A]  
 CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.  
 L3 ANSWER 8 OF 13 USPAT2 on STN  
 AN 2004:24434 USPAT2  
 TI Gelatinous food elastomer compositions and articles for use as fishing  
 bait  
 IN Chen, John Y., Pacifica, CA, UNITED STATES  
 PA Applied Elastomerics, Inc., South San Francisco, CA, UNITED STATES (U.S.  
 corporation)  
 PI US 7208184 B2 20070424  
 AI US 2002-199362 20020720 (10)

DT Utility  
FS GRANTED  
LN.CNT 4932  
INCL INCLM: 426/001.000  
INCLS: 043/042.000; 043/042.240; 424/084.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/001.000  
NCLS: 043/042.000; 043/042.240; 424/084.000  
IPC IPCI A23L0001-00 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A23L0001-00 [I,A]  
IPCR A23L0001-00 [I,A]; A01K0085-01 [I,A]; A01K0097-04 [I,A]  
EXF 426/1; 043/42; 043/42.24; 424/84  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 9 OF 13 USPAT2 on STN  
AN 2004:24385 USPAT2  
TI Gelatinous food elastomer compositions and articles  
IN Chen, John Y., Pacifica, CA, UNITED STATES  
PA Applied Elastomerics, Inc., South San Francisco, CA, UNITED STATES (U.S. corporation)  
PI US 7108873 B2 20060919  
AI US 2002-199363 20020720 (10)  
RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2001-721213, filed on 21 Nov 2001, Pat. No. US 6867253 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2001-896047, filed on 30 Jun 2001, PENDING Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1999-421886, filed on 5 Oct 1999, ABANDONED Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1999-285809, filed on 1 Apr 1999, ABANDONED Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1999-274498, filed on 23 Mar 1999, Pat. No. US 6420475 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1998-130545, filed on 8 Aug 1998, Pat. No. US 6627275 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1997-984459, filed on 3 Dec 1997, Pat. No. US 6324703 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. WO 1997-US17534, filed on 30 Sep 1997, Pat. No. WO 6161555 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1997-909487, filed on 12 Jul 1997, Pat. No. US 6050871 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1997-863794, filed on 27 May 1997, Pat. No. US 6117176 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1996-719817, filed on 30 Sep 1996, Pat. No. US 6148830 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1996-665343, filed on 17 Jun 1996, PENDING Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1996-612586, filed on 8 Mar 1996, Pat. No. US 6552109 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1995-581191, filed on 29 Dec 1995, Pat. No. US 5760117 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1995-581188, filed on 29 Dec 1995, ABANDONED Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1995-581125, filed on 29 Dec 1995, Pat. No. US 5962572 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 1994-288690, filed on 11 Aug 1994, Pat. No. US 5633286 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. WO 1994-US7314, filed on 27 Jun 1994, Pat. No. WO 5868597 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. WO 1994-US4278, filed on 19 Apr 1994, Pat. No. WO 6033383

DT Utility  
FS GRANTED  
LN.CNT 3521  
INCL INCLM: 426/001.000  
INCLS: 426/573.000; 524/505.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/001.000; 424/439.000  
NCLS: 426/573.000; 524/505.000  
IPC IPCI A61K0047-00 [ICM,7]  
IPCI-2 A01K0097-04 [I,A]; A23L0001-05 [I,A]  
IPCR A01K0097-04 [I,A]; A23L0001-05 [I,A]; A23L0001-317 [I,A]; A23L0001-325 [I,A]; A61K0047-00 [I,A]  
EXF 524/505; 424/486; 426/1; 426/648; 426/656; 426/534; 426/555; 426/573  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 10 OF 13 IFIPAT COPYRIGHT 2012 IFI on STN  
AN 04308583 IFIPAT;IFIUDB;IFICDB

TI Protein and lipid sources for use in aquafeeds and animal feeds and a process for their preparation; Subjecting oilseed to heat treatment to reduce concentration of antinutritional components to obtain heat-treated seed; dehulling seed to produce a meat fraction, a hull fraction or a mixture; cold pressing to obtain plant oils and meals

IN Shand Ian (CA); Cairns Robert E (CA); Higgs David (CA)

PA Canada Fisheries and Oceans Minister of CA (51835)

PI US 6955831 B2 20051018 (CITED IN 002 LATER PATENTS)  
 US 20030072866 A1 20030417

AI US 2002-76499 20020219 (10)

RLI US 2000-566728 20000509 CONTINUATION-IN-PART ABANDONED

PRAI CA 2001-2334745 20010213  
 WO 2001-CA663 20010508  
 CA 2001-2351903 20010626

FI US 6955831 20051018  
 US 20030072866 20030417

DT Utility; Granted Patent - Utility, with Pre-Grant Publication

FS CHEMICAL  
 GRANTED

ED Entered STN: 19 Oct 2005  
 Last Updated on STN: Jan 2011

MRN 012837 MFN: 0842

CLMN 32

L3 ANSWER 11 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN

AN 2004:24434 USPATFULL

TI Gelatinous food elastomer compositions and articles for use as fishing bait

IN Chen, John Y., Pacifica, CA, UNITED STATES

PI US 20040018272 A1 20040129  
 US 7208184 B2 20070424

AI US 2002-199362 A1 20020720 (10)

DT Utility

FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 4354

INCL INCLM: 426/001.000

NCL NCLM: 426/001.000

NCLS: 043/042.000; 043/042.240; 424/084.000

IPC [7]  
 IPCI A23L0001-00 [ICM,7]  
 IPCI-2 A23L0001-00 [I,A]  
 IPCR A23L0001-00 [I,A]; A01K0085-01 [I,A]; A01K0097-04 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 12 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN

AN 2004:24385 USPATFULL

TI Gelatinous food elastomer compositions and articles

IN Chen, John Y., Pacifica, CA, UNITED STATES

PI US 20040018223 A1 20040129  
 US 7108873 B2 20060919

AI US 2002-199363 A1 20020720 (10)

DT Utility

FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 3229

INCL INCLM: 424/439.000

NCL NCLM: 426/001.000; 424/439.000

NCLS: 426/573.000; 524/505.000

IPC [7]  
 IPCI A61K0047-00 [ICM,7]  
 IPCI-2 A01K0097-04 [I,A]; A23L0001-05 [I,A]  
 IPCR A01K0097-04 [I,A]; A23L0001-05 [I,A]; A23L0001-317 [I,A];  
 A23L0001-325 [I,A]; A61K0047-00 [I,A]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 13 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2003:165578 USPATFULL  
TI Process for making dried powdery and granular krill  
IN Yoshitomi, Bunji, Tokyo, JAPAN  
Shigematsu, Yoshiaki, Tokyo, JAPAN  
PA NIPPON SUISAN KAISHA, LTD., Tokyo, JAPAN (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20030113432 A1 20030619  
AI US 2002-283063 A1 20021030 (10)  
RLI Continuation of Ser. No. US 2001-807953, filed on 25 Apr 2001, PENDING  
PRAI JP 1998-311730 19981102  
DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 481  
INCL INCLM: 426/643.000  
NCL NCLM: 426/643.000  
IPC [7]  
IPCI A23L0001-325 [ICM,7]  
IPCR A23B0004-03 [I,A]; A23L0001-325 [I,A]; A23L0001-326 [I,A];  
A23L0001-33 [I,A]

=> d 13 13 kwic

L3 ANSWER 13 OF 13 USPATFULL on STN  
TI Process for making dried powdery and granular krill  
AB A dried powdery and granular krill product containing all components of krill. The proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials are perfectly disabled. The product is produced by a process including only heating as means for denaturing protein and disabling the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials. The product is produced by a process including no chemicals treatment to remove water and disable or inactivate the proteolytic enzymes in any production steps, and generating no wastewater. The production process comprises the steps of lightly dehydrating krill, coarsely crushing the krill, and drying the coarsely crushed krill under heating. Thus, water is removed from the krill by only heating, and degradation of the lipid in the krill product is prevented without using an anti-oxidant. Application fields are enlarged and the preservation characteristic is improved. The so-called zero-emission. . .

SUMM [0002] The present invention relates to a dried powdery and granular krill product which contains all components of krill and in which lipid degradation is sufficiently prevented with no need of an anti-oxidant.

SUMM [0004] Krill are animal plankton living primarily in the Arctic and Antarctic Oceans, and about 80 kinds of krill have been known up to date. Of those many kinds of krill, Antarctic Krill (*Euphasia superba*) living in the Antarctic Ocean are found in abundance as one of natural resources. Therefore, survey of the resource and development of the method of catching the krill have been extensively conducted in the period of 1970 to 1985, including studies for developing methods of processing the krill to be useful in practical applications.

SUMM [0005] Krill are comparable to fish, flesh and fowl in point of nutritive value, but there are several problems in processing the krill for practical applications. One of the problems is that krill lose freshness in short time. If krill are left to stand after being caught, the heads and chests of the krill start changing into black color in 1-2 hours even at a low atmospheric temperature of about 0° C. Further, shells of the heads and chests of krill are so vulnerable to external pressure that the krill are easily broken down upon impacts applied at the time of catching, whereupon the enzymes

present in the internal organs flow out and decompose muscles. Those phenomena occur under actions of the enzymes present in krill. It is thought that tyrosinase is responsible for the former color-changing phenomenon, and protease is responsible for the latter muscle-decomposing. . . .

SUMM [0006] Accordingly, those enzymes require to be disabled or inactivated when processing krill. In other words, it has been required immediately after catching krill to quickly freeze the krill down to below -40° C., thereby inactivating the enzymes, or to heat the krill up to above 80° C., thereby disabling the enzymes, followed by preserving the krill.

SUMM [0007] Known krill products include raw frozen and peeled krill products which are subjected to quick freezing and then preserved in a frozen condition, boiled krill products which are heated and then preserved in a frozen condition, and krill meal which is heated and dried and then preserved at the normal temperature. The following Tables 1 and 2 list classifications of those products depending on how krill are processed, and features and points to be improved of the products.

SUMM . . . Japan, the product price greatly depends on the transportation cost. There is hence a desire for extracting excellent characteristics of krill more efficiently and realizing krill products having a higher value added.

TABLE 1

Processing	Processing Object	Product Examples
Quick freezing, Preserve in frozen condition	Inactivate enzymes	Raw frozen and stripped krill
Heating, Preserve in frozen condition	Disable enzymes	Boiled krill
Heating & Preserve at normal temperature	drying, Disable enzymes	Krill meal
SUMM . . .	Points to be improved	
Raw frozen and stripped krill	Products have flavor, taste and feeling of raw krill.	Remaining high water content and activity of enzymes necessitate storage and distribution in frozen state. Enzymes are activated upon thawing and product quality degrades. Drips flow out.
Boiled krill	Heating disables enzymes and makes protein stable to give meat-like feeling.	Flavor and taste components flow out during boiling. Cold chain is required because of high water content.
Krill meal	Heating disables enzymes and makes protein stable. Meal can be stored at normal temp. because of low water content.	Digestibility lowers due to protein denaturation during heating. Water-soluble components flow out into stickwater.

SUMM [0010] Japanese Unexamined Patent Publication No. 57-11876 discloses a method of impeding activity of the proteolytic enzymes in krill and utilizing the krill as protein materials. With the disclosed method, a krill paste is degenerated with alcohol to effect fixation (denaturation) of protein and degeneration of the enzymes at the same time. The processed krill paste is then washed with water to remove alcohol. The disclosed method however has the following problems.

SUMM [0013] 3. Polar lipid is removed together with alcohol during washing with water. Most of the lipid in krill is phospholipid and is rich in polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs). Thus these PUFAs are removed.

SUMM . . . square. The shrimp materials thus processed are dried under heating to thereby provide dried shrimp granules. Considering specific properties of krill, however, it is inferred that even if krill are dried under heating after being processed in a similar manner as in the prior art, ground krill are very difficult to dry into a satisfactory condition.

SUMM [0018] From intensive studies, the inventors found that when krill are processed in a similar manner as in the prior art, lipid, protein and water contained in the krill are brought into an emulsified state, and the processed krill are very difficult to dry even with a heating and drying machine. Such a difficulty is related to the fact that most of the lipid in krill is phospholipid, as described above, and therefore emulsification is further increased. In other words, water in the krill is stabilized in structure with emulsification and becomes still harder to evaporate under heating.

SUMM [0019] In addition, when krill are crushed into the form of ground meat, the proteolytic enzymes present in the internal organs of the krill develop activity, and a temperature rise during the grinding process increases the activity of those enzymes. As a consequence, proteolysis in the krill is promoted and specific taste is deteriorated.

SUMM [0021] An object of the present invention is therefore to effectively utilize krill as one of valuable aquatic resources, and to provide a dried powdery and granular krill product and a method of producing the dried powdery and granular krill product, which contains all components of krill and has a good preservation ability while activity of the enzymes in the krill is totally disabled.

SUMM [0022] The present invention resides in a dried powdery and granular krill product that contains all components of krill. Because of containing all components of krill, the present product has a function capable of sufficiently preventing degradation of the lipid in the krill product without using an anti-oxidant. In the dried powdery and granular krill product, the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials are perfectly disabled. Accordingly, the present invention also resides in a dried powdery and granular krill product which contains all components of krill and in which the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials are perfectly disabled. The present product is produced by a process including only heating as means for denaturing protein and disabling the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials. Accordingly, the present invention further resides in a dried powdery and granular krill product which contains all components of krill, in which the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials are perfectly disabled, and which is produced by a process including only heating as means for denaturing protein and disabling the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials.

SUMM [0023] The dried powdery and granular krill product of the present invention is produced by a process including no chemicals treatment to remove water and disable or. . . the proteolytic enzymes in any production steps, and generating no wastewater. The production process comprises the steps of lightly dehydrating krill, coarsely crushing the krill, and drying the coarsely crushed krill under heating.

SUMM [0024] The dried powdery and granular krill product of the present invention is subjected to no chemical treatment using chemicals, etc. in any production steps, and is. . . Also, there is no step in the production process in which wastewater is generated. Thus, water is removed from the krill by only heating. Moreover, application fields are enlarged and the preservation characteristic is improved. The so-called zero-emission method and product,. . .

SUMM [0025] The production method of the present invention comprises steps of

removing seawater from krill, coarsely crushing the krill, and drying the coarsely crushed krill under heating. In the conventional process of producing krill meal, krill are first boiled in water in the same amount as the krill, and are then subjected to separation into solid and liquid components. The solid component is heated and dried using a . . . drier. The liquid component obtained from the solid/liquid separation is called stickwater and preserved separately. For this reason, the conventional krill meal contains less water-soluble components than the krill product of the present invention, and therefore has disadvantages in not providing satisfactory flavor and taste in the extracted form,. . . the conventional production process is disadvantageous in that protein is excessively denatured by heating applied in both the boiling and heating/drying steps, and digestibility of the product is reduced.

- DRWD [0026] FIG. 1 is a graph showing activity of the proteolytic enzymes remaining in raw krill and the product of the present invention; and
- DETD [0028] There are 80 or more kinds of krill as described above, but the kind of krill used in the present invention is not restricted. In addition to krill, mysids are also usable.
- DETD [0029] Krill primarily used in an embodiment are Antarctic Krill (*Euphasia superba*) which have been employed in industrial fields.
- DETD [0031] Krill used as materials are put into a fish tank at once after being caught. The krill are then put in a dehydrator to remove seawater, etc. attaching to the krill surfaces. The type of the dehydrator is not particularly restricted, but outer shells of krill are so fragile that the shells are easily broken down under pressure of 40-140 g/cm<sup>sup.2</sup> and the internal components flow. . . Therefore, the type of the dehydrator is preferably selected so that an excessive physical load will not be applied to krill.
- DETD [0032] The dehydrated krill are chopped to improve thermal efficiency in the heating and drying process. The type of a machine used for chopping the krill is not particularly restricted. The grain size of the chopped krill is selected to a coarsely crushed state, i.e., about 1.5-2.5 cm square, at which outer shells and muscular tissues of the krill materials remain. This process can be performed with, e.g., a known mincing apparatus, which is usually employed for grinding meat. .
- DETD [0033] The chopped krill are dried under heating. The type of a machine for use in this process is also not particularly restricted. While a known heating and drying machine such as a steam type disk dryer, for example, can be used, the machine is preferably adjustable in heating time, heating temperature, degree of agitation, and so forth. Because the internal components of krill as one of natural resources change depending on the season, it is desired to adjust the parameters of the machine in match with the change of the internal components of krill for obtaining products with constant quality.
- DETD [0034] The heating time and the heating temperature are set to such an extent that the muscular protein of krill and the proteolytic enzymes in krill are denatured and degenerated under heating, and that the water content is reduced down to below 10% from a point of ensuring good preservation. It is important that the heating and drying process is not performed at overly high temperatures and for an overly long time, and is performed at the necessary. . . values to satisfy the above-described conditions. Excessive heating lowers digestibility due to extreme denaturation, reduces astaxanthin, natural dye, present in krill, reduces vitamins, and oxidizes lipid. On the other hand, if heating is insufficient, activity of the proteolytic enzymes in krill remains, which leads to a deterioration of product quality. If the water content is over ten and several percents, the krill product gathers mold during preservation.
- DETD [0035] The dried krill are very fragile, including the shells, and therefore can be easily crushed any desired grain size.

DETD [0036] The krill product of the present invention can be used as a main material of feed for cultured fish in place of. . .

DETD . . . above in connection with the prior art is attributable to crushing of raw materials into the form of ground meat, krill materials are first chopped into pieces having a size of 20-30% of the body length (about 1.5-2.5 cm square) and are then put into a heating and drying machine in the present invention. As a result, the krill materials are avoided from being emulsified and the drying efficiency is enhanced. Further, strong activity of the proteolytic enzymes present in the internal organs of krill is suppressed and an adverse influence upon flavor and taste of the krill product is reduced. In addition, the chopped krill do not adhere to the heating surface and can be heated appropriately, thus greatly contributing to improvement of product quality.

DETD [0038] Moreover, since the dried krill product obtained in accordance with the method of the present invention has a large grain size and maintains a fair part of shapes of the krill materials, it is also possible to produce products utilizing the shapes of the krill materials advantageously. Additionally, the dried krill can be simply crushed into a desired grain size as required.

DETD [0040] FIG. 1 shows comparatively activity of the proteolytic enzymes remaining in raw krill and the krill product of the present invention.

DETD . . . as a substrate. As will be seen from FIG. 1, the activity of the remaining proteolytic enzymes in the raw krill is increased with lapse of the reaction time, while the activity of the remaining proteolytic enzymes in the krill product of the present invention is hardly changed. This suggests that the proteolytic enzymes remain not alive in the krill product of the present invention and they are perfectly disabled in the production process, and that a possibility of quality deterioration of the krill product during the preservation is low.

DETD [0042] Preservation characteristics of the krill product of the present invention will be described with reference to Tables 3 and 4 below.

DETD [0043] For comparison, the results listed in Table 3 were obtained by preparing two groups of the krill product of the present invention, in one of which ethoxyquin that is most generally used as an anti-oxidant in meal, etc. was added to the krill product and in the other of which no ethoxyquin was added, and then measuring a change of product quality by. . .

DETD [0045] There are several indexes indicating a degree of lipid degradation. About the lipid in krill, particularly, the krill lipid having been extracted and refined, it is known that, during the preservation, a peroxide value hardly increases and only a carbonyl value increases. In other words, it is pointed out that degradation of the krill lipid differs in creation of oxides and progress rate of the decomposing reaction from those in general fish oil, etc.

TABLE 3

	Acid value		Peroxide value	Carbonyl value	
	with no anti-oxidant	with anti-oxidant		with	with
DETD			no. . .		

. . . from Table 4, a phenomenon of the lipid degrading at apparently different rates during the preservation was found between the krill product of the present invention and a control prepared by perfectly removing all the water-soluble components originally present in krill from the krill product of the present invention. Although the material responsible for the above phenomenon is not yet known, it is believed that the water-soluble components originally present in krill have some anti-oxidizing action. For this reason, in the krill product of

the present invention which contains all the components of krill in an enriched condition, lipid degradation can be prevented satisfactorily without using any anti-oxidant.

TABLE 4

	Peroxide value	Carbonyl. . .
DETD	[0048]	1. Process Flow Including Plant for Drying Krill
DETD	[0049]	An outline of the process flow is as shown in FIG. 2. Krill materials are first conveyed by a krill supply apparatus from a fish tank to a material tank, and are then supplied to a dehydrator in a proper lot. The use of a dehydrator basically intends to remove seawater contained in the krill materials. Since it is expected that the amount of water contained in krill varies depending on the materials, a diaphragm is adjusted to provide a proper dehydration rate, taking into account the performance. . . are then supplied to a drier. The materials are boiled in the drier under heating with vapor, followed by further drying. At the time when reaching a predetermined water content, the drying is stopped and a resulting dried semifinished product is ejected. The dried semifinished product is conveyed to a product tank, . . .
DETD	[0050]	The conventional production process for krill meal is represented by raw krill→boiling→centrifugal separation or solid/liquid separation→extraction of solid→drying→crushing→packaging. The liquid component was removed in the centrifugal separation step, and the useful components of krill contained in the liquid component were discarded. It can be said from one aspect that the krill meal was a product resulted from drying the sludge.
DETD	[0051]	By contrast, the process flow for producing the krill product of the present invention is represented by raw krill→removal of water attached to krill→boiling→drying→crushing→packaging. The centrifugal separation step is not included. In the boiling and drying steps, the enzymes in krill are disabled and the krill components are stabilized through thermal degeneration. Thus, the components originally contained in the krill are all kept in the product without being discarded externally. An apparatus for implementing the above process is featured in omitting a step of squeezing boiled krill using a decanter or a press. The krill drying apparatus used in the present invention differs from the conventional meal producing apparatus in that a cooker and a drier are combined in an integral structure.
DETD	[0053]	Table 5 lists component analytical values of the krill product of the present invention. For comparison, Table 5 also lists component analytical values of the krill meal produced by the conventional process. In particular, the krill product of the present invention contains free amino acids as much as more than twice the amount contained in the conventional krill meal. The free amino acids deeply take part in developing flavor and taste of the product when eaten, attractant of feed. . .
DETD	[0054]	Since the squeezing step subsequent to boiling of the krill materials is omitted, the components developing flavor and taste are not lost and the krill product of the present invention has good flavor. Further, the production process of the present invention generates no appreciable wastewater and provides a high yield.

TABLE 5

	Krill meal	Product of invention
Water	6.5	8.3

Coarse protein	64.0	65.1
(Free amino acid)	(2.9)	(7.54)
Coarse fat	7.0	7.0
Coarse. . .		

DETD [0055] According to the present invention, a method is provided which can effectively utilize krill, as one of important aquatic resources, in a perfect manner without any loss due to efflux of krill components. The dried powdery and granular krill product obtained by the present invention contains all the components originally contained in the krill, and strong activity of the enzymes specific to the krill is disabled. Therefore, the krill product of the present invention can be widely applied to not only the feed industry, but also the food industry.

CLM What is claimed is:  
1. A dried powdery and granular krill product containing all components of krill.

CLM What is claimed is:  
2. A dried powdery and granular krill product according to claim 1, wherein the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials are perfectly disabled.

CLM What is claimed is:  
3. A dried powdery and granular krill product according to claim 1 or 2, wherein said product is produced by a process including only heating as means for denaturing protein and disabling the proteolytic enzymes originally contained in krill materials.

CLM What is claimed is:  
4. A dried powdery and granular krill product according to claim 1, 2 or 3, wherein said product is produced by a process including no chemicals treatment. . .

CLM What is claimed is:  
5. A dried powdery and granular krill product according to any one of claims 1 to 4, wherein said product is produced by a process comprising the steps of lightly dehydrating krill, coarsely crushing the krill, and drying the coarsely crushed krill under heating.

=> d hist

(FILE 'HOME' ENTERED AT 14:50:46 ON 29 MAY 2012)

INDEX 'ADISCTI, ADISINSIGHT, ADISNEWS, AGRICOLA, ANABSTR, ANTE, AQUALINE, AQUASCI, BIOENG, BIOSIS, BIOTECHABS, BIOTECHDS, BIOTECHNO, CABA, CAPLUS, CEABA-VTB, CIN, CONFSCI, CROPB, CROPU, DDFB, DDFU, DGENE, DISSABS, DRUGB, DRUGU, EMBAL, EMBASE, ESBIOWASE, ...' ENTERED AT 14:51:15 ON 29 MAY 2012  
SEA KRILL AND OIL AND COOK? AND DRY?(P)KRILL AND KRILL(P)MEAL A

```

-----
0* FILE ADISNEWS
0* FILE ANTE
0* FILE AQUALINE
0* FILE BIOENG
0* FILE BIOTECHABS
0* FILE BIOTECHDS
0* FILE BIOTECHNO
0* FILE CEABA-VTB
0* FILE CIN
0* FILE FOMAD
0* FILE FROSTI
3 FILE IFIPAT

```

0\* FILE KOSMET  
0\* FILE NTIS  
0\* FILE PASCAL  
9 FILE USPATFULL  
3 FILE USPAT2  
0\* FILE WATER  
4 FILE WPIDS  
4 FILE WPINDEX

L1 QUE KRILL AND OIL AND COOK? AND DRY?(P)KRILL AND KRILL(P)MEAL A  
-----

FILE 'IFIPAT, USPATFULL, USPAT2' ENTERED AT 14:52:35 ON 29 MAY 2012

L2 15 S L1

L3 13 DUP REM L2 (2 DUPLICATES REMOVED)

=> logoff

ALL L# QUERIES AND ANSWER SETS ARE DELETED AT LOGOFF

LOGOFF? (Y)/N/HOLD:y

COST IN U.S. DOLLARS

SINCE FILE	TOTAL
ENTRY	SESSION
29.49	31.21

FULL ESTIMATED COST

STN INTERNATIONAL LOGOFF AT 14:55:32 ON 29 MAY 2012

Connecting via Winsock to STN at pto-stn on port 23

Welcome to STN International! Enter x:X

LOGINID:ssspt189dxw

PASSWORD:

TERMINAL (ENTER 1, 2, 3, OR ?):2

\* \* \* \* \* Welcome to STN International \* \* \* \* \*

NEWS 1 JAN 29 Instructor-led and on-demand STN training options available  
from CAS  
NEWS 2 MAY 27 Get the Latest Version of STN Express, Version 8.5.2.1,  
Available May 2014  
NEWS 3 JAN 09 Updated Enzyme Nomenclature Improves Access to Biological  
Information in CAS REGISTRY  
NEWS 4 JAN 09 DEFULL - German (Deutschland, DE) Patents Full-text Database  
New on STN  
NEWS 5 JAN 27 STN on the Web Now Compatible with Microsoft Windows 8.1 and  
current Versions of Internet Explorer and Google Chrome  
NEWS 6 JAN 27 Annual MEDLINE Reload on STN Introduces New Searching  
Capabilities and the Updated 2014 MeSH Thesaurus  
NEWS 7 FEB 03 DWPI: Latest Manual Code Revision goes live  
NEWS 8 FEB 03 DWPI: New coverage of Singapore PCT-transfers and grants  
NEWS 9 FEB 24 INFULL and DEFULL databases Now Available via STN Viewer  
NEWS 10 MAR 28 New STN Platform Enhancements Available, Increase Efficiency  
of Search Workflow.  
NEWS 11 APR 25 New Format Adopted for Taiwanese Granted Patent Numbers  
in CAS Databases and INPADOC.  
NEWS 12 MAY 2 New STN Global Value Pricing Empowers You to Maximize the  
Value of STN

NEWS 13 MAY 9 STN AnaVist, Version 2.1, Improves Operating System  
Compatibility and Performance

NEWS 14 MAY 19 Availability of Digital Object Identifiers (DOIs) Enhanced in  
STN Databases

NEWS 15 MAY 20 New Cluster NPS available for all Databases with the Numeric  
Property Search feature

NEWS 16 MAY 29 CAS REGISTRY BLAST Upgrade Improves Search Capabilities and  
Results Ranking

NEWS 17 JUN 10 MEDLINE on STN Now Updated Daily

NEWS 18 JUL 1 CHEMCATS (Chemical Catalogs Online) on STN Enhanced with New  
Search and Display Fields and More Frequent Updates

NEWS 19 JUL 24 Batch search results for DGENE, USGENE and PCTGEN now  
available for 30 days

NEWS 20 JUL 28 Latest release of new STN now available, expands global  
patent coverage and enhances search capabilities

NEWS 21 SEP 4 KRFULL: New Full-text Database for Korean Patent  
Publications Now Available on new STN

NEWS 22 OCT 1 Cooperative Patent Classification (CPC) Combination Set Data  
Now Available in CPlus, INPADOCDB and USPAT Databases

NEWS 23 OCT 23 CPC Thesaurus based on official CPC Scheme

NEWS 24 DEC 22 2015 MeSH Thesaurus Installed in MEDLINE with a Special  
Message for Customers Doing Pharmacovigilance Research

NEWS 25 DEC 24 CAS Expands Coverage of Reactions from Dissertations in  
CASREACT

NEWS 26 DEC 24 Additional Experimental Spectra Now Available in CAS REGISTRY  
in STN

NEWS 27 JAN 8 Latest Version of Emtree Introduces 937 New Terms

NEWS 28 JAN 9 Derwent World Patents Index: Latest Manual Code Revision  
Goes Live

NEWS 29 JAN 26 Revision of DWPI Fragmentation Codes for 2015

NEWS 30 JAN 26 Annual MEDLINE Reload on STN Features Enhanced Clinical Trial  
Information and the 2015 MeSH Thesaurus

NEWS 31 MAR 23 Enhanced Coverage of Latin America (AR, MX) in Derwent World  
Patent Index

NEWS EXPRESS 27 MAY 2014 CURRENT WINDOWS VERSION IS V8.5.2.1,  
AND CURRENT DISCOVER FILE IS DATED 26 JANUARY 2015.

NEWS HOURS STN Operating Hours Plus Help Desk Availability  
NEWS LOGIN Welcome Banner and News Items  
NEWS TRAINING Find instructor-led and self-directed training opportunities

Enter NEWS followed by the item number or name to see news on that  
specific topic.

All use of STN is subject to the provisions of the STN customer  
agreement. This agreement limits use to scientific research. Use  
for software development or design, implementation of commercial  
gateways, or use of CAS and STN data in the building of commercial  
products is prohibited and may result in loss of user privileges  
and other penalties.

\* \* \* \* \* STN Columbus \* \* \* \* \*

FILE 'HOME' ENTERED AT 13:09:18 ON 02 APR 2015

=> index bioscience

FILE 'WPIDS' ACCESS NOT AUTHORIZED  
FILE 'WPINDEX' ACCESS NOT AUTHORIZED  
COST IN U.S. DOLLARS

SINCE FILE	TOTAL
ENTRY	SESSION
0.25	0.25

FULL ESTIMATED COST

INDEX 'ADISCTI, ADISINSIGHT, ADISNEWS, AGRICOLA, ANABSTR, BIOSIS, BIOTECHABS, BIOTECHDS, BIOTECHNO, CABA, CAPLUS, CEABA-VTB, CIN, CROPB, CROPU, DDFB, DDFU, DGENE, DISSABS, DRUGB, DRUGU, EMBAL, EMBASE, ESBIODASE, FOMAD, FROSTI, FSTA, GENBANK, IFIALL, ...' ENTERED AT 13:09:33 ON 02 APR 2015

46 FILES IN THE FILE LIST IN STNINDEX

Enter SET DETAIL ON to see search term postings or to view search error messages that display as 0\* with SET DETAIL OFF.

=> s krill and meal and krill(p)oil and cook? and delip? and extract? and polar(p)solvent and ether(p)phospholipids

0\* FILE ADISNEWS  
0\* FILE BIOTECHABS  
0\* FILE BIOTECHDS  
0\* FILE BIOTECHNO

10 FILES SEARCHED...

0\* FILE CEABA-VTB  
0\* FILE CIN  
0\* FILE FOMAD  
0\* FILE FROSTI  
0\* FILE KOSMET  
0\* FILE NTIS

33 FILES SEARCHED...

0\* FILE PASCAL  
7 FILE USPATFULL  
1 FILE USPAT2

2 FILES HAVE ONE OR MORE ANSWERS, 46 FILES SEARCHED IN STNINDEX

L1 QUE KRILL AND MEAL AND KRILL(P) OIL AND COOK? AND DELIP? AND EXTRACT? AND POLAR(P) SOLVENT AND ETHER(P) PHOSPHOLIPIDS

=> file uspatfull uspat2

COST IN U.S. DOLLARS	SINCE FILE ENTRY	TOTAL SESSION
FULL ESTIMATED COST	2.55	2.80

FILE 'USPATFULL' ENTERED AT 13:11:32 ON 02 APR 2015  
CA INDEXING COPYRIGHT (C) 2015 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY (ACS)

FILE 'USPAT2' ENTERED AT 13:11:32 ON 02 APR 2015  
CA INDEXING COPYRIGHT (C) 2015 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY (ACS)

=> s L1

L2 8 L1

=> dup rem L2

PROCESSING COMPLETED FOR L2  
L3 8 DUP REM L2 (0 DUPLICATES REMOVED)

=> d L3 1-8

L3 ANSWER 1 OF 8 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2015:4199 USPATFULL  
TI BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS  
IN Bruheim, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
PI US 20150004227 A1 20150101  
AI US 2014-14490221 A1 20140918 (14)

RLI Continuation of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar 2008, PENDING  
 PRAI US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)  
 US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)  
 US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)  
 US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)  
 DT Utility  
 FS APPLICATION  
 LN.CNT 1955  
 INCL INCLM: 424/456.000  
 INCLS: 424/522.000; 424/451.000  
 NCL NCLM: 424/456.000  
 NCLS: 424/522.000; 424/451.000  
 CPC CPCI A61K0035-612 [I]; A61K0031-23 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-683 [I],  
 A61K2300-00; A61K0031-685 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-122 [I],  
 A61K2300-00  
 IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I]  
 CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 2 OF 8 USPATFULL on STN  
 AN 2015:4195 USPATFULL  
 TI BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS  
 IN Bruheim, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
 Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
 Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
 PI US 20150004223 A1 20150101  
 AI US 2014-14490176 A1 20140918 (14)  
 RLI Continuation of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar 2008, PENDING  
 PRAI US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)  
 US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)  
 US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)  
 US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)  
 DT Utility  
 FS APPLICATION  
 LN.CNT 1983  
 INCL INCLM: 424/451.000  
 INCLS: 424/522.000  
 NCL NCLM: 424/451.000  
 NCLS: 424/522.000  
 CPC CPCI A61K0035-612 [I]; A61K0031-23 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-683 [I],  
 A61K2300-00; A61K0031-685 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-122 [I],  
 A61K2300-00  
 IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I]  
 CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 3 OF 8 USPATFULL on STN  
 AN 2014:407114 USPATFULL  
 TI METHODS OF USING KRILL OIL TO TREAT RISK FACTORS FOR CARDIOVASCULAR,  
 METABOLIC, AND INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS  
 IN BRUHEIM, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
 TILSETH, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
 COHN, Jeffery, Sydney, AUSTRALIA  
 GRIINARI, Mikko, Espoo, FINLAND  
 BANNI, Sebastiano, Calgliari, ITALY  
 MANCINELLI, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
 HOEM, Nils, Oslo, NORWAY  
 VIK, Hogne, Eiksmarka, NORWAY  
 PA AKER BIOMARINE AS, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
 PI US 20140363517 A1 20141211  
 AI US 2014-14244532 A1 20140403 (14)  
 RLI Division of Ser. No. US 2010-790575, filed on 28 May 2010, Pat. No. US  
 8697138 Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar  
 2008, PENDING

PRAI US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)  
US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)  
US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)  
US 2009-61181743 20090528 (61)  
US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)

DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 2476

INCL INCLM: 424/522.000

NCL NCLM: 424/522.000

CPC CPCI A61K0035-612 [I]

IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I]

IPCR A61K0035-56 [I]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 4 OF 8 USPATFULL on STN

AN 2014:11777 USPATFULL

TI BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS

IN Bruheim, Inge, Volda, NORWAY

Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY

Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY

PI US 20140010888 A1 20140109

AI US 2013-14020155 A1 20130906 (14)

RLI Continuation of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar 2008, PENDING

PRAI US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)

US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)

US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)

US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)

DT Utility

FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 1898

INCL INCLM: 424/522.000

NCL NCLM: 424/522.000

CPC CPCI A61K0035-612 [I]; A61K0031-122 [I]; A61K0031-202 [I]; A61K0031-23 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-683 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-685 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-122 [I], A61K2300-00

IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I]; A61K0031-202 [I]; A61K0031-122 [I]

IPCR A61K0035-56 [I]; A61K0031-122 [I]; A61K0031-202 [I]

CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 5 OF 8 USPATFULL on STN

AN 2014:5400 USPATFULL

TI BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS

IN Bruheim, Inge, Volda, NORWAY

Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY

Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY

PI US 20140005421 A1 20140102

AI US 2013-14020162 A1 20130906 (14)

RLI Continuation of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar 2008, PENDING

PRAI US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)

US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)

US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)

US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)

DT Utility

FS APPLICATION

LN.CNT 1908

INCL INCLM: 554/008.000

NCL NCLM: 554/008.000

CPC CPCI C11B0003-006 [I]; A61K0031-23 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-683 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-685 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-122 [I], A61K2300-00

IPC IPCI C11B0003-00 [I]

IPCR C11B0003-00 [I]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 6 OF 8 USPAT2 on STN  
AN 2011:117391 USPAT2  
TI Methods of using krill oil to treat risk factors for cardiovascular,  
metabolic, and inflammatory disorders  
IN Bruheim, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Cohn, Jeffery, Sydney, AUSTRALIA  
Griinari, Mikko, Espoo, FINLAND  
Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
Hoem, Nils, Oslo, NORWAY  
Vik, Hogne, Eiksmarka, NORWAY  
Banni, Sebastiano, Calgliari, ITALY  
PA Aker Biomarine AS, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 8697138 B2 20140415  
AI US 2010-790575 20100528 (12)  
RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar 2008,  
PENDING  
PRAI US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)  
US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)  
US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)  
US 2009-61181743 20090528 (61)  
US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)  
DT Utility  
FS GRANTED  
LN.CNT 2694  
INCL INCLM: 424/538.000  
INCLS: 424/283.100  
NCL NCLM: 424/538.000; 424/522.000  
NCLS: 424/283.100; 426/002.000  
CPC CPC1 A61K0035-612 [I]  
CPC2 A61K0035-612 [I]  
IPC IPC1 A61K0035-56 [I]; A61P0009-10 [I]; A61P0003-04 [I]; A61P0003-00  
[I]  
IPC2 A61K0035-64 [I]; A61K0045-00 [I]; A61K0047-44 [I]  
IPCR A61K0035-64 [I]; A61K0045-00 [I]; A61K0047-44 [I]

L3 ANSWER 7 OF 8 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2011:117391 USPATFULL  
TI METHODS OF USING KRILL OIL TO TREAT RISK FACTORS FOR CARDIOVASCULAR,  
METABOLIC, AND INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS  
IN BRUHEIM, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Cohn, Jeffery, Sydney, AUSTRALIA  
Griinari, Mikko, Espoo, FINLAND  
Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
Hoem, Nils, Oslo, NORWAY  
Vik, Hogne, Eiksmarka, NORWAY  
Banni, Sebastiano, Calgliari, ITALY  
PA Aker BioMarine A.S.A., Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20110104297 A1 20110505  
US 8697138 B2 20140415  
AI US 2010-790575 A1 20100528 (12)  
RLI Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. US 2008-57775, filed on 28 Mar 2008,  
PENDING  
PRAI US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)  
US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)  
US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)  
US 2009-61181743 20090528 (61)  
US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)

DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2547  
INCL INCLM: 424/522.000  
INCLS: 426/002.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/538.000; 424/522.000  
NCLS: 424/283.100; 426/002.000  
CPC CPCI A61K0035-612 [I]  
CPCI-2 A61K0035-612 [I]  
IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I]; A61P0009-10 [I]; A61P0003-04 [I]; A61P0003-00  
[I]  
IPCI-2 A61K0035-64 [I]; A61K0045-00 [I]; A61K0047-44 [I]  
IPCR A61K0035-64 [I]; A61K0045-00 [I]; A61K0047-44 [I]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

L3 ANSWER 8 OF 8 USPATFULL on STN  
AN 2008:312554 USPATFULL  
TI BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS  
IN Bruheim, Inge, Volda, NORWAY  
Griinari, Mikko, Espoo, FINLAND  
Tilseth, Snorre, Bergen, NORWAY  
Banni, Sebastiano, Cagliari, ITALY  
Cohn, Jeffrey Stuart, Camperdown, AUSTRALIA  
Mancinelli, Daniele, Orsta, NORWAY  
PA AKER BIOMARINE ASA, Oslo, NORWAY (non-U.S. corporation)  
PI US 20080274203 A1 20081106  
AI US 2008-57775 A1 20080328 (12)  
PRAI US 2007-60920483 20070328 (60)  
US 2007-60975058 20070925 (60)  
US 2007-60983446 20071029 (60)  
US 2008-61024072 20080128 (61)

DT Utility  
FS APPLICATION  
LN.CNT 2199  
INCL INCLM: 424/522.000  
INCLS: 514/121.000; 514/078.000; 514/114.000; 426/601.000  
NCL NCLM: 424/522.000  
NCLS: 426/601.000; 514/078.000; 514/114.000; 514/121.000  
CPC CPCI A61K0035-612 [I]; A61K0009-4858 [I]; A61K0031-122 [I];  
A61K0031-202 [I]; A61K0031-23 [I]; A61K0031-683 [I]; A61K0031-685  
[I]; A61K0045-06 [I]; C11B0003-006 [I]; A61K0031-23 [I],  
A61K2300-00; A61K0031-683 [I], A61K2300-00; A61K0031-685 [I],  
A61K2300-00; A61K0031-122 [I], A61K2300-00  
IPC IPCI A61K0035-56 [I]; A61K0031-661 [I]; A61K0031-685 [I]; A61P0003-02  
[I]; A23D0009-00 [I]; A61K0031-66 [I]  
IPCR A61K0035-56 [I]; A23D0009-00 [I]; A61K0031-66 [I]; A61K0031-661  
[I]; A61K0031-685 [I]; A61P0003-02 [I]  
CAS INDEXING IS AVAILABLE FOR THIS PATENT.

=> d hist

(FILE 'HOME' ENTERED AT 13:09:18 ON 02 APR 2015)

INDEX 'ADISCTI, ADISINSIGHT, ADISNEWS, AGRICOLA, ANABSTR, BIOSIS,  
BIOTECHABS, BIOTECHDS, BIOTECHNO, CABA, CAPLUS, CEABA-VTB, CIN, CROPB,  
CROPU, DDFB, DDFU, DGENE, DISSABS, DRUGB, DRUGU, EMBAL, EMBASE,  
ESBIOBASE, FOMAD, FROSTI, FSTA, GENBANK, IFIALL, ...' ENTERED AT 13:09:33  
ON 02 APR 2015

SEA KRILL AND MEAL AND KRILL(P)OIL AND COOK? AND DELIP? AND EXT

-----  
0\* FILE ADISNEWS

0\* FILE BIOTECHABS  
0\* FILE BIOTECHDS  
0\* FILE BIOTECHNO  
0\* FILE CEABA-VTB  
0\* FILE CIN  
0\* FILE FOMAD  
0\* FILE FROSTI  
0\* FILE KOSMET  
0\* FILE NTIS  
0\* FILE PASCAL  
7 FILE USPATFULL  
1 FILE USPAT2

L1 QUE KRILL AND MEAL AND KRILL(P) OIL AND COOK? AND DELIP? AND EX  
-----

FILE 'USPATFULL, USPAT2' ENTERED AT 13:11:32 ON 02 APR 2015

L2 8 S L1

L3 8 DUP REM L2 (0 DUPLICATES REMOVED)

=> logoff

ALL L# QUERIES AND ANSWER SETS ARE DELETED AT LOGOFF

LOGOFF? (Y)/N/HOLD:y

COST IN U.S. DOLLARS

SINCE FILE

TOTAL

ENTRY

SESSION

FULL ESTIMATED COST

14.96

17.76

STN INTERNATIONAL LOGOFF AT 13:12:58 ON 02 APR 2015



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO., EXAMINER, ART UNIT, PAPER NUMBER, MAIL DATE, DELIVERY MODE. Includes application details for Inge Bruheim and examiner WARE, DEBORAH K.

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.



The present application is being examined under the pre-AIA first to invent provisions.

### **DETAILED ACTION**

#### ***Continued Examination Under 37 CFR 1.114***

A request for continued examination under 37 CFR 1.114, including the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(e), was filed in this application after final rejection. Since this application is eligible for continued examination under 37 CFR 1.114, and the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(e) has been timely paid, the finality of the previous Office action has been withdrawn pursuant to 37 CFR 1.114. Applicant's submission filed on September 7, 2012, has been entered.

Claims 1-50 and 52-90 are pending.

#### **Response to Amendment**

The Amendments filed September 7, 2012, were received and entered. Claims 50 and 52-55 are considered on the merits.

#### **Information Disclosure Statement**

The information disclosure statements (IDSs) submitted after the filing of the RCE have been received.

#### **Election/Restrictions**

Applicant's election without traverse of Group VIII, claims 50-55, 51, now canceled so remaining elected, claims 50 and 52-55, original election in the reply filed on October 31, 2011, and was acknowledged.

Art Unit: 1651

Claims 1-49 and 56-90 are hereby withdrawn from further consideration pursuant to 37 CFR 1.142(b) as being drawn to a nonelected inventions, there being no allowable generic or linking claim. Election was made without traverse in the reply filed on October 31, 2011.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless –

(b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States.

Claim 55 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as being clearly anticipated by Patent Abstract of Japan 04-057853, dated Feb. 25, 1992, cited on previously enclosed PTO-1449 Form or cited US 2003/0113432 (US), cited on previously enclosed PTO-892 form.

Claim drawn to an oil produced thereby.

Abstract 04-057853 teaches method for extracting krill oil comprising a)providing krill meal; and extracting oil from the krill meal (powdered form of krill parts). The meal (powdered form of krill parts) can be provided from heat-treated krill parts and is storable. The extracting is carried out by supercritical extraction. An oil is produced by the method.

Art Unit: 1651

US teaches Krill lipid (e.g. krill oil) at [0045], lines 1-8. An apparatus comprising a cooker and a drier is disclosed at [0051], at page 5, col. 1, lines 1-2. Heating which is akin to cooking is disclosed at page 5, line 17 at col. 2. Cooking and drying step is disclosed at [0051], lines 1-12, to provide dried krill meal. Extraction of Krill oil is disclosed at [0045], line 3. US clearly teaches that the krill meal contains all of its components and is not extracted and since it is dried it can inherently be stored before extraction.

The claims are identical to the abstract and US as discussed above and are considered to be clearly anticipated by the teachings therein. Krill shells are part of krill and oil is obtained from the krill parts. The krill parts are dried and hence subjected to heating to provide for the krill meal which is subjected to supercritical extraction in two steps to obtain the oil. US clearly teaches cooking and drying and extraction is disclosed as well which will be carried out on a prepared product having all the contents including oil or lipid. The krill lipid or oil is not different than any krill oil or lipid as disclosed in the art or Applicants have not shown a single difference. The krill oil as claimed must be different than the oil or lipid as disclosed, no matter how it is prepared. Krill meal can be stored before it is desired to extract an oil therefrom. The claims are anticipated by the cited references.

#### Response to Arguments

Applicant's arguments filed September 7, 2012, have been fully considered but they are not persuasive. The argument that there are specified phospholipid content is noted, however, the krill oil is only claimed to contain phospholipids. The JP abstract clearly

Art Unit: 1651

teaches that krill oil is extracted from treated krill shells and will contain phospholipids. No specified amounts are claimed in claim 55. US teaches [0002] that the krill product contains all components of krill. Thus, phospholipids will inherently be present in krill oil. No matter how the krill oil is made it will contain phospholipids. The composition of claim 55 is not limited necessarily to the lipid content of defined by claim 50.

Claim 55 fails to be patentably distinguishable over the state of the art discussed above and cited on the enclosed PTO-892 and/or PTO-1449. Therefore, the claim is properly rejected.

The remaining references listed on the enclosed PTO-892 and/or PTO-1449 are cited to further show the state of the art.

Claims 50 and 52-54 are allowed.

All claims are drawn to the same invention claimed in the application prior to the entry of the submission under 37 CFR 1.114 and could have been finally rejected on the grounds and art of record in the next Office action if they had been entered in the application prior to entry under 37 CFR 1.114. Accordingly, **THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL** even though it is a first action after the filing of a request for continued examination and the submission under 37 CFR 1.114. See MPEP § 706.07(b).

Applicant is reminded of the extension of time policy as set forth in 37 CFR 1.136(a).

A shortened statutory period for reply to this final action is set to expire THREE MONTHS from the mailing date of this action. In the event a first reply is filed within TWO MONTHS of the mailing date of this final action and the advisory action is not mailed until after the end of the THREE-MONTH shortened statutory period, then the

Art Unit: 1651

shortened statutory period will expire on the date the advisory action is mailed, and any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action. In no event, however, will the statutory period for reply expire later than SIX MONTHS from the mailing date of this final action.

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to DEBBIE K. WARE whose telephone number is (571)272-0924. The examiner can normally be reached on 9:30-6:00.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Taeyoon Kim can be reached on 571-272-9041. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

Application/Control Number: 12/057,775  
Art Unit: 1651

Page 7

/Deborah K. Ware/  
Deborah K. Ware  
Primary Examiner  
Art Unit 1651

Receipt date: 06/12/2014

12057775 - GAI: 1651

Doc code: IDS

Doc description: Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed

Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031  
 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE  
 Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775
	Filing Date		2008-03-28
	First Named Inventor	Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D.K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	2652235		1953-09-15	Samuelson	
	2	5006281		1991-04-09	Rubin et al.	
	3	4251557		1981-02-17	Shimose et al.	
	4	4505936		1985-03-19	Meyers et al.	
	5	6214396		2001-04-10	Barrier	
	6	4036993		1977-07-19	Ikeda	
	7	6346276		2002-02-12	Tanouchi et al.	
If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.						Add
<b>U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS</b>						Remove

<b>Receipt date: 06/12/2014</b>  <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D.K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. **Add**

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

**Remove**

Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup>	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	1098900	CA		1981-04-07	Inst. Elementoorganicheskikh So, et al.		<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

**Remove**

Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	VALERI, D., et al., "Visocities of Fatty acids, triglycerides and their binary mixtures," JAOCS 74 (1997) pp. 1221-1226	<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	CRC 2013-2014, 94th ed., pp. 6-231-6-235	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature	/Deborah Ware/	Date Considered	01/2015
--------------------	----------------	-----------------	---------

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Receipt date: 08/01/2013

12057775 - GAI: 1651

Doc code: IDS

Doc description: Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed

Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	NATNUT-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S. PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button. Add

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. Add

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS								Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup>	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	2004/112767	WO		2004-12-29	Advanced Bionutrition Corp.		<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button. Add

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS				Remove
Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.		T <sup>5</sup>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	NATNUT-14409/US-5/ORD		

1	European Search Report, EP Patent Application No. EP12187516, mailed June 10, 2013	<input type="checkbox"/>
---	--	--------------------------

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature	/Deborah Ware/	Date Considered	01/2015
--------------------	----------------	-----------------	---------

**\*EXAMINER:** Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

<b>Search Notes</b>  	<b>Application/Control No.</b>  12057775	<b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b>  BRUHEIM ET AL.
	<b>Examiner</b>  DEBBIE K WARE	<b>Art Unit</b>  1651

CPC- SEARCHED		
Symbol	Date	Examiner
A61K2300/00   A61K31/122   A61K31/23   A61K31/683   A61K31/685   A61K35/612   A61K31/202   A61K45/06   A61K9/4858   C11B3/006	1/2015	dkw

CPC COMBINATION SETS - SEARCHED		
Symbol	Date	Examiner

US CLASSIFICATION SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner

SEARCH NOTES		
Search Notes	Date	Examiner
WEST, NPL and INV: see search history print out	12/2011-1/2012	DKW
WEST, NPL and INV: see search history print out	6/2012	DKW
CPC-WEST, NPL and INV: see search history print out	01/2015	dkw

INTERFERENCE SEARCH			
US Class/ CPC Symbol	US Subclass / CPC Group	Date	Examiner

--	--

Receipt date: 12/17/2014

12057775 - GAI: 1651

Doc code: IDS

Doc description: Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed

Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031  
 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE  
 Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	8697138		2014-04-15	Bruheim et al.	
	2	7488503		2009-02-10	Porzio et al	
	3	4749522		1988-06-07	Kamarei	
	4	4814111		1989-03-21	Kearns et al.	
	5	4133077		1979-01-09	Jasniewicz	

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

Add

U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	20110130458		2011-06-02	Harald Breivik	

<b>Receipt date: 12/17/2014</b>  <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> <b>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)</b>	Application Number		12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit		1651	
	Examiner Name	Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number		AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

2	20080166420		2008-07-10	Scott F. Sones	
3	20060078625		2006-04-13	Susie Rockway	
4	20020076468		2002-06-20	Saxby	
5	20030113432		2003-06-19	Yoshitomi	
6	20100143571		2010-06-10	Breivik	
7	20100160659		2010-06-24	Catchpole	
8	20080166419		2008-07-10	Sones	

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. [Add](#)

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

[Remove](#)

Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup> i	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	40348	CL		1997-07-08	Tepual S.A.		<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	89/01031	WO		1989-02-09	Pharmacia AB		<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit		1651	
	Examiner Name	Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number		AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

3	89/10960	WO		1989-11-16	Pharmacia AB	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	97/38585	WO		1997-10-23	The University of British Columbia	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	98/34498	WO		1998-08-13	Biozyme Systems, Inc.	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	99/39589	WO		1999-08-12	Biozyme Systems Inc.	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	06/111633	WO		2006-10-26	SC DICOPHAR	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	07/123424	WO		2007-11-01	Catchpole	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	08/072563	WO		2008-06-19	Nippon Suisan Kaisha, Ltd.	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button [Add](#)

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

[Remove](#)

Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	EP Opposition filed February 13, 2014 by Olympic Seafood AS, EP Patent Application No. EP0871891016	<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	BRZUSTOWICZ, Michael R., et al., "Controlling Membrane Cholesterol Content. A Role for Polyunsaturated (Docosahexaenoate) Phospholipids," Biochemistry (2002), 41, pp. 12509-12519	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

3	JONG-HO LEE, "A Review: Antioxygenic and Peroxide-decomposing Activities of Antarctic Krill Lipids," J. Korean Soc. Food Nutr. 13(3) pp. 326-333 (1984)	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	KI WOONG CHO, et al., "Lipid and Fatty Acid Composition of the Antarctic Krill Euphausia superba," Ocean Research 21(2): 109-116 (1999)	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	HVATTUM, Erlend, et al., "Effect of soybean oil and fish oil on individual molecular species of Atlantic salmon...", Journal of Chromatography B, 748 (2000) 137-149	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	IGARASHI, Daisuke, et al., "Positional Distribution of DHA and EPA in Phosphatidylcholine and Phosphatidylethanolamine from Different Tissues of Squids," J. Oleo Sci. Vol. 50, No. 9 (2001)	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	TOCHIZAWA, Kaoru, et al., "Effects of Phospholipids Containing Docosahexaenoic Acid on Differentiation and Growth of HL-60 Human Promyelocytic Leukemia Cells," J. Jpn. Oil Chem. Soc. Vol. 46, No. 4 (1997)	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	ZEROUGA, Mustapha, et al., "Comparison of phosphatidylcholines containing one or two docosahexaenoic acyl chains on properties of phospholipid monolayers and bilayers," Biochimica et Biophysica Acta 1236 (1995) 266-272	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	EUNG-HO LEE, et al., "Studies on the Processing of Krill Sauce," J. Korean Soc. Food Nutr. 13(1) 97-106 (1984)	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	HYUN-KU KIM, et al., "Effects of Cooking and Drying Methods on the Polar Lipids Composition of Shrimp," Korean J. Food Sci. Technol. Vol. 21, No. 1, pp. 25-30 (1989)	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	SHON, Mi-Yae, et al., "Effects of Krill and Cadmium on Lipid Composition of Plasma in Cholesterol-Fed Rats," J. Korean Soc. Food Nutr. 23(1), 38-43 (1994)	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	Summons Materials downloaded from ESPACE on December 16, 2014 for EP Patent Application No. 08 718 910.6	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button [Add](#)

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

EXAMINER SIGNATURE			
Examiner Signature	/Deborah Ware/	Date Considered	01/2015

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

Receipt date: 01/15/2014

12057775 - GAI: 1651

Doc code: IDS

Doc description: Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed

Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031  
 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE  
 Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	4714571		1987-12-22	Kearns et al.	
	2	8278351		2012-10-02	Sampalis	
	3	8383675		2013-02-26	Sampalis	

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

Add

U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button.

Add

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS								Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup> i	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	2251265	CA		2000-04-21	Beaudoin		<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

2	60-153779	JP		1985-08-13	Honen Seiyu Co. Ltd.	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	H08-231391	JP		1996-09-10	Kanagawa Kagaku Kenkyuujo Co., Ltd. Et al.	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

**Remove**

Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	"Neptune Technologies & Bioresources Soon to Obtain a Major Patent in Over 30 Countries" ("2001 Press Release,")	<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	Action Closing Prosecution, '348 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
	3	April 2, 2012 Response to Office Action, '351 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
	4	Balassa et al., Microencapsulation in the Food Industry, Critical Reviews in Food Technology, 2:2, 245-265 (1971) ("Balassa")	<input type="checkbox"/>
	5	Bell and Dick, Molecular Species Composition of the Major Diacyl Glycerophospholipids from Muscle, Liver, Retina and Brain of Cod (Gadus morhua), Lipids, Vol. 26, No. 8, pp. 565-573 (1991) ("Bell and Dick")	<input type="checkbox"/>
	6	Bell, Molecular Species Analysis of Phosphoglycerides from the Ripe Roes of Cod, Lipids, Vol. 24, No. 7 (1989)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	7	Bell, Molecular Species Composition of Phosphatidylcholine from Cryptocodium cohnii in Relation to Growth Temperature Lipids 25, 115-118 (1990)	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

8	Bergelson (ed.), Lipid Biochemical Preparations, Chapter I.1, pp. 1-13 (1980) ("Bergelson")	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	Bottino, N.R., "Lipid Composition of Two Species of Antarctic Krill: Euphausia Superba and E. Crystallorophias," Comp. Biochem. Physiol., 1975, Vol. 50B, pp. 479-484 ("Bottino")	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	Buchi R-220 Rotovapor® Manual	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	Buda, Structural order of membranes and composition of phospholipids in fish brain cells during thermal acclimatization, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA Vol. 91, pp. 8234-8238, August 1994	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	Certificate of translation of Ex. 1072: Fisheries Agency, General Report on Research and Development of Techniques in Processing and Utilization of Marine Products, Chapter 6, Development of technology for recovery of valuable substances (astaxanthin) from krill, by Takao Fujita, pp. 273-307 (March 1985); Japanese language document	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Certificate of translation of Ex. 1074: Japanese Patent No. 60-153779, entitled "Nutritional Supplement"	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Certificate of translation of Ex. 1076: Japanese Patent Publication No. H08-231391, entitled "Medicine for Improvement of Dementia Symptoms"	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	Certification of translation of Ex. 1070: Japanese Unexamined Patent Application Publication No. 02-215351	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	Certified translation of Ex. 1070: Japanese Unexamined Patent Application Publication No. 02-215351, titled Krill Phospholipids Fractioning Method ("Maruyama,"); Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1071.	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	Certified translation of Ex. 1072: Fisheries Agency, General Report on Research and Development of Techniques in Processing and Utilization of Marine Products, Chapter 6, Development of technology for recovery of valuable substances (astaxanthin) from krill, by Takao Fujita, pp. 273-307 (March 1985) ("Fujita"); Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1073.	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	Certified translation of Ex. 1074: Japanese Patent No. 60-153779, entitled "Nutritional Supplement" ("Fukuoka "); Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1075	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Receipt date: 01/15/2014	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28		
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

19	Certified translation of Ex. 1076: Japanese Patent Publication No. H08-231391, entitled "Medicine for Improvement of Dementia Symptoms" ("Yasawa"); Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1077.	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	Declaration of Bjorn Ole Haugsgjerd in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Haugsgjerd")	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	Declaration of Bjorn Ole Haugsgjerd submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Haugsgjerd '348 Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	Declaration of Dr. Albert Lee in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Lee")	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	Declaration of Dr. Albert Lee in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Lee")	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	Declaration of Dr. Chong Lee submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Yeboah Reexam Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	Declaration of Dr. Earl White submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("2011 White Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	Declaration of Dr. Ivar Storrø in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Storrø")	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	Declaration of Dr. Ivar Storrø in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Storrø")	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	Declaration of Dr. Jacek Jaczynski from inter partes reexamination of the parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Jaczynski Reexam. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
29	Declaration of Dr. Jaczynski submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 (Jaczynski '351 Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>Receipt date: 01/15/2014</b>  <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> <b>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)</b>	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

30	Declaration of Dr. Jeff Moore in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Moore")	<input type="checkbox"/>
31	Declaration of Dr. Jeff Moore in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Moore")	<input type="checkbox"/>
32	Declaration of Dr. Richard van Breemen in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Van Breemen")	<input type="checkbox"/>
33	Declaration of Dr. Richard van Breemen in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Van Breemen")	<input type="checkbox"/>
34	Declaration of Dr. Shahidi submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 (Shahidi Reexam. Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
35	Declaration of Dr. Shahidi submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 (Shahidi '351 Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
36	Declaration of Dr. Suzanne Budge in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Budge")	<input type="checkbox"/>
37	Declaration of Dr. Suzanne Budge in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Budge")	<input type="checkbox"/>
38	Declaration of Dr. Thomas Brenna in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351	<input type="checkbox"/>
39	Declaration of Dr. Thomas Brenna in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675	<input type="checkbox"/>
40	Declaration of Dr. Thomas Gundersen submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Gundersen Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Receipt date: 01/15/2014	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28		
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

41	Declaration of Dr. Tina Sampalis submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 (Sampalis")	<input type="checkbox"/>
42	Declaration of Dr. Van Breemen submitted during Ex parte Reexamination of the '351 patent (Van Breemen '351 Reexam. Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
43	Declaration of Dr. Van Breemen submitted during Inter partes Reexamination of the '348 patent (Van Breemen '348 Reexam Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
44	Declaration of Dr. Yeboah submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Yeboah Reexam Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
45	Declaration of Dr. Yeboah submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 ("Yeboah '351 Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
46	Eichberg, "Lecithin – It Manufacture and Use in the Fat and Oil Industry," Oils and Soap 51-54, 1939 ("Eichberg")	<input type="checkbox"/>
47	Expert Witness Report of Dr. Theodore Welch submitted in relation to ITC Investigation No. 337-TA-877 ("Welch")	<input type="checkbox"/>
48	Farkas, Composition and Physical State of Phospholipids in Calanoid Copepods from India and Norway, LIPIDS, Vol. 23, No. 6 (1988)	<input type="checkbox"/>
49	Final Prospectus dated May 11, 2001 ("Final Prospectus")	<input type="checkbox"/>
50	Fisheries Agency, General Report on Research and Development of Techniques in Processing and Utilization of Marine Products, Chapter 6, Development of technology for recovery of valuable substances (astaxanthin) from krill, by Takao Fujita, pp. 273-307 (March 1985); Japanese language document	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button [Add](#)

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

EXAMINER SIGNATURE			
Examiner Signature	/Deborah Ware/	Date Considered	01/2015

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

Receipt date: 01/15/2014

12057775 - GAI: 1651

Doc code: IDS

Doc description: Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed

Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button. Add

U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. Add

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS								Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup>	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1							<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button Add

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS				Remove
Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.		T <sup>5</sup>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

1	Folch, et al., A Simple Method for the Isolation and Purification of Total Lipids from Animal Tissues. J. Biol. Chem., 226, 497-509 (1957)	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Grant of Request for Ex parte Reexamination of the '351 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Grit et al., Hydrolysis of phosphatidylcholine in aqueous liposome dispersions, Int. J. Pharmaceutics 50:1-6 (1989)	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Henderson et al., Lipid Composition of the Pineal Organ from Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss), Lipids, Vol. 29, No. 5, pp. 311-317 (1994) ("Henderson ")	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Herman and Groves, The Influence of Free Fatty Acid Formation on the pH of Phospholipid-Stabilized Triglyceride Emulsions, Pharmaceutical Research 10(5):774-776 (1993)	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	Itano Refrigerated Food Co., Ltd., Bio & High Technology Announcement and Natural Astaxanthin & Krill Lecithin, pp. 1-16 (on or before December 28, 1994) ("Itano")	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	Johnson and Lucas, Comparison of Alternative Solvents for Oils Extraction, JAOCS 60(2):229-242 (1983)	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	Le Grandois et al., Investigation of Natural Phosphatidylholine Sources: Separation and Identification by Liquid Chromatography -Electrospray Ionization-Tandem Mass Spectrometry (LC-ESI-MS2) of Molecular Species, J. Agric. Food Chem., 57, 6014-20 (2009) ("Le Grandois")	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	Lin et al., Effect of Dietary N-3 Fatty Acids Upon the PhospholipidMolecular Species of the Monkey Retina, Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 1994;35:794-803	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	Medina et al., C Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Monitoring of Free Fatty Acid Release After Fish Thermal Processing, J. Amer. Oil Chem. Soc. 71(5):479-82 (1994)	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	October 24, 2012 Office Action, '675 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

12	Office Action dated January 5, 2012, '351 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Provisional Application No. 60/307,842 (Priority document for the '351 patent)	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Supplemental Declaration of Bjorn Ole Haugsgjerd submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Haugsgjerd '348 Supp. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	Supplemental Declaration of Dr. Earl White submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("White Supp. Reexam. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	Supplemental Declaration of Dr. Earl White submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 ("White Supp. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	Supplemental Declaration of Dr. Thomas Gundersen submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Gundersen Supp. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	Suzuki, T. and Shibata, N., "The utilization of Antarctic krill for human food," Food Rev. Int'l, 6:1, 119-147 (1990) ("Suzuki")	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	Takahashi et al., Compositional Changes in Molecular Species of Fish Muscle Phosphatidylcholine During Storage, Bull. Fac. Fish. Hokkaido Univ. 37(1), 80-84 1986.	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	Takahashi et al., Molecular Species of Fish Muscle Lecithin, Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Scientific Fisheries 48 (12), 1803-1814 (1982)	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	Takahashi et al., Prediction of Relative Retention Value of the Individual Molecular Species of Diacyl Glycerolipid on High Performance Liquid Chromatography, Bull. Fac. Fish. Hokkaido Univ. 38(4), 398-404. 1987	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	Tanaka, Biosynthesis of 1,2-dieicosapentaenoyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphocholine in Caenorhabditis elegans, Eur. J. Biochem. 263, 189±194 (1999)	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28		
	First Named Inventor		Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit		1651		
	Examiner Name		D. K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number		AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

23	Tocher, Chapter 6, Glycerophospholipid metabolism, Biochemistry and molecular biology of fishes, vol. 4, Hochachka and Mommsen (eds.)(1995)	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	Watanabe et al., Effective Components in Cuttlefish Meal and Raw Krill for Improvement of Quality of Red Seabream Pagrus major Eggs, Nippon Suisan Gakkaishi 57(4):681-694 (1991)("Watanabe")	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	WHO News and Activities, Bulletin of the World Health Organization, 73(4), pp. 547-51 (1995) ("WHO Bulletin")	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature	/Deborah Ware/	Date Considered	01/2015
--------------------	----------------	-----------------	---------

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

Receipt date: 11/15/2012

12057775 - GAI: 1651

Doc code: IDS

Doc description: Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed

Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031  
 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE  
 Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	Ware, Deborah K.		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S. PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button. Add

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. Add

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS								Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup> j	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	2002322233	AU		2003-02-17	Neptune Technologies & Bioresources, Inc.		<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	04057853	JP		1992-02-25	CHLORINE ENG CORP LTD		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button Add

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS								Remove
---------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--------

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775	12057775 - GAU: 1651
	Filing Date	2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	Ware, Deborah K.	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	CN Office Action mailed April 27, 2012, JP Patent Application No. 200880112125.6 (and English translation)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	2	FRICKE, et al., Lipid, Sterol and Fatty Acid Composition of Antarctic Krill ( <i>Euphausia superba</i> Dana), <i>Lipids</i> (1984) 19 (11): 821-827.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	3	FRICKE, et al., 1-O-Alkylglycerolipids in Antarctic Krill ( <i>Euphausia Superba</i> Dana), <i>Comp. Biochem. Physiol.</i> (1986) 85B(1): 131-134	<input type="checkbox"/>
	4	GORDEEV, K.Y., et al. "Fatty Acid Composition of the Main Phospholipids of the Antarctic Krill, <i>Euphausia superba</i> ," <i>Chem. Nat. Cmpds.</i> (1990) 26(2), pp. 143-147	<input type="checkbox"/>
	5	GRANTHAM (1977) Southern Ocean Fisheries Survey Programme, FAO Rome, GLO/SO/77/3: 1-61.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	6	RAVENTOS et al., Application and Possibilities of Supercritical CO2 Extraction in Food Processing Industry: An Overview, <i>Food Science and Technology International</i> (2002) 8: 269-284	<input type="checkbox"/>
	7	TANAKA, T., et al., Platelet-activating Factor (PAF)-like Phospholipids Formed during Peroxidation of Phosphatidylcholines from Different Foodstuffs, <i>Biosci. Biotech. Biochem.</i> (1995) 59 (8), pp. 1389-93	<input type="checkbox"/>
	8	WINTHER, et al., Elucidation of Phosphatidylcholine Composition in Krill Oil Extracted from <i>Euphausia superba</i> , <i>Lipids</i> (2011) 46: 25-36	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature	/Deborah Ware/	Date Considered	01/2015
--------------------	----------------	-----------------	---------

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit		1651	
	Examiner Name	Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number		AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	8697138		2014-04-15	Bruheim et al.	
	2	7488503		2009-02-10	Porzio et al	
	3	4749522		1988-06-07	Kamarei	
	4	4814111		1989-03-21	Kearns et al.	
	5	4133077		1979-01-09	Jasniewicz	

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

Add

U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	20110130458		2011-06-02	Harald Breivik	

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number		12057775
Filing Date		2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
Art Unit		1651
Examiner Name	Ware	
Attorney Docket Number		AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

2	20080166420		2008-07-10	Scott F. Sones	
3	20060078625		2006-04-13	Susie Rockway	
4	20020076468		2002-06-20	Saxby	
5	20030113432		2003-06-19	Yoshitomi	
6	20100143571		2010-06-10	Breivik	
7	20100160659		2010-06-24	Catchpole	
8	20080166419		2008-07-10	Sones	

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. [Add](#)

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

[Remove](#)

Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup> i	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	40348	CL		1997-07-08	Tepual S.A.		<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	89/01031	WO		1989-02-09	Pharmacia AB		<input type="checkbox"/>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775
Filing Date	2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim
Art Unit	1651
Examiner Name	Ware
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

3	89/10960	WO		1989-11-16	Pharmacia AB		<input type="checkbox"/>
4	97/38585	WO		1997-10-23	The University of British Columbia		<input type="checkbox"/>
5	98/34498	WO		1998-08-13	Biozyme Systems, Inc.		<input type="checkbox"/>
6	99/39589	WO		1999-08-12	Biozyme Systems Inc.		<input type="checkbox"/>
7	06/111633	WO		2006-10-26	SC DICOPHAR		<input type="checkbox"/>
8	07/123424	WO		2007-11-01	Catchpole		<input type="checkbox"/>
9	08/072563	WO		2008-06-19	Nippon Suisan Kaisha, Ltd.		<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

**Remove**

Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	EP Opposition filed February 13, 2014 by Olympic Seafood AS, EP Patent Application No. EP0871891016	<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	BRZUSTOWICZ, Michael R., et al., "Controlling Membrane Cholesterol Content. A Role for Polyunsaturated (Docosahexaenoate) Phospholipids," Biochemistry (2002), 41, pp. 12509-12519	<input type="checkbox"/>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number		12057775
Filing Date		2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
Art Unit	1651	
Examiner Name	Ware	
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

3	JONG-HO LEE, "A Review: Antioxygenic and Peroxide-decomposing Activities of Antarctic Krill Lipids," J. Korean Soc. Food Nutr. 13(3) pp. 326-333 (1984)	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	KI WOONG CHO, et al., "Lipid and Fatty Acid Composition of the Antarctic Krill Euphausia superba," Ocean Research 21(2): 109-116 (1999)	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	HVATTUM, Erlend, et al., "Effect of soybean oil and fish oil on individual molecular species of Atlantic salmon...", Journal of Chromatography B, 748 (2000) 137-149	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	IGARASHI, Daisuke, et al., "Positional Distribution of DHA and EPA in Phosphatidylcholine and Phosphatidylethanolamine from Different Tissues of Squids," J. Oleo Sci. Vol. 50, No. 9 (2001)	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	TOCHIZAWA, Kaoru, et al., "Effects of Phospholipds Containing Docosahexaenoic Acid on Differentiation and Growth of HL-60 Human Promyelocytic Leukemia Cells," J. Jpn. Oil Chem. Soc. Vol. 46, No. 4 (1997)	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	ZEROUGA, Mustapha, et al., "Comparison of phosphatidylcholines containing one or two docosahexaenoic acyl chains on properties of phospholipid monolayers and bilayers," Biochimica et Biophysica Acta 1236 (1995) 266-272	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	EUNG-HO LEE, et al., "Studies on the Processing of Krill Sauce," J. Korean Soc. Food Nutr. 13(1) 97-106 (1984)	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	HYUN-KU KIM, et al., "Effects of Cooking and Drying Methods on the Polar Lipds Composition of Shrimp," Korean J. Food Sci. Technol. Vol. 21, No. 1, pp. 25-30 (1989)	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	SHON, Mi-Yae, et al., "Effects of Krill and Cadmium on Lipid Composition of Plasma in Cholesterol-Fed Rats," J. Korean Soc. Food Nutr. 23(1), 38-43 (1994)	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	Summons Materials downloaded from ESPACE on December 16, 2014 for EP Patent Application No. 08 718 910.6	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button [Add](#)

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775
	Filing Date	2008-03-28
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim
	Art Unit	1651
	Examiner Name	Ware
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	
--------------------	--	-----------------	--

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775		
Filing Date	2008-03-28		
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
Art Unit	1651		
Examiner Name	Ware		
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

- See attached certification statement.
- The fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/J. Mitchell Jones/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2014-12-16
Name/Print	J. Mitchell Jones	Registration Number	44174

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification<sup>4</sup> : <b>C12N 9/00, 9/14, A61K 37/48</b></p>	<p><b>A1</b></p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 89/ 01031</b> (43) International Publication Date: 9 February 1989 (09.02.89)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/SE88/00374 (22) International Filing Date: 8 July 1988 (08.07.88) (31) Priority Application Number: 8703064-9 (32) Priority Date: 6 August 1987 (06.08.87) (33) Priority Country: SE (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): PHARMACIA AB [SE/SE]; S-751 82 Uppsala (SE). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only) : MOHR, Viggo [NO/NO]; S:t Jørgensveita 6A, N-7000 Trondheim (NO). VINCENT, Jan [SE/SE]; Ulvsundavägen 49, S-161 35 Bromma (SE). HELLGREN, Lars [SE/SE]; Bronsgjutaregatan 13, S-421 63 V:A Frölunda (SE). KARLSTAM, Björn [SE/SE]; Spiltvägen 7, S-740 30 Björklinge (SE). BERGLINDH, Thomas [SE/SE]; Ripvägen 5, S-752 52 Uppsala (SE).</p>		<p>(74) Agents: BERGANDER, Håkan et al.; Pharmacia AB, S-751 82 Uppsala (SE). (81) Designated States: AT (European patent), AU, BE (European patent), CH (European patent), DE (European patent), FR (European patent), GB (European patent), IT (European patent), JP, LU (European patent), NL (European patent), SE (European patent), US. <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i></p>
<p>(54) Title: METHOD FOR THE ISOLATION OF ACTIVE ENZYME(S) FROM KRILL TISSUE</p>		
<p>(57) Abstract</p> <p>Method for the isolation of active enzyme(s) from an animal of the order <i>Euphausiacea</i>, characterized in that the animals, or parts of the animals are induced to autolyse to the formation of distinct oil and aqueous phases, whereupon the phases are separated and the active enzyme(s) is(are) isolated from the appropriate phases by conventional methods.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	FR	France	ML	Mali
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	MR	Mauritania
BB	Barbados	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NL	Netherlands
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	NO	Norway
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	RO	Romania
BR	Brazil	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	LI	Liechtenstein	SN	Senegal
CH	Switzerland	LK	Sri Lanka	SU	Soviet Union
CM	Cameroon	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
DE	Germany, Federal Republic of	MC	Monaco	TG	Togo
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	US	United States of America
FI	Finland				

Method for the isolation of active enzyme(s) from krill tissue.

### Field of invention

This invention relates to an improvement in the isolation of active enzymes from aquatic animals of the order Euphausiacea, commonly called krill. The method of the invention is adapted for enzymes and enzyme precursors from different krill tissues, particularly for those enzymes that originate from the digestive apparatus. The enzymes to be isolated may be different hydrolases, such as proteases, lipases, nucleaser, polysaccharidases etc, and other enzymes that effect breakdown of biologic substances e.g. protein, lipid, polysaccharides and nucleic acids, or their constituents.

### General background

Animals of the order Euphausiacea, and in particular Antarctic krill represented by Euphausia superba and Euphausia crystallorophias, and North Atlantic krill represented by Meganyctiphanes norvegica and Thyssanoessa species, have become increasingly promising as a source of biologically active substances. They are known to contain very effective hydrolases. The high efficiency of mixtures of endo- and exopeptidases of krill in degrading proteinaceous substrates has been demonstrated (Ellingsen, 1982; Saether, 1986; Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987; and Saether, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987). The peptide hydrolases of krill effect an extensive breakdown of krill tissues and proteins post mortem, resulting in the release of free amino acids and shorter peptides. Visually this is observed as an autolysis. The phenomenon has been suggested to be employed for the preparation of free amino acids on an industrial scale (Ellingsen & Mohr, 1979).

The conditions effecting autolysis of krill have been extensively studied (Ellingsen & Mohr, 1979; Ellingsen, 1982; Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987 and Saether, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987). The latter publication relates to North Atlantic krill, whereas the former publications deal with Antarctic krill. The rate of autolysis, as measured by the amount of free amino acids released into solution, depends on a series of factors, e.g. temperature, time of incubation, pH and whether whole krill or homogenate is being autolyzed (Ellingsen, 1982).

Substantial evidence is now starting to accumulate that peptide hydrolases from Antarctic krill are superior as debriding agents for wound compared to the enzyme preparations currently in clinical use for this purpose. The general picture which emerges from studies in vitro and clinically (Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent, 1986 and 1987, respectively) is that the debridement with the krill enzymes proceeds at a higher rate, and results in a more complete breakdown of the necrotic tissue than that obtained by other clinically used enzymatic debriders.

The peptide hydrolases of krill which are of particular interest therapeutically have recently been isolated and studied in considerable detail (Osnes & Mohr, 1985a ; Osnes & Mohr, 1985b; Osnes & Mohr, 1986; Osnes, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1986). As shown in these studies, the major krill peptide hydrolases include three different trypsin-like serine proteinases, two carboxypeptidase A-type of enzymes, two carboxypeptidase B-type of enzymes and one aminopeptidase. The enzymes seem to originate almost exclusively from the digestive tract of the krill, and thus seem to constitute enzymes of the digestive apparatus of the animals (Ellingsen, 1982; Grundseth & V.Mohr, unpublished).

Among other enzyme activities that have been measured in different preparations of krill are various polysaccharidase

activities (Karlstam, 1988 and Chen & Gau 1981), lipase activity (Nagayama 1979), ribonuclease activity (Van 1982) etc.

The krill peptide hydrolases seem to possess a property which is highly valuable and essential for the use of the mixture of these enzymes for practical applications. The simple digestive system in krill probably implies that the individual enzymes are mutually protected against the degrading effect of each other. Thus, in contrast to enzymes from the mammalian digestive tract, it has been demonstrated conclusively that the krill peptide hydrolases show considerable inertness to breakdown and loss of activity when they are mixed (Osnes & Mohr, 1985ab; Osnes, 1986; Osnes, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1986).

The krill enzymes which are of particular interest for medical and technical applications are usually water soluble, and can be isolated by extracting whole krill, homogenized krill or parts of krill with either water, or buffered, aqueous solutions, followed by isolation and purification of the individual enzymes or groups of enzymes by suitable, established methods (Osnes & Mohr, 1985a). Although such procedures may be satisfactory for laboratory work, large scale industrial processes based on this procedure may represent a problem. The problems relate to the fact that important species of krill usually have a high lipid content, of which glycerophospholipids may make up a considerable proportion (Ellingsen, 1982; Saether, 1986). When extracting different forms of krill with aqueous solvents glycerophospholipids tend to associate with protein, and after centrifugation such extracts may typically consist of a top layer containing oil, below which is a layer rich in glycerophospholipids and protein, below which is an aqueous phase and, finally, at the bottom, an insoluble sediment.

Due to the protein-glycerophospholipid association the phase separation will be far from distinct. Efficient separation of the aqueous phase containing the enzymes therefor represents a problem in an industrial process. Furthermore, in addition to the enzymes, the aqueous phase contains large amounts of soluble proteins, including muscle proteins of the krill. The separation of active enzymes from other proteins require expensive processing technology and, in addition, the non-enzymatic proteins obtained as by-products in this type of process occur in a form which generally has a low market value. Thus, large-scale isolation procedures based on extraction of fresh krill with water may not secure that the therapeutically and technically important enzymes can be isolated in a way which is economically feasible. These problems may be partly overcome by defatting the unhomogenized krill and/or the homogenized with a lipophilic/hydrophobic solvent (e.g. carbon tetrachloride). However, this way of processing krill will give at least one or two extra steps.

The promising prospects of using the digestive enzymes of krill as novel preparations for medical and technical use, stress the need for effective methods aimed at isolating and purifying the krill enzymes.

#### The invention

The present invention proposes a novel procedure for isolating active enzymes from krill without facing the drawbacks mentioned above. The invention utilizes the well-documented fact that the digestive enzymes of krill effect an extensive breakdown of the krill tissues post mortem, yielding a liquefied system, comprising an oil, an aqueous and an insoluble phase (= sediment). The invention takes advantage of the fact that the system formed after autolysis under efficient conditions may form distinct phases (phase boundaries). A physical separation can effectively be performed by simple process technology, e.g. centrifugation, and without the

problems in particular caused by the protein/glycerophospholipid layer described when extracting fresh krill as outlined previously. Prior art methods have aimed at avoiding autolysis. The invention employs autolysis as a prestep to facilitate separation and extraction. The need for separate defatting steps is minimized.

The method of the invention accordingly is characterized by whole krill, homogenized krill, squeezed krill or similarly treated parts of krill (preferably containing the digestive tract) being permitted to autolyse so that a system comprising an oil phase and an aqueous phase is formed having a distinct phase boundary therebetween. High levels of enzyme activity is retained in the aqueous phase after autolysis. The efficient phase separation is probably due to the degradation of glycerophospholipid by krill phospholipase. After the autolysis step, the enzyme-containing aqueous phase is separated from other phases present, followed by the isolation of the enzyme(s) contemplated by conventional procedures. In case the enzyme(s) to be isolated is partitioned to the oil phase conventional isolation procedures known per se is applied to the oil phase. The separation of the individual phases of the autolysate can be carried out by several different methods. Particularly well suited are those exposing the autolysate to centrifugal forces, but other procedures e.g. sedimentation and flotation may also be applicable.

The yield of enzymes obtained depends on time of incubation (autolysis), temperature, pH, type of krill preparation (whole, homogenized or squeezed krill) and the specific enzyme(s) to be isolated.

Generally the conditions for the autolysis to proceed properly should be as below.

Temperature: The lower limit is 15 °C with a preference for temperatures above 20 °C. The upper limit is 70 °C, preferably below 45 °C. Certain krill enzymes have been shown to be heat-sensitive so that when such enzymes are to be retained in the end product, the temperature has to be carefully selected. For instance, if krill hyaluronidase or krill amylase is to be isolated it is recommended to run the autolysis below 45 °C. The krill proteases are quite heat-stable with a temperature optimum around 55-60 °C. This means that if krill proteases are the important enzymes in the end product, the autolysis can be performed up to 70 °C. If a mixture of enzyme(s) are to be isolated and one of them is heat-sensitive, the temperature should be considerable lower, e.g. below 45 °C. In conclusion the temperature should be selected in the range 15-70 °C, preferably 20-45 °C.

pH: This value should be selected in the range of 6-8,5, although autolysis may also be performed down to pH = 5. The preferred range is 6-7,5. We have performed experiments at the pH-optimum for the proteases (pH = 8,2), in order to work effectively. However, at this pH-value the phase separation after autolysis was not satisfactory. This might indicate that enzymes other than the proteases are important to obtain an efficient autolysis (e.g. phospholipases).

Time for incubation: This variable should be selected so as to result in the most economic feasible process. By selecting pH and temperature within the ranges given above incubation times of 1 h - 2 weeks, with preference for 5-48 hours, can be accomplished.

It is important to investigate in pretrial experiments that the combination of temperature, pH and time of incubation will not lead to significant degradation and/or inactivation of the enzyme(s) intended to be isolated. Accordingly each enzyme or enzyme mixture has its own optimal conditions within the above-mentioned limits in order to reach the best quality and yield.

Depending on the particular enzyme or group of enzymes to be isolated, and the purity required, methods well known to the specialist can be used to isolate samples of active enzymes from the autolysate, or from appropriate, individual fractions (phases) concentration and/or separation according to molecular size and shape, electrical charge, functional groups, solubility characteristics, or on a combination of these principles, e.g. membrane technology such as ultrafiltration, gel chromatography, ion exchange chromatography, affinity chromatography, electrophoresis, electro dialysis, precipitation by salts or acids, or selective extraction. Final concentration and removal of solvents from the preparations may be achieved by appropriate methods which do not affect enzyme activity adversely, e.f., membrane technology and freeze drying, respectively.

For the purification of specific enzymes see for instance (peptide hydrolases Osnes & Mohr 1985a, 1985b, 1986, Osnes, Ellingsen & Mohr 1986, Chen et al 1978, and Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent 1985; hyaluronidase, endo-(1,3)-beta-D-glucanase and beta-glucuronidase Karlstam 1987; ribonuclease Van 1982). Our study in the krill field has revealed that the trypsin-like krill proteases can be affinity purified on benzamidine adsorbents and most probably also on adsorbents to which trypsin inhibitors are bound, the krill carboxypeptidases on arginine or phenylalanine (hydrophobic) adsorbents and some polysaccharidases on ConA adsorbents (krill hyaluronidase, beta-glucuronidase and endo-(1,3)-beta-D-glucanase).

#### Example 1

25 g of frozen, Antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) were thawed at room temperature, and homogenized together with 25 ml of deionised water for 45 sec at room temperature using a Janke & Kunkel Homogenizer TP 18. The homogenate was highly viscous and contained a considerable proportion of particulate material. An aliquot of the homogenate was removed for determination of enzyme activity. The homogenate was incubated at 50 °C for 20 h at the natural pH (about 7) of the homogenate.

After incubation the homogenate was centrifuged at 13 000 g for 40 min in the cold. The centrifuged homogenate consisted of three distinct, and well-separated phases: a top layer of oil red in colour due to carotenoids, a clear, aqueous middle layer, and a particulate bottom layer. The aqueous, middle layer was removed with a pipette in the form of a clear solution with low viscosity. An aliquot of the aqueous phase was taken for determination of enzyme activity.

The proteolytic activity of the homogenized krill and of the aqueous phase of the autolysate, was determined with TAME as a substrate according to the method of Rick, 1974 (Methods of Enzymatic Analysis (H.Bergmeyer ed.) 2nd.edn., Vol2, pp. 1013-1023. Academic Press, New York). In accordance with the claims of the invention, the aqueous fraction after autolysis at 50 °C for 20 h contained an enzymic activity corresponding to 95 % of that of the original homogenate prior to autolysis.

#### Example 2

10 ml of the aqueous phase of the krill autolysate prepared according to Example 1 were subjected to ultrafiltration in order to separate the enzyme preparation from low-molecular weight substances. The separation was carried out in an Amicon ultrafiltration unit, using an Amicon Diaflo Ultra-filter type PM 10. The filter effects retention of material with a molecular weight exceeding 10 000. The ultrafiltration was run at a rate of 2.5 ml per sq.cm per hour at room temperature, using a pressure of 1,4 atm. of nitrogen.

Due to the low viscosity of the aqueous fraction of the autolysate, the ultrafiltration proceeded very effectively. Ultrafiltration was continued until the volume of the autolysate had been reduced to one tenth of the original volume. The high-molecular weight fraction after ultrafiltration contained the enzyme activity, whereas the permeate contained low-molecular weight material, mainly free amino acids and other break-down products after autolysis.

Example 3

Squeezed krill was obtained from whole fresh or frozen krill by pressing and centrifuging the raw material. In brief frozen krill, stored at minus 20-30 °C, was allowed to thaw at room temperature for 20 hrs and then centrifuged for 10-30 min at 1 500-3 000 xg to remove insoluble substances. The viscous liquid was collected and defined as squeezed krill. The fresh krill was processed in the same way without thawing.

1 000 ml of squeezed krill were subjected to spontaneous autolysis by storing at different temperatures (20-45 °C) and times (10-48 hrs) at different pH-values 6,8-7,0. After terminated incubation the mixtures were centrifuged at 3 500 xg for 60 min. This resulted in partitioning the material into three distinct phases for pH below 8. The middle phase represented by a clear aqueous liquid contained, as in example 2, high levels of hydrolytic enzymes degrading proteins, polysaccharides and polynucleotides. This was removed by sucking and subjected to concentration/purification by membrane filtration. The high molecular weight substances (>10 000 Daltons) were further purified by ion exchange chromatography (e.g. Q-Sepharose<sup>®</sup>, Pharmacia AB, Sweden) or hydrophobic interaction chromatography (e.g. Phenyl Sepharose<sup>®</sup> or Alkyl Sepharose<sup>®</sup>) using continuous or discontinuous salt gradients when eluting different enzymes/proteins. The enzymatic activity was collected for different enzyme groups and desalted by gel filtration or dialysis procedures. In this matter one or several bulk enzyme mixtures were obtained for further isolation and purification of individual hydrolytic enzymes.

The protein content, total proteolytic activity, trypsin-like activity and hyaluronidase activity were followed during the process, see table I-IV. In addition amylase, beta-glucuronidase, endo-(1,3)-beta-D-glucanase and carboxypeptidase activities were measured.

**Table I**  
**Summary of autolysis (25°C; 20 h ) and partial purification of squeezed krill by membrane filtration and anion exchange chromatography on Q-Sepharose FF**

Sample	Volume		Protein		Caseinolytic activity			Trypsin-like activity		
	(ml)	(g)	(%)	Total units	Recovery (%)	Purification (fold)	Total units	Recovery (%)	Purification (fold)	
Squeezed krill	1000	40	100	1500	100	1	32000	100	1	
Autolysate	760	17	42	1250	83	2	32000	100	2.4	
Protein concentrate	95	6	15	1150	77	5	29600	92	6	
Enzyme pool after ion exchange chromatography	250	1.5	4	900	60	16	21700	68	18	

Table II  
 Summary of further purification of serine proteinases from a bulk enzyme mixture isolated from autolysed squeezed krill

Step	Volume (ml)	Protein		Trypsin-like activity			Recovery (%)	Purification (fold)
		(mg/ml)	Total mg	(U/ml)	Total units	Spec. act. (U/mg protein)		
Bulk enzyme	9	6.5	58.5	68	612	10.5	100	1
Benzamide-Sepharose 6B	21	0.5	10.5	25	525	50	86	4.8
Sephadex G-25	43	0.24	10.3	10	430	42	70	4
Protein concentrate	8.6	0.8	6.9	43	370	54	60	5.1

Table III

Protein degradation

Effect of temperature		Effect of time	
Temperature (°C)	Protein residues (%)	Time (h)	Protein residues (%)
8	100 (no autolysis)	0	100
20	12-21	10	20-25
35	12-17	20	10-20
45	8-17	48	10-20

Experiments performed for 20 h. Experiments performed at 25°C

Table IV

Summary of further purification of hyaluronidase from a bulk enzyme mixture isolated from autolysed squeezed krill

Step	Volume (ml)	Protein		Hyaluronidase activity			Recovery (%)	Purification (fold)
		(mg/ml)	Total mg	(U/ml)	Total units	Spec.act. (U/mg protein)		
Bulk enzyme	77	5	385	140	10780	28	100	1
Con A-Sepharose	43	1.2	52	68	2924	57	27	2
Protein concentrate YM 10 filter	10	4.1	41	291	2910	71	27	2.5
Superose 6	26	0.6	16	59	1534	98	14	3.5
FPLC-Mono Q HR 10/10 after concentration YM 10 filter	22	0.47	10	63	1386	134	13	4.8

Referenslista

- \* Chen et al., 1978: J. Food Biochem. 2, p 349-66.
- \* Chen & Gau, 1981: J. Food Biochem. 5, p 63-8.
- \* Ellingsen & Mohr, 1979: Process Biochem. 14 (10), p 14.
- \* Ellingsen, 1982: Biochemical Studies on Antarctic Krill (Ph. D. Thesis) Department of Biochemistry, The Norwegian Institute of Technology, The University of Trondheim.
- \* Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987: Biochem. J. In press.
- \* Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent, 1986: Experientia 42, p 403-4.
- \* Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent, 1987: 17th World Congr. Dermatol., Berlin, p 196.
- \* Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent, 1985: WO-A-85/04809.
- \* Karlstam, 1988: EP-A-252,044 (Pharmacia AB).
- \* Nagayama et al., 1979: Transactions of the Tokyo University of Fisheries 3, p 153-159.
- \* Osnes & Mohr, 1985a: Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 82B, p 599-606.
- \* Osnes & Mohr, 1985b: Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 82B, p 607-19.
- \* Osnes & Mohr, 1986: Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 83B, p 445-458.
- \* Osnes, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1986: Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 83B, p 802-5.

- \* Rick, 1974: Methods of Enzymatic Analysis (ed.: H. Bergmeyer) 2nd edn., vol 2 pp 1013, 1023.
- \* Saether, 1986: Biochemistry of North Atlantic Krill. (Ph. D. Thesis) Department of Biochemistry, The Norwegian Institute of Technology, The University of Trondheim.
- \* Saether, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987: Comp. Biochem. Physiol. In press.
- \* Van, 1982: Agric. Biol. Chem. 46, p 691-6.

## CLAIMS

1. Method for the isolation of active enzyme(s) from an animal of the order Euphausiacea, characterized in that the animals, or parts of the animals are induced to autolyse to the formation of distinct oil and aqueous phases, whereupon the phases are separated and the active enzyme(s) is(are) isolated from the appropriate phases by conventional methods.
2. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the animals or part of the animals prior to the autolysis may have been unfrozen, frozen and/or homogenized, or squeezed,
3. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that autolysis is achieved by incubating the animals or part of the animals at a temperature in the range 15 to 70 °C, for a period of time ranging from 1 hour to 2 weeks.
4. Method according to anyone of claim 1-3, characterized in that autolysis is carried out at pH-values in the range pH 6 to 8.
5. Method according to anyone of claim 1-5, characterized in that the enzyme(s) is(are) isolated from the aqueous phase.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No PCT/SE88/00374

<b>I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> (if several classification symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>6</sup>		
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC <sup>4</sup>		
C 12 N 9/00, C 12 N 9/14, A 61 K 37/48		
<b>II. FIELDS SEARCHED</b>		
Minimum Documentation Searched <sup>7</sup>		
Classification System	Classification Symbols	
IPC 4	C 12 N 9/00, /14; A 61 K 37/48; A 61 K 37/54	
Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>8</sup>		
SE, NO, DK, FI classes as above. Data base search: WPI, WPIL, CA, Biosis.		
<b>III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT <sup>9</sup></b>		
Category <sup>10</sup>	Citation of Document, <sup>11</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>12</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>13</sup>
Y	Comp. Biochem. Physiol. Vol 82B, No 4, pp. 599-606, 1985, (KNUT KR. OSNES AND VIGGO MOHR), "Peptide hydrolases of antarctic krill, <i>euphausia superba</i> ", see page 601, right column and table 3, page 602, left column lines 1-6	1-2, 4-5
Y	WO, A1, 85/04809 (HELLGREN) 7 November 1985 see example 1 & SE, 8402238 EP, 0177605 JP, 61501918 US, 4695457 SE, 454566	1-2, 4-5
A	Journal of Food Biochemistry 2 (1978) 349-366, (CHING-SAN CHEN), "Purification and properties of trypsin-like enzymes and a carboxypeptidase a from <i>euphausia superba</i> "  <span style="float: right;">.../...</span>	1-5
<p><sup>10</sup> Special categories of cited documents:</p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.</p> <p>"&amp;" document member of the same patent family</p>		
<b>IV. CERTIFICATION</b>		
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search	Date of Mailing of this International Search Report	
1988-10-10	1988 -10- 19	
International Searching Authority	Signature of Authorized Officer	
Swedish Patent Office	<i>Jovonne Siösteen</i> Jovonne Siösteen	

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)		
Category *	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No
A	Comp.Biochem.Physiol.Vol 83B, No 4, pp 801 805, 1986, (KNUT KR. OSNES), "Hydrolysis of proteins by peptide hydro- lases of antarctic krill, euphausia superba"	1-5



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification<sup>4</sup> : <b>C12N 9/00, 9/50, A61K 37/54</b></p>	<p><b>A1</b></p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 89/10960</b> (43) International Publication Date: 16 November 1989 (16.11.89)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/SE89/00235 (22) International Filing Date: 27 April 1989 (27.04.89) (30) Priority data: 8801701-7 5 May 1988 (05.05.88) SE (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): PHARMACIA AB [SE/SE]; S-751 82 Uppsala (SE). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only) : MOHR, Viggo [NO/NO]; Tegelbrennervn. 8, N-7013 Trondheim (NO). HELLGREN, Lars [SE/SE]; Bronsgjutaregatan 13, S-421 63 V:A Frölunda (SE). VINCENT, Jan [SE/SE]; Ulvsundavägen 49, S-161 35 Bromma (SE). (74) Agents: ENGHOLM, Carl et al.; Pharmacia AB, S-751 82 Uppsala (SE).</p>		<p>(81) Designated States: AT (European patent), BE (European patent), CH (European patent), DE (European patent), FR (European patent), GB (European patent), IT (European patent), JP, LU (European patent), NL (European patent), SE (European patent), US.  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i></p>
<p>(54) Title: METHOD FOR MODIFYING PROTEINS, PEPTIDES AND/OR LIPIDS BY ENZYMES FROM EUPHAUCIACEAE</p>		
<p>(57) Abstract</p> <p>The invention relates to the use of enzymes selected from animals belonging to the order Euphauciaceae. The enzymes are used to modificate protein, peptide and/or lipid constituents of biological material in industrial processes.</p>		

*FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY*

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	FI	Finland	ML	Mali
AU	Australia	FR	France	MR	Mauritania
BB	Barbados	GA	Gabon	MW	Malawi
BE	Belgium	GB	United Kingdom	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Fasso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	RO	Romania
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	SD	Sudan
BR	Brazil	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SN	Senegal
CG	Congo	LI	Liechtenstein	SU	Soviet Union
CH	Switzerland	LK	Sri Lanka	TD	Chad
CM	Cameroon	LU	Luxembourg	TG	Togo
DE	Germany, Federal Republic of	MC	Monaco	US	United States of America
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar		
ES	Spain				

Method for modifying proteins, peptides and/or lipids by enzymes from Euphauciaceae

#### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to novel applications of enzymes in the area of production technology. The invention specifies how preparations of active enzymes or enzyme systems selected from animals belonging to the order Euphauciaceae can be used in a novel way in industrial processes.

According to the methods specified in the invention, the unique properties of the enzymes of this order of animals are utilized in a way which opens up new perspectives in the area of enzyme technology. The invention explicitly documents how the preparations of said enzymes can be applied in clearly defined processes and with the purpose of manufacturing specific products..

#### GENERAL BACKGROUND

Animals belonging to the order Euphauciaceae, and in particular Antarctic krill represented by Euphausia superba, Euphausia crystallorophias and other species, and North Atlantic krill represented by Meganyctiphanes norvegica, Thysanoessa inermis and other species, have become increasingly interesting as a source of unique enzyme systems. This is clearly underlined by the fact that groups of enzymes from these animals hold considerable promise as new therapeutic agents for treating wounds, burns, and dermatoses (Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent, 1986), and as an aid for digestive processes in both animals and man. The effectiveness of the enzymes in debriding wounds is presently being verified by large-scale clinical tests in several countries.

The unique effects exhibited by the enzyme systems of krill are intimately related to the unusual ecological situation facing both Antarctic- and Arctic krill. During a substantial part of the year the krill in these regions have a very limited food supply. Food becomes available in plenty only during the short summer season when phytoplankton production in the sea is abundant.

As a consequence, the krill have developed an unusually effective digestive apparatus which secures that food, when available, is quickly digested and deposited as storage lipid. The digestive enzymes of this apparatus are of considerable interest therapeutically and industrially.

Apart from their highly effective digestive apparatus, krill are also unusual in another sense. Few other groups of animals are adapted to life at such low temperatures as Antarctic- and Arctic krill which may frequently experience temperatures approaching that of freezing sea water (-1.9 °C). Thus, the enzyme systems of krill are designed to exhibit activity at such low temperatures. When studied in vitro, activity can be observed at even lower temperatures, provided that freezing is prevented by the addition of antifreeze agents.

In conclusion, krill are characterized by having not only an unusually high level of digestive enzymes, but the enzymes are also adapted to function effectively at low temperatures. At present few, if any enzyme systems with such characteristics are generally available commercially, despite the fact that enzymes of this type would open up a completely new field of considerable commercial importance, namely low temperature enzyme technology.

The present invention makes a systematic contribution to this area by pointing out specific industrial applications which depend on the unique properties of the enzymes of

krill, and which utilize the unusual effectiveness of these enzymes and/or their particular temperature relationships.

As a background for the novel applications presented and the claims made, an overview over the krill digestive enzymes and their properties is given below.

#### THE DIGESTIVE ENZYMES OF KRILL

##### Peptide hydrolases

Krill contain an array of enzymes required to break down the polymeric substances making up the food of the animals. Of particular interest in the context of industrial application are the peptide hydrolases and the lipolytic enzymes of krill.

The peptide hydrolases of krill have been studied in considerable detail, and it has been shown that krill rely on a system of both endo- and exopeptidases to degrade protein. The krill peptide hydrolases include three trypsin-like enzymes, two carboxypeptidase A-type of enzymes, two carboxypeptidase B-type of enzymes and one aminopeptidase (Osnes & Mohr, 1985a; Osnes & Mohr, 1985b; Osnes & Mohr, 1986). These enzymes seem to originate almost exclusively from the digestive tract of the krill, and thus seem to constitute enzymes of the digestive apparatus of the animals. When acting in combination the peptide hydrolases of krill effect an extensive breakdown of proteins to shorter peptides and amino acids (Osnes, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1986; Saether, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987; Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987).

The peptide hydrolases give rise to a rapid autolyses of the krill tissues post mortem, resulting in the production of large amounts of free amino acids (Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987;

Saether, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1987). Other work has shown that the krill peptide hydrolases have a similar effect on milk and meat proteins (Osnes, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1986), and on the protein constituents of necrotic wounds (Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent, 1986).

In sum, the studies by the present authors and others provide substantial scientific documentation showing that the natural mixture of the endo- and exopeptidases of krill constitute an unusually effective system for degrading common proteins to soluble peptides and amino acids. The krill enzymes surpass most purified peptide hydrolases of microbial, plant or animal origin in this respect, because the krill enzyme system combines in a very effective way both endo- and exopeptidase activity.

This is illustrated by the fact that a highly specific protease such as e.g. trypsin will, when acting alone, only cleave proteins at the comparatively few peptide bonds involving basic amino acids and, hence, produce comparatively large peptides which are not likely to be readily soluble. This effect can clearly be seen when examining the effect of various proteolytic enzymes in cleaning wounds, in which case most purified enzymes including trypsin exhibit very limited effect compared to that of the mixture of krill peptide hydrolases (Hellgren, Mohr & Vincent, 1986).

Detailed studies of the krill peptide hydrolases have also provided interesting insight into the temperature relationships of these enzymes. Examination of highly purified preparations of the enzymes reveal that both the endo- and exopeptidases of krill have a temperature optimum in the range from 35-50 °C. However, as mentioned previously, the enzymes exhibit considerable activity also at lower temperatures.

The striking temperature relationships of the krill enzymes have been clearly demonstrated in the case of the trypsin-like enzymes of krill, which have been shown to exhibit far lower activation energies for the hydrolysis of peptide bonds than comparable trypsin from warm-blooded animals (Osnes & Mohr, 1986). This provides insight into the fundamental mechanism which enables the krill enzymes to operate effectively at temperatures far below their optimum.

The krill peptide hydrolases possess yet another property which is highly valuable and essential for the use of the mixture of krill enzymes for practical purposes. Krill are animals which are characterized by having a simple digestive system, in which the different endo- and exopeptidases apparently act together in the digestive tract. This contrasts the situation in higher animals, in which the individual digestive enzymes operate in anatomically distinct portions of the digestive system.

The simple digestive system of krill probably implies that the individual enzymes are mutually protected against the degrading effect of each other. Thus, in contrast to the enzymes from the mammalian digestive tract, it has been demonstrated conclusively that the krill peptide hydrolases show considerable inertness to breakdown and loss of activity when they are mixed (Osnes & Mohr, 1985ab; Osnes, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1986).

This property makes the mixture of krill peptide hydrolases unusually valuable as an enzyme composition for practical application in industrial processes.

#### Lipolytic enzymes

In addition to peptide hydrolases, krill contain a number of other enzyme systems required for breaking down polymeric

substances in the food ingested. Of these enzymes lipases and phospholipases are of particular interest from an industrial point of view.

Although less precise knowledge is available on the lipolytic enzymes of krill, it is clear that such enzymes, and in particular phospholipases are present in considerable amounts, and that they operate effectively at temperatures down to freezing (Ellingsen, 1982; Saether, Ellingsen & Mohr, 1986a).

These enzyme systems are evidently responsible for the degradation of lipids and the production of free fatty acids when krill are stored post mortem.

## THE INVENTION

The present invention specifies procedures which utilize the unique properties of specific enzyme systems of krill in industrial processes in a completely novel way. Compared with enzyme processes previously known, the effectiveness of the procedures based on krill enzymes is striking and surprising.

The procedures specified in the invention utilize one or more of the following properties of the krill enzymes:

- The high efficiency of the mixture of krill peptide hydrolases in breaking down proteins to peptides and free amino acids.
- The high efficiency of krill trypsin type I in breaking down proteins to peptides and free amino acids.
- The high efficiency of the mixture of krill peptide hydrolases, and in particular the exopeptidases, in breaking down peptides to free amino acids.
- The high efficiency of the krill lipolytic enzymes in breaking down lipids, and in particular phospholipids, to free fatty acids.
- The high efficiency of the krill enzymes at low temperatures.
- The high stability of krill enzymes when mixed.

The procedures specified in the invention may be carried out using several different types of compositions of active krill enzymes. The simplest procedure is to utilize the krill enzymes as they occur in situ, i.e., to let whole

krill autolyse under proper conditions with the formation of e.g. free amino acids and free fatty acids.

Another method may depend on using macerated, whole krill as a source of enzymes in the process or, alternatively, an aqueous extract of krill which should preferably be defatted, and if necessary, also concentrated.

The appropriate enzyme systems of krill or, alternatively, specific enzymes of the animals, may be isolated and purified by methods well known to the specialist, for instance by procedures based on differences in molecular size, electric charge, types of active sites etc (Osnes & Mohr, 1985a; Osnes & Mohr, 1985b; Osnes & Mohr, 1986; Osnes et al., 1986).

#### APPLICATION OF THE KRILL ENZYMES IN INDUSTRIAL PROCESSES ACCORDING TO THE INVENTION

##### 1. Production of protein concentrates

The peptide hydrolases of krill can be used as a very effective means of manufacturing protein concentrates from suitable raw materials of either microbial-, plant- or animal origin. The objective is to achieve removal of unwanted parts of the raw material, and at the same time secure a concentration of protein and other desirable constituents. It is often an objective to obtain a protein concentrate which is water-soluble.

Enzyme technology has been applied to a certain extent within this area, and usually in the form of a partial hydrolysis using proteolytic enzymes of mammalian-, plant- or microbial origin (Mohr, 1978; Mohr, 1980). Krill peptide hydrolases hold particular promise in this context, and in particular as regards production of protein concentrates from cheap fish or from fish- or abattoir by-products.

The advantage of the krill peptide hydrolases as compared to the enzyme systems tested so far, depends on the high efficiency of the mixture of the krill peptide hydrolases as pointed out above, and the fact that they can be used at comparatively low temperatures if necessary.

When the hydrolytic process is run at low temperature and/or with a low enzyme concentration, a limited breakdown of protein will occur. However, such treatment may be sufficient to allow bones to be effectively removed from e.g. fish products, and at the same time yield a protein concentrate with good functional properties. By increasing the temperature and enzyme concentration a soluble protein concentrate can be obtained in good yields.

## 2. Production of protein hydrolysates for dietary applications

Dietary protein hydrolysates represent a small, but important market segment. Such preparations are used for postoperative patients or for individuals with an impaired digestive system. The hydrolysates may be administered as comparatively crude preparations per os (Clegg, 1978), or as highly purified mixtures of amino acids for intravenous administration.

Enzyme hydrolysates of milk proteins have been applied as dietary preparations. However, when using conventional enzymes of either microbial-, plant- or animal origin serious problems are encountered, both because the yield of free amino acids may be low, and because a large amount of bitter peptides are formed (Clegg, 1978).

Dietary protein hydrolysates made by the application of krill peptide hydrolases represent an important, new area,

both due to the high yield of amino acids obtained in the process, and because a very limited amount of bitter peptides is produced.

### 3. Production of free amino acids

The peptide hydrolases of krill may be applied in effective processes for the manufacture of free amino acids from cheap protein sources. The free amino acids produced in the process may either be prepared as a crude mixture, or further separated into the individual amino acids or groups of individual amino acids by methods well known to the specialist.

The present process provides a new alternative to amino acid production by fermentation, and should hold considerable promise, both because the process economy is favourable, and because the process yields the entire range of free amino acids. The essential amino acids are of particular interest in this context, but also other amino acids, e.g. glutamic acid and others, may be of considerable commercial interest.

### 4. Production of a growth medium for fermentation

By applying the technique of krill autolysis or, alternatively, by using purified krill enzymes to hydrolyse a suitable protein source, it is possible to produce a crude preparation of free amino acids and peptides which is highly suitable as a substrate for microorganisms that have a specific requirement for amino acids for growth.

This is the case of a considerable number of the microorganisms used in industrial fermentations. The supply of the necessary amino acids often represent an important factor for process economy in such fermentations.

The preparation of amino acids produced by applying krill enzymes has properties similar to that of Trypton and Pepton, and is suitable as a substrate both in laboratory- and large scale industrial fermentations.

5. Improvement of nutritional- and physical/chemical properties of food- and feedstuffs

Partial hydrolysis of proteinaceous feed- or foodstuffs can lead to significant improvements in either their digestibility or functional properties. Such improvements are of considerable importance from a practical point of view, for instance in the aquaculture industry.

After hatching it is in many cases essential to provide the fish fry with a feed which can easily be utilized by the young progeny before their digestive apparatus has been fully developed. Partial enzymic hydrolysis of suitable feedstuffs, e.g. from marine sources, can make several protein raw materials suitable as a "start feed" for fish fry.

Enzymes from krill are particularly well suited for this application. A particularly interesting aspect of this application is the fact that the krill enzymes can be added to the feed and allowed to act during low-temperature storage at chill temperatures.

Partial hydrolyses of protein constituents can also confer improved functional properties to feed- and foodstuffs, by increasing water solubility, emulsifying capacity, foaming ability or texture. In such cases the conditions of hydrolyses have to be specifically adapted to achieve the desired effects.

## 6. Tenderizing of muscle foods

Enzymic tenderization of muscle foods, and in particular meat, represents a large market segment, which is presently dominated by plant proteases and certain microbial enzymes. Enzymic maturation and tenderization of fish muscle is also of considerable importance in many countries (Mohr, 1980). Krill enzymes provide an interesting alternative to present enzymic practices within this area.

A particularly interesting aspect of krill proteases, as opposed to the enzymes presently used, is the ability of the former to act at temperatures down to freezing. This opens the possibility of achieving artificial tenderizing of meat or fish during chill storage, which is a completely new concept, which has so far not been explored due to the lack of suitable enzymes.

## 7. Debittering of peptides

Enzymic hydrolysis of protein raw materials frequently leads to the formation of bitter peptides as mentioned above (Clegg, 1978). The bitter peptides occurring in protein hydrolysates may represent a considerable practical problem, as is the case e.g. during the ripening of different types of cheese and in the production of dietary protein hydrolysates.

The bitterness of hydrolysates is usually due to particular peptides, and especially those which contain a high proportion of hydrophobic amino acids. Bitterness can be effectively reduced by complete or partial hydrolyses of the bitter peptides.

The natural mixture of krill peptide hydrolases, and in particular the exopeptidases of such mixtures, are excellently suited to remove bitter peptides from hydrolysates.

In contrast to the enzymes presently used for this purpose, debittering based on krill enzymes can also be carried out at low temperature.

#### 8. Antihaze treatment

Protein precipitates may present a considerable problem in certain products such as e.g. beer, because the precipitate causes the product to be hazy. In beer the haziness arises when soluble proteins precipitate during chill storage of the beer.

The problem is of considerable economic importance and, apart from selecting suitable raw materials for the manufacture of beer, the main way of avoiding the problem today is to add proteolytic enzymes to the beer. Since it is desirable that hydrolysis, if necessary, can take place during chill storage, the use of krill enzymes represents a unique, new possibility in this area.

#### 9. Viscosity reduction

Industrial processing of proteinaceous raw materials with the purpose of manufacturing protein concentrates frequently involves treatment of solutions or suspensions containing high concentrations of proteins, for instance during extraction, centrifugation, evaporation or concentration steps. The high viscosity of such systems often causes serious problems with respect to the efficiency and economy of these unit operations.

Reduction of the viscosity by partial enzymic hydrolyses of the protein constituents can provide a very effective solution to such problems. One example is the treatment of the stickwater during fishmeal production with proteolytic enzymes.

Due to the presence of both endo- and exopeptidases the digestive enzymes of krill can provide a far more efficient viscosity reduction than the bacterial proteases which are presently used for this purpose. Furthermore, the fact that the enzymic step can be carried out at low temperatures offers yet another interesting possibility in the case of the krill enzymes.

#### 10. Dehairing of hides

Industrial leather manufacture relies on a series of steps involving cleaning, dehairing and finally tanning and dyeing of the hides. Enzyme treatment plays an important part in the dehairing step, which is achieved by the application of proteolytic enzymes. Krill peptide hydrolases can provide an effective alternative to the mammalian proteases presently used in leather manufacture, both because of their high proteolytic activity, and their efficiency at low temperatures.

#### 11. Separation and removal of tissues

In the food industry physical separation and removal of tissues constitute essential parts of many processes. These steps often rely on manual or complex mechanical procedures which may have a strong, negative influence on process economy. Examples of such procedures are fileting of fish, deskinning of fish filets, and removal of shells from shrimps, just to mention a few in the area of marine products.

So far enzymic methods have been employed only to a limited extent in this area, but such procedures hold considerable promise. Peptide hydrolases from krill are particularly interesting in this respect because of their high activity at low temperature. This is particularly important since many of the products in question do not tolerate elevated

temperatures because of the adverse effect of heating on sensory properties and hygienic standard.

## 12. Dissociation of tissues and cells

Dissociation of tissues and individual cells represents an important step in tissue culture procedures. Proteolytic enzymes are used routinely for this purpose. The effectiveness and high activity at low temperatures should make the krill peptide hydrolases particularly attractive for such applications.

## 13. Industrial oil manufacture

Industrial production of oil from animal- or plant sources depends on either mechanical pressing or solvent extraction of the raw material. Prior to these steps the raw material is often pre-treated to facilitate removal of the oil from the cells in which the lipid is stored. The mechanism of release of lipid from fatty cells has been discussed by Mohr (1979), with particular reference to the production of fish meal and oil.

The release of oil from fatty tissues can be significantly improved if the walls of the cells storing the fat are weakened or punctured prior to pressing or extraction. Enzymic treatment constitutes such a method. The application of the effective endo- and exopeptidases of krill is of particular interest.

In order to achieve the goal, the enzymes should be added to the macerated fatty raw material, and allowed to act for a comparatively short time at low temperature in order to cause a weakening of the cell walls, but without causing extensive hydrolysis of the protein phase, in which case problems may be encountered in the pressing stage.

#### 14. Production of free fatty acids

Antarctic krill, as well as krill species in the North Atlantic, are characterized by containing high proportions of lipids, including phospholipids. The phospholipids of krill have an unusually high proportion of long-chain w-3 fatty acids (Ellingsen, 1982; Saether *et al.*, 1986b). Furthermore, as mentioned above, krill possess a very efficient enzyme apparatus for degrading lipids to free fatty acids.

The application of krill lipases and phospholipases presents a highly interesting, new method for producing free fatty acids, either by a process based on controlled autolysis of krill itself, or by letting purified preparations of krill lipases and phospholipases act on a suitable lipid raw material. Such processes present a new, competitive avenue to the manufacture of highly concentrated preparations of fatty acids, and in particular the w-3 fatty acids from marine organisms.

## REFERENCES

- K.M. Clegg (1978), In "Biochemical Aspects of New Protein Food", J. Adler-Nissen, B.O. Eggum, L. Munck & H.S. Olsen eds., p. 109-117, Pergamon, Oxford.
- T.E. Ellingsen (1982), Dr.ing. thesis, Department of Biotechnology, The Norwegian Institute of Technology, Trondheim.
- T.E. Ellingsen & V. Mohr (1987), *Biochem. J.*, 246, 295-305.
- V. Mohr (1978), In "Biochemical Aspects of New Protein Food", J. Adler-Nissen, B.O. Eggum, L. Munck & H.S. Olsen eds., p. 53-62, Pergamon, Oxford.
- V. Mohr (1979), *Proc. Third Symp. Fish Meal and Oil*, p. 90. Int. Assoc. Fish Meal Manufacturers, London.
- V. Mohr (1980), *Process Biochem.* 15, 18-21.
- K.K. Osnes & V. Mohr (1985a), *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.* 82B, 599-606.
- K.K. Osnes & V. Mohr (1985b), *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.* 82B, 607-619.
- K.K. Osnes & V. Mohr (1986), *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.* 83B, 445-458.
- K.K. Osnes, T.E. Ellingsen & V. Mohr (1986), *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.* 83B, 801-805.
- W.I. Rick (1974), In "Methods of Enzymatic Analysis", Bergmeyer ed., Academic Press, New York.

O. Saether, T.E. Ellingsen & V. Mohr (1986a), Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 83B, 51-55.

O. Saether, T.E. Ellingsen & V. Mohr (1986b), J. Lipid Res. 27, 274-285.

O. Saether, T.E. Ellingsen & V. Mohr (1987), Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 88B, 165-176.

## EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE 1. ENZYME PREPARATIONSA. Enzyme preparation made from macerated krill

Frozen Antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) were thawed, and subsequently treated in a partly thawed state for two periods of each 30 s in a MSE Homogeniser. The macerated krill was used as a source of enzymes according to the invention. Such material will be referred to as "macerated krill".

B. Enzyme preparation in the form of an aqueous extract of krill

Frozen Antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) were thawed and macerated as described above. 25 g of the macerated krill were mixed with 50 ml of water, homogenised and centrifuged in the cold (0 °C) for 30 min at 12 500 g. The sediment was resuspended in 50 ml water, homogenised and centrifuged as described above.

The combined extracts were added 20 ml of tetrachloromethane and homogenised in the cold. The mixture was centrifuged for 15 min at 2 500 g. The water-phase was removed and extracted once more with tetrachloromethane and centrifuged.

The combined, defatted aqueous extracts were freeze dried and used as an enzyme preparation according to the invention.

Such preparations will be referred to as "freeze dried krill extract".

C. Preparation of partly purified krill enzymes

25 g of macerated krill (Example 1A) were mixed with 25 ml deionised water and incubated at 50 °C for 20 h at the

natural pH of the homogenate. During incubation a major proportion of the krill proteins are broken down, leaving the digestive enzymes intact.

After incubation the mixture was centrifuged at 13 000 g for 40 min in the cold. The aqueous phase was removed and subjected to ultrafiltration using an Amicon Diaflo Ultra-filter type PM 10. The filter effects retention of material with a molecular weight exceeding 10 000. The high - molecular weight fraction after ultrafiltration containing the digestive enzymes including peptide hydrolases was concentrated, freeze dried and used according to the claims of the invention. The present preparation will be referred to as "purified krill enzymes".

D. Preparation of chromatographed krill enzymes

20 ml of defatted, aqueous krill extract as described in Example 2B were chromatographed on Sephadex G-100 (dextran crosslinked with epichlorhydrin, Pharmacia Fine Chemicals AB, Uppsala, Sweden) in a column having a diameter of 3.1 cm and a height of 69 cm. The column was equilibrated and eluted (30 ml/h) with Tris-HCl buffer (0.05 M, pH 7.5) at 5 °C.

The elution profile was monitored spectrophotometrically at 280 nm. Fractions were collected and enzymatically active fractions pooled, dialysed, freeze dried and used as enzyme preparations according to the invention.

The proteolytic activity was determined using hemoglobin or casein as substrates according to the method of Rick (1974). The fractions collected during gel chromatography corresponded to molecular weights of roughly 20 000-40 000 dalton. Such preparations were used in accordance with the claims of the invention, and will be referred to as "chromatographed preparations of krill enzymes".

EXAMPLE 2. PROTEIN CONCENTRATESA. Fish protein concentrate

3 g dry weight of fresh cod filet with skin and bones were suspended in 100 ml of deionised water in a vessel equipped with a stirrer and connected to an automatic pH-control unit maintaining pH at 7.5. The temperature was raised to, and maintained at 50 °C. 30 mg of "purified krill enzymes" were added and the hydrolyses carried out for 120 min. Muscle tissue and skin were broken down during the process, and bones easily sedimented.

The mixture was afterwards cooled to 4 °C and centrifuged at 12 000 g for 15 min. The water soluble fraction after centrifugation accounted for approximately 60 % of the dry weight of the cod muscle hydrolysed. The present fish protein concentrate exhibited very good sensory and functional properties.

B. Beef protein concentrate

3 g dry weight of beef muscle with adhering tendon and small fragments of bone were hydrolysed with 30 mg of "purified krill enzymes" as outlined in Example 2A. The muscle tissue and tendon were effectively broken down during hydrolysis. The water soluble fraction after hydrolysis accounted for approximately 55 % of the dry weight of the starting material.

The water soluble fraction was freeze dried. The present beef protein concentrate exhibited very good sensory and functional properties.

C. Milk protein concentrate

3 g dry weight of casein were suspended in 100 ml of deionised water and hydrolysed with 30 mg of "purified krill enzymes" for 120 min at 40 °C and pH 7.0 as outlined in Example 2A.

The hydrolysed casein was freeze dried. The present milk protein concentrate exhibited very good sensory properties, particularly from the point of view of bitterness.

D. Plant protein concentrate

3 g of soy protein isolate were suspended in 100 ml of deionised water and hydrolysed with 30 mg of "purified krill enzymes" for 120 min at 50 °C and pH 7.5 as outlined in Example 2A. The hydrolysed soy protein preparation was freeze dried. The present soy protein concentrate exhibited very good functional properties, and was very satisfactory from the point of view of bitterness.

EXAMPLE 3. DIETARY PROTEIN HYDROLYSATE

3 g dry weight of casein were suspended in 100 ml deionised water and hydrolysed with 20 mg of "chromatographed krill enzymes" for 5 h at 50 °C and pH 7.5 as outlined in Example 2A. After hydrolysis approximately 10 % of the casein had been converted to free amino acids.

After centrifugation at 12 000 g for 15 min the clear supernatant was treated in an Amicon Diaflo Ultrafiltration Unit using a Diaflo Ultrafilter Type YC having a 500 MW cutoff. The low-molecular fraction containing the free amino acids was concentrated and freeze dried. The product exhibited almost no bitterness and was suitable as a dietary protein hydrolysate.

EXAMPLE 4. PRODUCTION OF FREE AMINO ACIDS

A. Free amino acids produced by autolysis of krill

Frozen Antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) were thawed and macerated as described in Example 1A. 50 g of macerated krill were placed in a plastic bottle with screw cap and incubated at 50 °C for 20 h at the natural pH of the krill.

During this period a considerable proportion of the total protein of the krill was converted to free amino acids.

After incubation the mixture was centrifuged at 13 000 g for 40 min in the cold. The aqueous phase containing a high proportion of free amino acids was removed and treated as described in Example 4C.

B. Production of free amino acids from fish protein

3 g dry weight of macerated capelin (Mallotus villosus) were suspended in 100 ml deionised water. 0.20 g of "freeze dried krill extract" (Example 1B) were added, and the hydrolysis allowed to proceed at pH 7.0 for 20 h at 50 °C. After hydrolysis the mixture was centrifuged at 13 000 g for 40 min in the cold. The aqueous phase after centrifugation was removed and treated as described in Example 4C.

C. Production of a crude preparation of free amino acids

25 ml of the aqueous phase arising from autolysis of krill (Example 4A) or from hydrolysis of the fish protein (Example 4B) were treated in an Amicon Diaflo Ultrafiltration Unit using a Diaflo Ultrafilter type YC having a 500 MW cutoff.

The low-molecular fraction containing a high proportion of free amino acids was concentrated and freeze dried. The present sample contains a mixture of free amino acids.

EXAMPLE 5. PRODUCTION OF A GROWTH MEDIUM FOR FERMENTATION

A. Growth medium from krill protein

Frozen Antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) were thawed, macerated and allowed to autolyse as described in Example 4A. After autolysis the mixture was centrifuged at 13 000 g

for 40 min. The aqueous phase was removed, concentrated in a rotary evaporator and freeze dried.

The preparation is suitable as a source of amino acids in microbial media. This was demonstrated by including the preparation at a concentration of 0.5 % w/v in a microbiological medium instead of Trypton. In separate experiments a Lactobacillus sp. and a Bacillus sp. was inoculated into the medium. The rate of growth was of the same order in the medium containing krill autolysate as in that with Trypton.

B. Growth medium from fish protein

Frozen capelin (Mallotus villosus) were thawed, macerated and 3 g dry weight suspended in 100 ml deionised water. 0.20 g of "freeze dried krill extract" were added, and the hydrolysis carried out at 50 °C for 20 h at pH 7.0. After hydrolysis the mixture was centrifuged at 13 000 g for 40 min. The aqueous phase was concentrated in a rotary evaporator and freeze dried.

The preparation served as a good source of amino acids for the growth of a Lactobacillus sp. and a Bacillus sp.

EXAMPLE 6. ENZYMIC TREATMENT OF ANIMAL FEEDSTUFFS

A. Improvement of the digestibility of fish protein

Commercial fishmeal was subjected to partial hydrolysis in order to improve its digestibility. 10 g of fish meal were added 10 ml of deionised water and 0.5 g of "freeze dried krill extract". The slurry was dried under vacuum to a water content of approx. 30 %, and subsequently stored at 10 °C for 3 weeks. During this period a partial proteolysis took place as evidenced by an increase in solubility of the fish meal. The preparation was suitable as a component in fish feed.

B. Improvement of the functional properties of fish protein

10 g of fishmeal were added 10 ml of deionised water and 0.5 g of "freeze dried krill extract". The slurry was kept at a temperature of 25 °C for 3 days, and subsequently dried under vacuum at 60 °C. The preparation exhibited improved functional properties compared to untreated fishmeal, as evidenced by a higher swelling- and fat emulsifying capacity.

EXAMPLE 7. TENDERIZING OF MUSCLE FOODS

A. Tenderizing of beef muscle

A piece of beef longissimus dorsi muscle weighing approximately 100 g was injected with approximately 10 ml of a 1 % solution of "purified krill enzymes" in water using a syringe. The enzyme was distributed throughout the sample by injecting small amounts enzyme solution into various parts of the muscle.

The sample was kept at 10 °C for 1 week. After heating to 80 °C for 10 min to inactivate the enzyme, the piece of meat treated with enzyme was noticeably more tender than a control injected with just water, and stored under the same conditions.

B. Tenderizing of herring muscle

A piece of filet of herring (Clupea harengus) weighing approximately 100 g was injected with 10 ml of a 1 % solution of "purified krill enzyme" using a syringe as described above under Example 7A. The filet was kept at 10 °C for 1 week, during which time a noticable tenderization of the flesh took place.

EXAMPLE 8. DEBITTERING OF A MILK PROTEIN HYDROLYSATE

3 g of casein were suspended in 100 ml of deionised water and hydrolysed with 15 mg of Papain (Merck) at 60 °C for 3 hours. The resulting hydrolysate was heated to 95 °C for 10 min to inactivate the enzyme. The hydrolysate had a distinctly bitter taste.

The hydrolysate was added 15 mg of "chromatographed krill enzyme", and incubated at 30 °C for 3 hours. The treatment with the krill enzyme significantly reduced the bitterness of the hydrolysate.

EXAMPLE 9. ANTIHAZE TREATMENT OF BEER

Commercial lager beer in cans was stored at 0 °C for several weeks, and subsequently taken through a cycle of cooling to approximately -5 °C, followed by heating to approximately +5 °C in order to develop haziness. After the treatment, the beer was centrifuged at 13 000 g for 60 min.

The sediment after centrifugation was suspended in 25 ml of lager beer, giving a clearly turbid sample. 0.1 g of "purified krill enzymes" were added, and the beer incubated at 10 °C for one week. During this period haziness was noticeably reduced.

EXAMPLE 10. VISCOSITY REDUCTION OF A PROTEIN SOLUTION

A 5 % (w/v) solution of bovine serum albumin in water was prepared. 0.05 g of "purified krill extract" were added to 25 ml of the albumin solution, and the solution kept for one week at 10 °C. During this period the viscosity of the solution was noticeably reduced.

EXAMPLE 11. DEHAIRING OF HIDES

A sample of raw cows hide was treated with a 2 % solution of "purified krill extract" for 24 h at 30 °C. The treatment caused effective depilation of the hide.

EXAMPLE 12. REMOVAL OF TISSUESA. Removal of scales from fish

A frozen herring (Clupea harengus) was thawed and placed in a solution containing 0.5 % (w/v) of "freeze dried krill extract". The herring was left in the solution for one week at 5 °C. After this treatment the scales of the fish could easily be brushed off.

B. Removal of skin from fish

Frozen capelin (Mallotus villosus) were thawed and placed in a solution containing 2 % (w/v) of "freeze dried krill extract". The fish were left in the solution for one week at 5 °C. The treatment effected a partial breakdown of the skin, and allowed the remainder of the skin on the fish to be easily removed.

C. Removal of shells from shrimps

Frozen shrimps (Pandalus borealis) were thawed and placed in a solution containing 2 % (w/v) of "freeze dried krill extract". The shrimps were left in the solution for four days at 5 °C. The shrimps were subsequently heated briefly in hot water. After the present treatment the shells could easily be removed from the shrimps.

D.. Weakening of fish roe membrane

The entire roe of a 2 kg cod (Gadus morhua) was placed in a solution containing 2 % (w/v) of "freeze dried krill extract"

and left for one week at 5 °C. During this period the roe membrane was weakened.

#### EXAMPLE 13. DISSOCIATION AND DISPERSION OF CELLS

The kidney from a rat was removed and cut into small pieces. The pieces of the kidney were placed in buffer containing 0.25 % (w/v) of "chromatographed krill enzymes" and 0.01 M EDTA prewarmed to 37 °C. The suspension was gently shaken during the incubation which lasted for 60 min. The procedure resulted in the liberation of individual kidney cells.

#### EXAMPLE 14. ISOLATION OF FISH OIL

Frozen herring (Clupea harengus) was thawed and ground in a meat grinder. 25 g of the ground herring were mixed with an equal weight of water. 0.15 g of "freeze dried krill extract" were added, and the mixture incubated for three days at 5 °C. After incubation the mixture was heated to 90 °C for 10 min, and subsequently centrifuged at 13 000 g for 30 min. A distinct oil phase was formed during centrifugation.

#### EXAMPLE 15. PRODUCTION OF FREE FATTY ACIDS

##### A. Production of free fatty acids by autolysis of krill

Frozen Antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) were thawed and macerated as described in Example 1A. 50 g of macerated krill were placed in a plastic bottle with screw cap and incubated for 20 h at 40 °C at the natural pH of the krill. During this period a considerable proportion of the lipid, and in particular the phospholipid, was hydrolysed with the formation of free fatty acids. Free fatty acids were isolated by the procedure given in Example 15C.

B. Production of free fatty acids from fish lipid

Frozen herring (Clupea harengus) was thawed and ground in a meat grinder. 25 g of the ground herring were mixed with an equal weight of deionised water, and added 2 g of "freeze dried krill extract". The mixture was incubated at 40 °C for 24 h, during which period free fatty acids were produced. A preparation of free fatty acids was isolated as described in Example 15C.

C. Isolation of free fatty acids

10 g of autolysed krill (Example 15A) or hydrolysed herring (Example 15B) were acidified with mineral acid to a pH-value of 2-3. The acidified material was extracted several times with diethyl ether. The ether was removed from the extracts on a rotary evaporator. The residues contained a high proportion of free fatty acids, including the long-chain w-3 fatty acids of marine origin.

## CLAIMS

1. Method for modifying the protein-, peptide- and/or lipid constituents of biological material in industrial processes based on the application of enzymes from an animal selected from the group of animals belonging to the order Euphausiacea. The term modification does not include the application of said enzymes in cleaning procedures or their action inside living organisms.
2. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the enzymes are peptide hydrolases and/or lipolytic enzymes.
3. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the enzymes in their monomeric form have apparent molecular weights in the range from 10 000 to 400 000 dalton.
4. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the substrates hydrolysed are proteins, peptides and/or lipids.
5. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the enzymic modification takes place at temperatures ranging from - 60 to 250 °C, in particular -5 to 70 °C, for periods ranging from 1 sec to three years, in particular 1 min to 3 months.
6. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the enzymic modification takes place at the natural pH of the biological material, or at pH-values adjusted artificially in the range from 1 to 13, in particular pH 3 to 10.
7. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the production of a protein concentrate from a raw material of animal-, plant- or microbial origin.

8. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the production of a protein hydrolysate for dietary applications.
9. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the production of free amino acids from a raw material of animal-, plant- or microbial origin.
10. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the production in an amino acid supplement for microbiological media.
11. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in improving the nutritional and/or functional properties of food- and feedstuffs.
12. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in tenderizing muscle foods.
13. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the debittering of peptides.
14. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in antihaze treatment of solutions.
15. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in reducing the viscosity of protein solutions.
16. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the dehairing of hides.
17. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in facilitating the removal of skin, membranes, scales or exoskeletons from organisms.

18. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the dissociation and dispersion of cells in cell culture processes.
19. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in improving the release of oil from fatty raw materials.
20. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the production of free fatty acids from raw materials of animal-, plant- or microbial origin.
21. Method according to claim 1, characterized in that the modification consists in the production of free fatty acids by autolysis of animals belonging to the order Euphausiacea.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No PCT/SE89/00235

<b>I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> (if several classification symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>4</sup>		
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC <sup>5</sup> :		
C 12 N 9/00, C 12 N 9/50, A 61 K 37/54		
<b>II. FIELDS SEARCHED</b>		
Minimum Documentation Searched <sup>7</sup>		
Classification System <sup>1</sup>	Classification Symbols	
IPC 4 : C 12 N; A 61 K		
Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>8</sup>		
SE,NO, DK,FI classes as above. Data base search WPI/L, CA.		
<b>III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT <sup>9</sup></b>		
Category <sup>6</sup>	Citation of Document, <sup>11</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>12</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>13</sup>
X	WO, A1, 84/01715 (HELLGREN, LARS) 10 May 1984 see page 2 lines 5-8, page 6, lines 24-25 page 7 lines 16-20, page 5 line 25, page 7 lines 16-20 & EP, 0107634 CA, 1220740 AU, 573730 SE, 8302268 US, 4801451	1-20
X	Chemical Abstracts, Vol 105 (1986), abstract No 72633t, Experientia 1986, 42(4), 403-4 (Eng).	1-20
X	WO, A1, 85/04809 (HELLGREN, LARS) 7 November 1985 see page 6 lines 24-28 and example 4, page 16 & SE, 8402238 EP, 0177605 JP,T, 61501918  .../...	1-20
<p><sup>10</sup> Special categories of cited documents:</p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.</p> <p>"&amp;" document member of the same patent family</p>		
<b>IV. CERTIFICATION</b>		
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search	Date of Mailing of this International Search Report	
1989-06-14	1989-06-25	
International Searching Authority	Signature of Authorized Officer	
Swedish Patent Office	<i>Yvonne Siösteen</i> Yvonne Siösteen	

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)		
Category *	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No
	US, 4695457 SE, 454566	
A	Process Biochemistry, Vol 14, October 1979, pages 17-19, (T Ellingsen and V Mohr), "A new process for the utilization of antarctic krill"	1-6
A	Comp.Biochem.Physiol., Vol 83B, No 4, 1986, pages 801-805, (Knut Kr. Osnes et al), "Hydrolysis of proteins by peptide hydrolases of antarctic krill, euphausia superba", see page 805	1-6



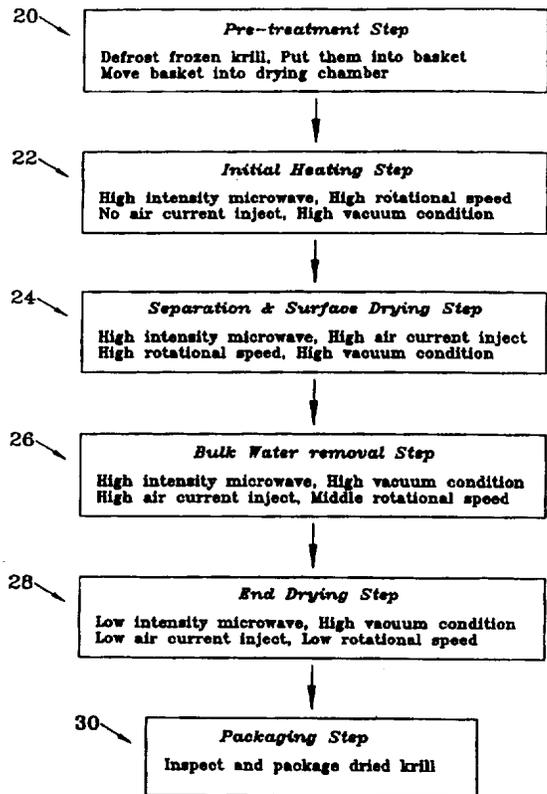
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>A23B 4/03</b></p>	<p><b>A1</b></p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 97/38585</b> (43) International Publication Date: 23 October 1997 (23.10.97)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/CA97/00238 (22) International Filing Date: 9 April 1997 (09.04.97) (30) Priority Data: 08/632,832 16 April 1996 (16.04.96) US (71) Applicant: THE UNIVERSITY OF BRITISH COLUMBIA [CA/CA]; 2075 Wesbrook Mall, Vancouver, British Columbia V6T 1Z1 (CA). (72) Inventors: DURANCE, Timothy, Douglas; 3656 Point Grey Road, Vancouver, British Columbia V6R 1A9 (CA). LIU, Fang; 109 - 2730 Acadia Road, Vancouver, British Columbia V6T 1R9 (CA). (74) Agent: ROWLEY, C., A.; MacMillan Bloedel Research, Patents &amp; Licensing, 4225 Kincaid Street, Burnaby, British Columbia V5G 4P5 (CA).</p>		<p>(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p><b>Published</b> <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>

(54) Title: DEHYDRATED KRILL AND METHOD OF PRODUCING SAME

(57) Abstract

A new form of dried krill is provided by a plurality of substantially separate whole dried krill carcasses substantially all of which have a natural red color and sufficient strength and integrity to withstand normal handling without crumbling into small pieces and retain a strong wholesome fish aroma and flavor. The krill are dried by a method wherein a sequence of energy applications are applied at pressures below atmospheric and the surface of the product simultaneously swept by air to remove moisture. During the process the krill are subjected to a tumbling action. The energy applications are preferably microwave energy applications.



**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

## Dehydrated Krill and Method of Producing Same

### Field of Invention

The present invention relates to a new form of dried krill and to a process and apparatus for producing such substantially dry krill.

### 5 Background

Krill are small marine crustaceans belong to the family Euphasiacea. They are closely related, but distinct from the shrimp family, Decapoda. More than 80 species of Euphasiacea are known but only about six species are commercially important, particularly *Eupahasia pacifica*, *E. superba*, *Thysanoessa spinifera*, *T. inspinata*, *T.*  
10 *longipes* and *T. rashii*. Frozen and dried krill and krill products are consumed as human food. Substantial quantities of krill are also caught and processed for animal feeds, especially fish feed.

The main current market for dried krill product is for fish food with another important market being human food where it is used as a flavorant. The texture, color,  
15 flavor and aroma are important characteristics of the dried krill and generally reflect the quality of the product.

Currently there are two known methods of drying krill to produce the product for the market. Both processes produce a dried krill with poor coloring and generally of small particle size i.e. broken pieces or ,more likely in powder form.

20 Freeze drying of krill is one of the process use to produce dried krill. In this process the krill are frozen shortly after they are caught and then freeze dried at a convenient time. The dried product is usually in block form. The krill are brittle and easily broken and are in many cases crushed into a powder. Freeze dried krill have a very low moisture content due to the nature of the drying process, exhibit a pale red  
25 color, initially has a mild aroma, but oxidizes quickly to take on a fishy odor and has a flat or oxidized flavor. Protein retention of freeze dried krill is excellent.

Another method of drying krill is air drying wherein the fresh krill is immediately blanched and then dried in trays or ground and spray dried. Obviously with this technique the krill is treated immediately. The resultant product has a high  
30 moisture content (greater than about 12%), may be in whole or broken form if tray dried or in powder form if spray dried, has a yellow to pale red color, very mild weak aroma and little flavor. Blanching and air drying of krill significantly reduces its protein content.

It will be apparent that the dried product formed by either of the two methods is not high quality in that the color aroma and flavor, which are some of the most important characteristics of the product have been significantly deteriorated.

### **Brief description of the Invention**

5 It is the main object of the invention to provide a new dried krill product that has a natural red color, is largely unbroken, has a strong, desirable characteristic odor and good taste and to provide a method and apparatus for producing same.

10 Broadly the present invention relates to a dried krill product comprising a plurality of substantially separate whole dried krill carcasses substantially all of which have a natural red color and sufficient strength and integrity to withstand normal handling without crumbling into small pieces and retain a strong wholesome fish aroma and flavor.

15 The present invention also relates to a method and apparatus for producing dried krill products in the form of whole but separate carcasses comprising arranging raw krill in an at least partially separated arrangement in a microwave transparent carrier, partially drying said raw krill to provide a partially dried product substantially free of surface moisture but containing a first amount of unbound moisture within its structure, heating said partially dried product by means of electromagnetic radiation, subjecting said partially dried predate to a reduced pressure below atmospheric pressure during at least a portion of a period of time in which said product is subjected to electromagnetic radiation coordinated to provide a heated dried product containing unbound within its structure a second amount of moisture sufficient to generate flexibility and strength in the product, such that the form of whole krill is maintained during the drying process and subjecting said krill to a tumbling action during said partially drying and said heating by means of electromagnetic energy.

25 Preferably said partially drying includes defrosting said raw krill prior to said heating said partially dried product by means of electromagnetic radiation,

Preferably said subjecting to reduce pressure below atmospheric pressure includes sweeping surfaces of said product with moisture unsaturated air.

30 Preferably said below atmospheric pressure will be less than 120 Torr preferably less than 100 Torr and said pressure will be attained in less than 2 minutes preferably less than 1.7 minutes.

Preferably said second amount of moisture comprises between 10 and 40 % by weight of the separate dried product.

Preferably said dried product will be at a temperature of between 40 and 90 °C

Preferably said electromagnetic radiation comprise microwaves

### **Brief Description of the Drawing**

Further features, objects and advantages will be apparent from the detailed  
5 description of the preferred embodiments of the present invention taken in conjunction  
with the accompanying drawing in which;

Fig. 1 is a flow chart of the method of the present invention.

Fig. 2 is a diagram of one embodiment of the apparatus of the present  
invention.

10 Figure 3 is an illustration of a typical whole dried krill carcass as produced  
using the present invention.

### **Description of the preferred Embodiment**

The method of the present invention is suitable for the preparation of dried krill  
and other sea foods for either fresh krill or frozen krill which may be defrosted and  
15 pressed to remove some of the free water. In this description, the term wet product  
shall mean fresh or frozen krill or other sea foods to which the invention may be  
applied for example shrimp, algae, small fish, etc.

The following description will deal primarily with krill, but it is intended that  
the term krill to read where reasonable as any of other similar materials that may be  
20 treated or processed to advantage using the present invention. It will be apparent that  
when a different material is to be dried to provide the dried product the conditions will  
have to be tuned to obtain the desired natural color and high quality in the dried  
product.

As shown Figure 1, initial preparation of fresh or frozen krills as designated by  
25 the box 20 includes the steps of defrosting, if required, and weighting the fresh krill  
and arranging them in or on a microwave transparent carrier such as a basket or the  
like for transport. Preferably the fresh krill will also be treated to drain excess surface  
moisture by a pressing or centrifugation method.

In carrying out the method of the invention as part of the preparation stage 20  
30 of Figure 1 fresh krill are preferably placed in a suitable transport system such as the  
plastic basket drum and, if desired treated with suitable seasoning. If krill was frozen  
before drying, it will preferably be defrosted before drying, although defrosting can be  
achieved in the vacuum microwave chamber during a heating stage, if desired. It is

believed that predrying of previously frozen and defrosted krill enhances the drying rate because some water is removed as drip loss and need not be evaporated.

After such treatment, the treated product is subjected to an initial heating step as indicated at 22 which at least partially dries the krills preferably by application of microwave energy under partial vacuum conditions with reduced oxygen concentration. During this initial heating step 22 water releases from the krill, drips from the baskets 64 (see Figure 2) and is removed from the vacuum chamber 60 (Figure 2) as liquid, through the vacuum pump 88 or through an optional draining system (not shown). The time to complete step 22 depends on the weight of fresh krill in the chamber and microwave power density and is set so that at the end of the initial heating step 22, the moisture content of the krill is about 70 % to 78 % by weight.

The initial heating step 22 is followed by a moisture separation and surface drying step 24, wherein a high intensity microwave field (more than about 0.6 kW/kg of krill) is applied. The intensity of the field in step 24 is preferably selected to raise the temperature of the krill to about 60 °C in about 10 minutes, thereby to rapidly convert a major portion of the moisture within the krills into a heated vapor. While typically raw krill have a moisture content of approximately 80 % by weight and it is slightly reduced to about 70 to 78 % in step 22, the expose of the krills to the high intensity microwave field in the moisture separation and drying at 24 applies sufficient heat to heat the krill the required temperature to substantially prevent enzyme reaction and also to reduce the moisture content, yet not so high as to damage the krill. The separation and surface drying step 24 is carried out preferably at a pressure of about 80 to 120 Torr and a temperature of about 47 °C to 55 °C. The drying step 24 may take up to about 15 minutes.

In the preferred embodiment of the present invention, total moisture content of the krill leaving the stage 24 is about 60 % to 75 % by weight of the krills with desired optimum of about 73 %.

The separation and surface drying step 24 serves to vaporize a substantial portion of the tissue moisture and flush the water vapor out of the chamber. It also serves to dry the shell surface of the krill, thereby allowing the subsequent bulk water drying step 26 of the present invention.

If the krill are insufficiently dried in the separation and surface drying step 24, the shell of the krill will be sticky and the krill will tend to form a ball if placed together in a revolving basket.

Air flow rates for these air currents in step 24 are preferably between about  
5  $2.8 \times 10^{-5}$  and  $5.6 \times 10^{-5}$  m<sup>3</sup>/kg.s fresh krill. Because a larger amount of moisture escapes from the krill during expose to the high intensity microwave field, the air injection method preferably is used to minimize condensation within the chamber. Such condensation would decrease the amount of microwave energy available for heating and drying krill because the condense again absorbs microwave energy in the chamber,  
10 is vaporized and may again condense on the chamber wall. This is called the "heat pump effect" and it greatly reduces microwave energy usage efficiency and increases the processing time if not minimized or prevented.

Next the partially dried krill are subjected to a bulk water drying step as indicated at 26 wherein further moisture is preferably removed by evaporation under  
15 below atmospheric pressure conditions and the use of air jets which spray dry air over the partially dried krill product i.e. the product is swept by air currents which pick up moisture from the surface of the product while it is simultaneously subjected to the application of high intensity microwave energy under below atmospheric pressure conditions.

20 In the bulk water removal step 26 the at least partially dried krill are exposed to a middle intensity microwave field for a period of time to raise their temperature to at least 50 °C within about 10 minutes and under a pressure of about 100 Torr to reduce the moisture content of krill to about 65 % to 30 % by weight. The temperature of krill is higher because in part of the increased mass flow resistance of the krill surface  
25 increases the vapor pressure inside the krill body thereby effecting the vapor temperature by thermodynamic relationship between vapor pressure and temperature

The intensity of the microwave field and the duration of exposure is coordinated with the weight of fresh krill to achieve the desired dehydration and heating rates.

30 Preferably heat is being applied in the stage 22 and the separation and surface drying and bulk water removing steps 24 and 26 are carried out in the same closed vessel.

Obviously any step requiring pressure and/or a controlled atmosphere other than atmospheric must be carried out in some form of closed container which in some stages must also contain microwave energy when used. Where such conditions are not applied the krill need not to be so contained.

5           After a bulk removal step 26, the substantially dehydrated krill are finish dried in end drying step 28 to the desired moisture content by applying a low microwave intensity (about 0.4 kW/kg krill), high vacuum (less than 80 Torr) and a low air injection flow rate e.g.  $2.8 \times 10^{-5}$  m<sup>3</sup>/kg.s. If desired, this end drying step 28 may alternatively be achieve using hot air drying at elevated temperature about 45 °C and at  
10 atmosphere air pressure, but finish drying in a conventional air dryer or oven is slower. With either option after end drying in step 28 the resultant product is a dried krill composed of substantially whole carcasses with natural red color, a moisture content of about 10 % to 15 % by weight and retaining its wholesome seafood aroma and flavor.

15           The krill is subjected to a tumbling action applied thereto by rotation of the basket or the like in which it is contained during the stages or steps 22, 24, 26 and 28 to facilitate the escape of moisture from the load of krill, permit more uniform drying and to impede the individual krill from sticking together.

          The dried krill product so produced is shown in Figure 3 and will consist  
20 mainly of whole krill 40 and a significant portion of krill pieces similar to those shown at 42, and will not contain a substantial amount of powdered krill.

          Turning to Figure 2, equipment for carrying the process of the present invention is illustrated schematically. The equipment includes a microwave and vacuum chamber 60 having an inlet door 62. The krill product in suitable, substantially  
25 cylindrical shaped (for rotation within the chamber 60 as will be described below) containers (baskets) 64 of is delivered to the chamber 60. The baskets 64 are substantially right cylindircal containing the product are introduced into the chamber 60 at the appropriate point in the process (depending on where microwave power is to be first applied, for example to defrost frozen krill) and are sealed within the chamber  
30 60 for the application of energy, reduced pressure and sweeping of surfaces with dry air as described above.

The microwave energy is provided in the illustrated system by three magnetrons 70, 72 and 74 which inject the microwaves into the chamber 60 through sealing windows 76, 78 and 80 and hence into the basket(s) 64 within the chamber 60.

5 The baskets 64 are shown supported within the chamber on a rolling system 86 formed by a plurality of horizontal rollers 85 (only one shown) that in turn is preferably supported by a suitable platform 87 on side of which is supported by a load cell 82 which measures the weight in the chamber 60 and delivers this information to the control computer 84. The rolling of the basket 64 during the process applies a tumbling action to the krill.

10 Suitable temperature and pressure gauges schematically indicated at 90 measure the temperature and pressure in the chamber 60 and provide this information to the control computer 84.

Below atmospheric pressure is applied by vacuum pump 88 controlled by computer 84 to reduce ambient pressure within the chamber to the appropriate level, at 15 the appropriate time in the process and air is bled into the chamber 60 at the appropriate times under control of the flow meter 92 which in turn regulates the air flow based on the commands from the computer 84.

After completion of the operation to be carried out in the chamber 60 the baskets 64 are removed through the door 62.

20 Destructive enzyme reactions take place within a few hours at temperatures above freezing, especially when oxygen content is high around the krill and these reactions change the natural red color of fresh krill to black, and also cause a loss of protein content due to enzyme catalyzed hydrolysis during drying. The vacuum condition, the elevated temperature during the initial heating step 22 and the rapid 25 drying rate during steps 24, 26, 28 and 30 substantially prevent these reactions.

**Example 1:**

The frozen krill (*Euphausia pacifica*) are defrosted first and drained of free water. 5.0 kilograms of krill with initial moisture content of 80 % by weight are placed into plastic rolling (cylindrical) basket (Fig. 1) then moved into the microwave vacuum 30 dehydration system 60. High intensity microwave power (above defined), high rate of rotation of the basket on a horizontal axis (4 RPM) and 120 Torr of ambient pressure are used in step 22. There is no air injection flow during the step 22. The temperature of the krill is about 60°C in the initial heating step 22. The chamber

pressure in the step 22 is 100 Torr and the time is 10 minutes. At end of step 22, the moisture content of krill is 78 % by weight.

After the initial heating step 22, the krill are next subjected to a separation and surface drying step 24 wherein high intensity microwave energy is applied. The air injection flow rate is  $5.6 \times 10^{-5}$  m<sup>3</sup>/kg.s with air temperature 20 °C. The chamber pressure in step 24 is 120 Torr. The separation and surface drying step 24 is 15 minutes long. High air flow rate quickly sweeps water vapor out of the chamber and the surface of krill dry without sticking to each other. The moisture content of krill at end of the separation and surface drying step 24 is 74.6 % by weight.

In the bulk water removal step 26 following step 24 the ambient pressure is 100 Torr and air injection flow rate is  $2.8 \times 10^{-5}$  m<sup>3</sup>/kg.s. The rotational speed of basket is 2 RPM. and the temperature of krill is 65 °C. High intensity of microwave is used in this step. At end of step 26, the krill weigh 2.2 kilograms with moisture content of 63 % by weight. End drying step drying step 28 was finished by air dryer in this example.

The final krill product after above treatment has a natural red color which was measured by LabScan Color Meter (Hunter Associate Laboratory, Inc.), L = 30.92, a = 12.94, and b = 6.81. The protein content of dried krills is about 54 % by weight. The final moisture content is 12% by weight.

### **Example 2:**

Following the flow chart in Fig. 1, the six kilograms of fresh krill with initial moisture content of 77 % by weight are placed into plastic cylindrical basket then moved in microwave vacuum dehydration system in the pre-treatment step 20. The initial heating step 22 following step 20 applies high intensity microwave energy (0.6 kW/kg krill), high rotation rate (4 RPM) and 15.95 kPa (120 Torr) of ambient pressure. No air injection is used in the step 22. The temperature of krill is 60 °C in the initial heating step 22 and heating time is 10 minutes long. At end of the step 22, the krill weigh is reduced to 4.38 kilograms and the moisture content is 70 % by weight.

High intensity microwave energy (0.65 kW/kg.krill), high rotation speed (4 RPM), high air injection flow rate,  $5.6 \times 10^{-5}$  m<sup>3</sup>/kg.s, and 15.95 kPa absolute (120 Torr) ambient pressure are applied in surface drying step 24 after the step 22. The surface of krill is dried quickly. At end of separation drying step 24, the krill are separated from each other and krill surfaces are more dry than inside the body. The

drying time during the separation and drying step 24 is ten minutes. The weight of krill at end of the step 24 is 3.5 kg with 62 percent of moisture content by weight.

In the bulk water removal step 26 following the step 24 the ambient pressure is 13.28 kPa and air injection flow rate is  $2.8 \times 10^{-5}$  m<sup>3</sup>/kg.s. The rotational speed of the plastic basket is 2 RPM. The moisture content of krill at end of bulk water removal step 26 is 35 % by weight and the total weight of krill is reduced to 2.04 kilograms. Time is 45 minutes from the beginning of drying.

After the bulk water removal step 26, krill are finish dried in low intensity, high vacuum and low air current injection rate, in the finish drying step 28, i.e. 0.4 kW per kilogram of krill, 10.63 kPa ambient pressure,  $2.8 \times 10^{-5}$  m<sup>3</sup>/kg.s of air injection flow rate (air temperature is 20°C) and the basket is revolving at one RPM. The duration of the finish drying step 28 is 20 minutes. The dehydrated krill leaving the step 28 has a weight of 1.48 kilograms with a moisture content of 11.5 % by weight. The color of the dried krill product was measured by LabScan Color Meter (Hunter Association Laboratory, Inc.). The results of measure are L = 33.16, a = 16.36 and b = 6.81. The protein content was about the same as the last example.

Having described the invention modifications will be evident to those skilled in the art without departing from the invention as defined in the appended claims.

We claim

1. A dried krill product comprising a plurality of substantially separate whole dried krill carcasses substantially all of which have a natural red color and sufficient strength and integrity to withstand normal handling without crumbling into small pieces  
5 and retain a strong wholesome fish aroma and flavor.
2. A method for producing dried krill products in the form of whole but separate carcasses comprising arranging raw krill in an at least partially separated arrangement in a microwave transparent carrier, partially drying said raw krill to provide a partially  
10 dried product substantially free of surface moisture but containing a first amount of unbound moisture within its structure, heating said partially dried product by means of electromagnetic radiation, subjecting said partially dried product to a reduced pressure below atmospheric pressure during at least the portion of a period of time in which  
15 said product is subjected to electromagnetic radiation to provide a heated dried product containing unbound within its structure a second amount of moisture sufficient to generate flexibility and strength in the product, such that the form of whole krill is maintained during the drying process, and subjecting said krill to a tumbling action during said partial drying and said heating by electromagnetic radiation.
3. A method as defined in claim 2 wherein said partially drying includes defrosting said raw krill prior to heating said partially dried product by means of electromagnetic  
20 radiation.
4. A method as defined in claim 2 wherein said subjecting said partially dried product to reduce pressure below atmospheric pressure includes sweeping surfaces of said product with moisture unsaturated air.
5. A method as defined in claim 2, 3 or 4 wherein said second amount of moisture  
25 comprises between 10 and 40 % by weight of the dried product.
6. A method as defined in claim 2, 3 or 4 wherein said pressure below atmospheric pressure is less than 120 Torr and said pressure is attained in less than 2 minutes.
7. A method as defined in claim 2, 3 or 4 wherein said pressure below  
30 atmospheric pressure is less than 100 Torr and said pressure is attained in less than 1.7 minutes.
8. A method as defined in claim 2, 3 or 4 wherein said dried product is heated to a temperature of between 40 and 90 °C.

9. A method as defined in claim 2, 3 or 4 wherein said electromagnetic radiation comprise microwaves.

1/3

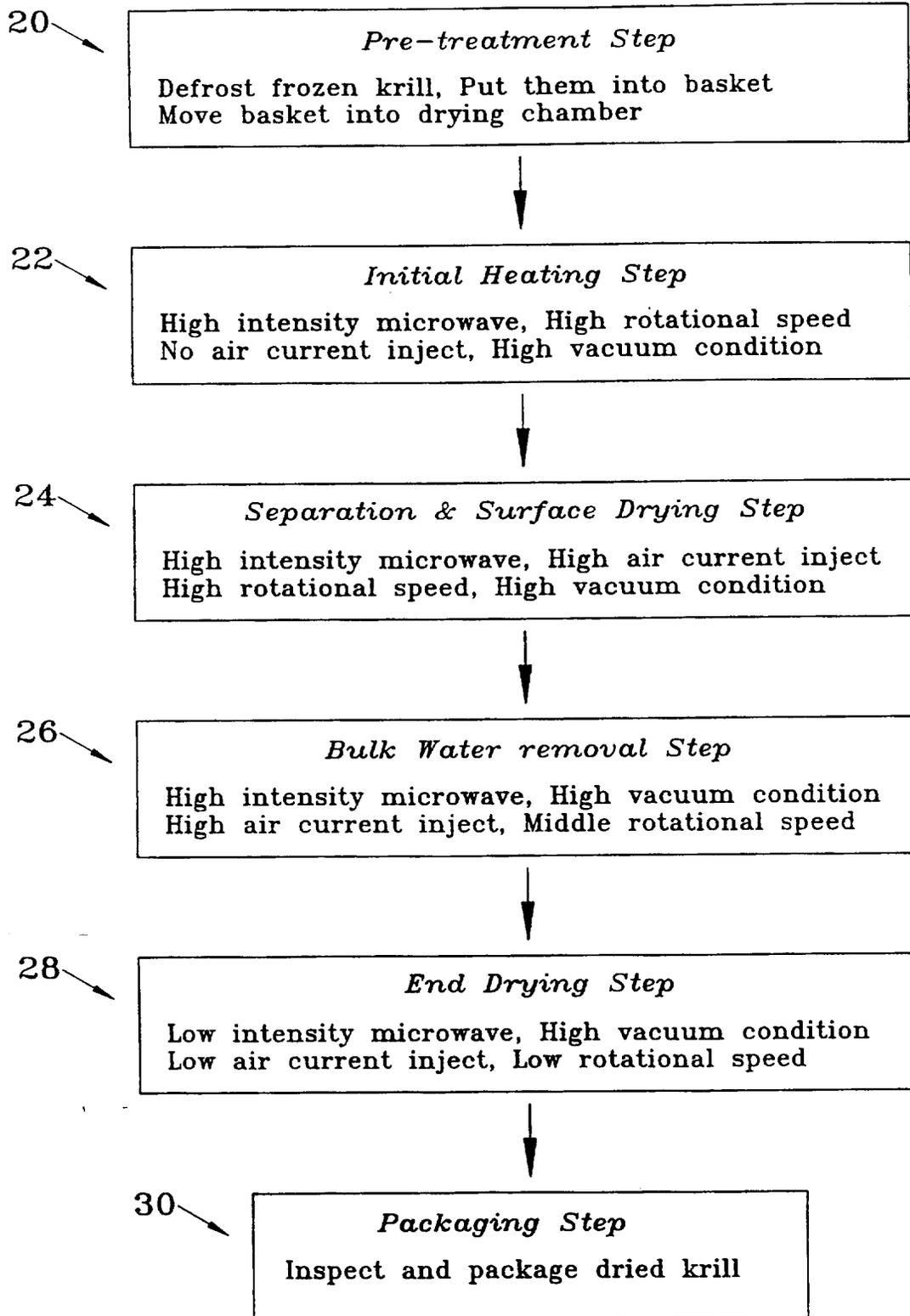


Figure 1

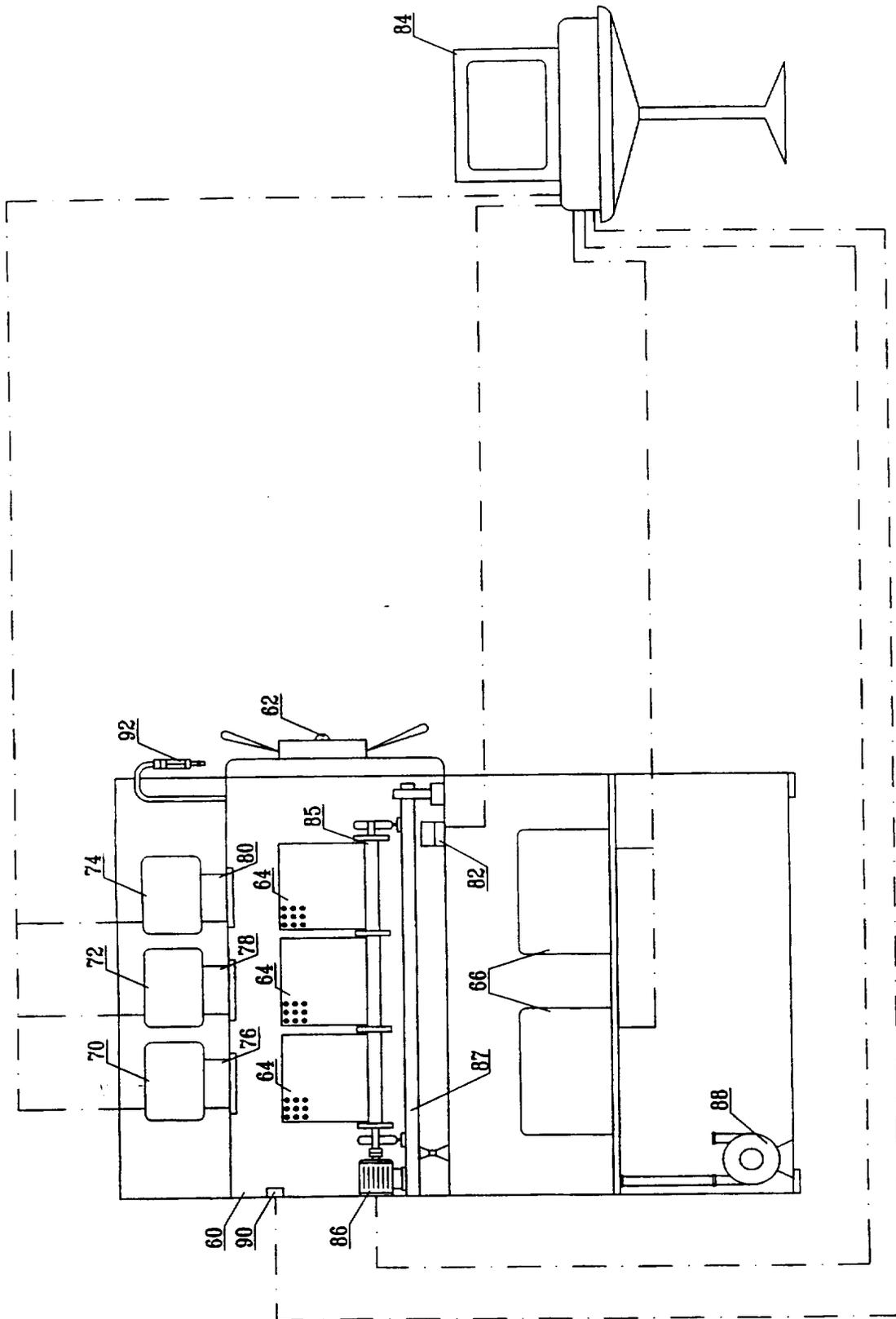


Figure 2

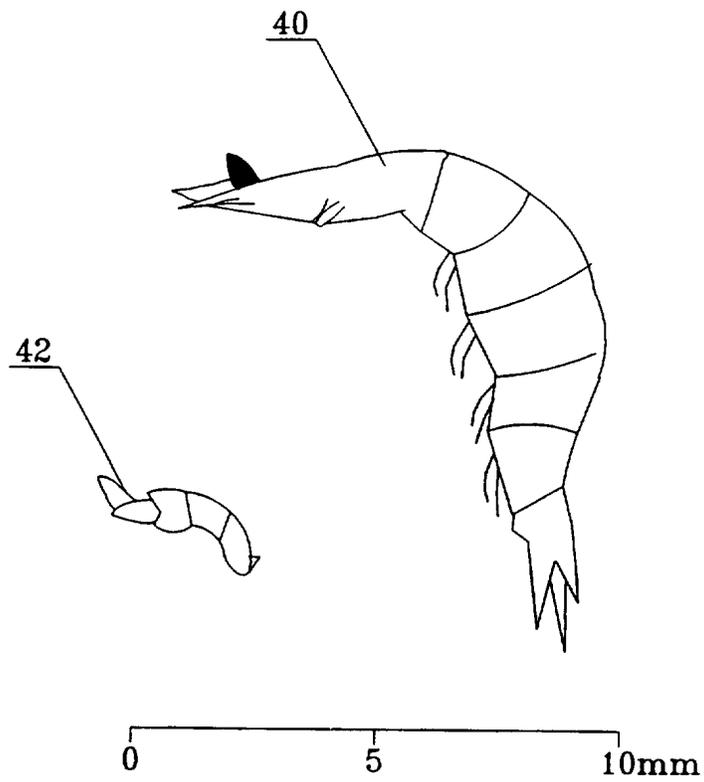


Figure 3

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/CA 97/00238

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**  
IPC 6 A23B4/03

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
IPC 6 A23B

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	GB 1 112 438 A (D. J. GODSON) 8 May 1968  see claims 1-8; example 2 ---	1,2,4,5, 8,9
A	US 5 467 694 A (MEIJI SEIKA) 21 November 1995 see column 1, line 13 - line 16; figures see column 2, line 11 - line 16 ---	1
A	CA 2 118 159 A (PRAWNTO SHRIMP MACHINE) 7 December 1995 see the whole document ---	1
A	PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 11, no. 63 (C-406), 26 February 1987 & JP 61 224966 A (AKABOSHI RYOICHI ET AL.), 6 October 1986, see abstract ---	1
-/--		

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- \*T\* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- \*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- \*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- \*&\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search  <b>12 August 1997</b>	Date of mailing of the international search report  <b>10.09.97</b>
Name and mailing address of the ISA European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Authorized officer  <b>Guyon, R</b>

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/CA 97/00238

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 13, no. 211 (C-597), 17 May 1989 & JP 01 030562 A (TAGUCHI YUKITOSHI), 1 February 1989, see abstract ---	1
A	GB 1 025 959 A (UNILEVER) 14 April 1966 see claims 1-4,9 -----	1

1

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No <b>PCT/CA 97/00238</b>
--

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
GB 1112438 A		NONE	
US 5467694 A	21-11-95	JP 7274922 A GB 2288718 A,B	24-10-95 01-11-95
CA 2118159 A	07-12-95	NONE	
GB 1025959 A		NONE	



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : A23K 1/10, 1/16, 1/18, A23N 17/00, C12N 9/00, A23J 1/04</p>	<p>A1</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 98/34498</b>  (43) International Publication Date: 13 August 1998 (13.08.98)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/CA98/00082 (22) International Filing Date: 9 February 1998 (09.02.98)  (30) Priority Data: 2,197,137 7 February 1997 (07.02.97) CA  (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): BIOZYME SYSTEMS INC. [CA/CA]; 4160 Marine Drive, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7V 1A7 (CA).  (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): SAXBY, David, J. [CA/CA]; 4727 South Piccadily, West Vancouver, British Columbia V6Z 2R1 (CA). SPENCE, John, A. [CA/CA]; 2025 Gisby Street, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7V 4N2 (CA). SAXBY, Gregor [CA/CA]; 4727 South Piccadily, West Vancouver, British Columbia V6Z 2R1 (CA). ALOISE, Pedro [CA/CA]; 202-1725 Osoyoos Crescent, Vancouver, British Columbia V6T 1X7 (CA).  (74) Agent: UREN, John, Russell; #202-1590 Bellevue Avenue, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7V 1A7 (CA).</p>	<p>(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, GW, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p><b>Published</b> <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>	

(54) Title: METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR PROCESSING KRILL HYDROLYSATES

(57) Abstract

Method and apparatus used in producing a feed product or premix and the products made by the method. A predetermined quantity of krill hydrolysate is added to a predetermined quantity of dry carrier with or without a predetermined quantity of liquid marine protein. The mixture is subject to evaporation and drying steps in which relatively heavier particles are separated from relatively lighter particles. The mixture may be blended, ground and subject to chemical reaction in a balance tank prior to entering a dryer. The dryer utilises a warm air source, a tower and a cyclone to dry the mixture following its entry into the dryer. Temperature sensitive enzymes or other bioactive products may be added to the product produced from the dryer. A method for obtaining enzymes from a fresh krill extract or an autolysed krill preparation and the product are also disclosed. A method for separating the bound protein and pigments from crustacean waste using krill enzymes and a product produced by the method are also described.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

<b>AL</b>	Albania	<b>ES</b>	Spain	<b>LS</b>	Lesotho	<b>SI</b>	Slovenia
<b>AM</b>	Armenia	<b>FI</b>	Finland	<b>LT</b>	Lithuania	<b>SK</b>	Slovakia
<b>AT</b>	Austria	<b>FR</b>	France	<b>LU</b>	Luxembourg	<b>SN</b>	Senegal
<b>AU</b>	Australia	<b>GA</b>	Gabon	<b>LV</b>	Latvia	<b>SZ</b>	Swaziland
<b>AZ</b>	Azerbaijan	<b>GB</b>	United Kingdom	<b>MC</b>	Monaco	<b>TD</b>	Chad
<b>BA</b>	Bosnia and Herzegovina	<b>GE</b>	Georgia	<b>MD</b>	Republic of Moldova	<b>TG</b>	Togo
<b>BB</b>	Barbados	<b>GH</b>	Ghana	<b>MG</b>	Madagascar	<b>TJ</b>	Tajikistan
<b>BE</b>	Belgium	<b>GN</b>	Guinea	<b>MK</b>	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	<b>TM</b>	Turkmenistan
<b>BF</b>	Burkina Faso	<b>GR</b>	Greece	<b>ML</b>	Mali	<b>TR</b>	Turkey
<b>BG</b>	Bulgaria	<b>HU</b>	Hungary	<b>MN</b>	Mongolia	<b>TT</b>	Trinidad and Tobago
<b>BJ</b>	Benin	<b>IE</b>	Ireland	<b>MR</b>	Mauritania	<b>UA</b>	Ukraine
<b>BR</b>	Brazil	<b>IL</b>	Israel	<b>MW</b>	Malawi	<b>UG</b>	Uganda
<b>BY</b>	Belarus	<b>IS</b>	Iceland	<b>MX</b>	Mexico	<b>US</b>	United States of America
<b>CA</b>	Canada	<b>IT</b>	Italy	<b>NE</b>	Niger	<b>UZ</b>	Uzbekistan
<b>CF</b>	Central African Republic	<b>JP</b>	Japan	<b>NL</b>	Netherlands	<b>VN</b>	Viet Nam
<b>CG</b>	Congo	<b>KE</b>	Kenya	<b>NO</b>	Norway	<b>YU</b>	Yugoslavia
<b>CH</b>	Switzerland	<b>KG</b>	Kyrgyzstan	<b>NZ</b>	New Zealand	<b>ZW</b>	Zimbabwe
<b>CI</b>	Côte d'Ivoire	<b>KP</b>	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	<b>PL</b>	Poland		
<b>CM</b>	Cameroon	<b>KR</b>	Republic of Korea	<b>PT</b>	Portugal		
<b>CN</b>	China	<b>KZ</b>	Kazakstan	<b>RO</b>	Romania		
<b>CU</b>	Cuba	<b>LC</b>	Saint Lucia	<b>RU</b>	Russian Federation		
<b>CZ</b>	Czech Republic	<b>LI</b>	Liechtenstein	<b>SD</b>	Sudan		
<b>DE</b>	Germany	<b>LK</b>	Sri Lanka	<b>SE</b>	Sweden		
<b>DK</b>	Denmark	<b>LR</b>	Liberia	<b>SG</b>	Singapore		
<b>EE</b>	Estonia						

5

10

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

15

METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR PROCESSING KRILL HYDROLYSATES

INTRODUCTION

20

This invention relates to a method and apparatus used in producing a feed product or premix and the product made by the method and, more particularly, to a process using co-drying to dry a mixture of krill hydrolysate and dry carrier or a mixture of krill hydrolysate, fish

25

hydrolysate and dry carrier. The invention further relates to recovering enzymes from krill and, more particularly, to recovering enzymes from both freshly harvested and hydrolyzed krill. The invention further relates to

30

utilising krill enzymes for removing protein from marine and biological wastes and, more particularly, for removing

- 2 -

protein, chitin and other constituents from crustacean and other marine wastes.

#### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

5

With the advent of increasing activity in aquaculture or fish farming in the early to mid-1980s, research has been ongoing into increasing productivity or growth rate and reducing the mortality rate of fish raised in aquaculture conditions since survival of such fish is important. One such factor relates to enhancing the nutritional value and palatability of feed used in raising such fish. In addition to the nutritional value, it is desirable to reduce the cost of feed to such fish since, typically, the feed totals approximately 40 to 50% of the cost of raising the fish. Such feed should be a high quality feed to meet the objectives of having high nutritional value to maximize growth and to reduce fish mortality.

20

The requirement for feed products in aquaculture is projected to grow substantially and, as a result, there is and will be pressure to obtain the necessary ingredients for fish food. The possibility of using zooplankton and, in particular, euphausiids, as a fish feed, appetizer or food product has been investigated and has been found to be possible and desirable, particularly as a feed product.

In addition, blends of krill hydrolysates and fish hydrolysates or any one of these with a dry carrier, can

30

- 3 -

provide alternatives to fish meals in aquaculture and other animal feed diets. Euphausiids are a natural feed harvested directly from coastal waters and have a high nutritional value but, previously, the cost of harvesting and processing such zooplankton for a feed product has been prohibitively expensive.

As well, the questions of the availability of the biomass of such zooplankton and its harvesting, handling, storage and processing are parameters that must be investigated in order to determine whether the product would be appropriate as a feed product.

Through papers written by Fulton and other authors, the use of zooplankton as a food or feed product has been contemplated for some time. In particular, antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) for human consumption have been investigated, although relatively little work has been investigated related to aquaculture. The use of Euphausia pacifica in the coastal waters of British Columbia, Canada has been considered in relation to its use in aquaculture and other animal feeds.

It appears, from those investigations, that the necessary biomass is available in coastal waters. Previously, euphausiids have been used as a pet food ingredient and some aquaculture operators have used euphausiids as a feed product. The euphausiids were used for such purposes in a frozen form after being harvested and

- 4 -

in some cases, the euphausiids were freeze dried following harvesting. This is an expensive procedure.

5 In processing feed products, it has typically been the case that the ingredients used in such feed products are heated to a high temperature around 100°C when the product is processed and dried. By heating the product to such a high temperature, it is believed that the enzymes and other proteins in the product are denatured. If, however, it is  
10 intended to utilize the product for early stage or juvenile aquaculture, which young fish have relatively undeveloped digestive systems, it is desirable that in some application, the euphausiid products maintain a certain proportion of enzymes which will assist the digestive process in juvenile  
15 and other life stages. If the theory that enzymes are advantageous in nutrition is correct, such destruction of the enzymes during the aforementioned drying process is disadvantageous.

20 It is also desirable to have a natural product, where the proteins are not denatured, available for early stage juvenile or larvae feed. In some previous products, exogenous enzymes have been added to the zooplankton mix. However, the addition of such enzymes is difficult to  
25 control and can result in a complete hydrolysis of the proteins to amino acids. The presence of free amino acids in the feed needs to be controlled since they can create an inferior product of substantially reduced value as a feed product.

30

- 5 -

It has been shown, surprisingly, that the degree of enzyme activity which results in determining the digestibility of a product, reaches a relatively constant value after a certain period of time in a natural product.

5 Recent investigations conducted by the applicant have confirmed this characteristic for Euphausia pacifica. This characteristic was first discovered in relation to Euphausia  
superba by Kubota and Sakai in a report entitled "Autolysis of Antarctic Krill Protein and Its Inactivation by Combined  
10 Effects of Temperature and pH", Transactions of the Tokyo University of Fisheries, number 2, page 53-63, March 1978. However, the antarctic krill study done by Messrs. Kubota and Sakai had the objective of limiting enzyme activity which was deleterious to obtaining a food as opposed to a  
15 feed product. Messrs. Kubota and Sakai wished to inhibit the enzymatic activity by certain processing techniques which they considered desirable when the product was intended as a food product.

20 An appropriate degree of hydrolysis is obtained during the digestion of the euphausiids. The approximate degree of hydrolysis will vary depending on the final application and it can be monitored by measuring the apparent viscosity in the final product. Further processing  
25 may then take place in order to make a useful product for commercial feed. Such processes may include adding acid to obtain an acid stabilized product concentrating fractionating or drying the product. A variety of drying techniques such as freeze drying, spray drying, or vacuum  
30 and air drying. Spray drying, as well as some other drying

- 6 -

processes, however, are done at temperatures that will permanently inactivate the enzymes in the euphausiids which, as earlier mentioned, may be undesirable for aquaculture purposes although it is acceptable for purposes where the product is intended to be used as a carotenoid biopigment for coloring purposes in both feed and food products or as a source of protein, fatty acids, minerals or other nutrients.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

10

According to one aspect of the invention, there is provided a method of producing a feed product comprising the steps of adding a predetermined quantity of krill hydrolysate to a quantity of dry carrier to produce a mixture and co-drying said mixture to obtain an end product. The dry carrier may conveniently be a plant protein, dry krill, fish meal, byproduct meal or other dry ingredient suitable for inclusion in a diet.

20

According to a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a product produced by adding a predetermined quantity of krill hydrolysate to a quantity of liquid marine protein and a quantity of dry carrier to produce a mixture and co-drying said mixture.

25

According to a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a co-drying apparatus for drying a mixture of krill hydrolysate with or without an evaporator and liquid marine product and a dry carrier comprising a dryer

- 7 -

for concentrating, mixing, agitating, heating and separating particles of said mixture.

According to still a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate comprising the steps of subjecting said hydrolysate to decanting and then to centrifugation to obtain a clarified liquid and further subjecting said clarified liquid to ultrafiltration using a membrane with a capacity to retain said enzymes having a molecular weight greater than 10,000 daltons and the product produced by the method.

According to still a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill comprising the steps of squeezing said krill to obtain an aqueous extract and subjecting said aqueous extract to ultrafiltration with a membrane adapted to retain enzymes having molecular weights above 10,000 daltons and the product produced by the method.

According to still yet a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a method for removal of protein from non-stabilized or fresh crustacean shell wastes comprising grinding said crustacean wastes and water, transferring said product to a digester, adding a predetermined quantity of krill enzymes to said digester, subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined time period at a predetermined temperature, dewatering said digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively

- 8 -

enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion of shell material relatively high in chitin and low in protein.

5           According to still yet a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a method for removal of protein from acid stabilized shell wastes comprising grinding said crustacean wastes, transferring said small particulate size shell wastes to a digester, adding a predeteminad quantity  
10 of krill enzymes to said digester, subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined time period at a predetermined temperature, dewatering said digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion  
15 of shell material relatively high in chitin and low in protein.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE SEVERAL VIEWS OF THE DRAWINGS

20           Specific embodiments of the invention will now be described, by way of example only, with the use of drawings in which:

          Figure 1A is a diagrammatic isometric view of a  
25 fishing vessel with an attached net which utilizes the euphausiid harvesting technique according to the invention;

          Figure 1B is a diagrammatic front view of a net in  
an alternative harvesting technique according to the  
30 invention;

- 9 -

Figure 2A is a diagrammatic side view of a cage which is used to maintain the cod end of the fishing net illustrated in Figure 1 in an open position and which is further used to transport the harvested euphausiids to the harvesting vessel;

Figures 2B and 2C are side and rear views, respectively, of the dewatering trough used to remove water from the harvested euphausiids;

Figure 3 is a diagrammatic process chart illustrating the processing of the euphausiids subsequent to the dewatering steps illustrated in Figure 2 and prior to the drying step;

Figures 4A and 4B are end and side sectional views of the heat exchanger used to raise the temperature of the harvested euphausiids prior to the digester process;

Figure 5 is a diagrammatic side sectional view of the digester used to create the desired enzyme activity within the euphausiids;

Figure 6 is a diagrammatic side sectional view of a ball drier used to dry the euphausiids following removal of the euphausiids from the surge tank located downstream from the digester;

Figure 7 is a flow chart illustrating the process of co-drying the product according to the invention;

- 10 -

Figure 8 is a diagrammatic view of the dehydrator used in the co-drying process according to the invention;

Figure 9 is a diagrammatic view of the codrying process according to a further aspect of the present invention;

Figure 10 is a diagrammatic flow chart illustrating the enzyme extraction process utilising hydrolysed krill;

Figure 11 is a diagrammatic flow chart illustrating the enzyme extraction process utilising fresh krill; and

Figure 12 is a diagrammatic flow chart illustrating the removal of protein and other constituents from crustacean wastes using krill enzymes according to a further aspect of the present invention.

#### DESCRIPTION OF SPECIFIC EMBODIMENT

Referring now to the drawings, a towing vessel 10 is illustrated in Figure 1. A plurality of towing ropes 11, 12, 13 are connected to the towing vessel 10 in order to tow a barge 14 and a net 20. A plurality of ropes 21 (only one of which is shown) are connected to the net 20 and extend downwardly from the barge 14. Weights 22 are connected to the bottom of the open forward facing portion of the net 20 in order to maintain the net 20 at a desired and

- 11 -

predetermined depth where the concentration of zooplankton is satisfactory.

5 The cod or rearward end 23 of the net 20 is maintained in an open condition by the use of a cage generally illustrated at 24 in Figure 2. Cage 24 is of cylindrical configuration and is positioned within the cod end of net 20. It is made from aluminum and is preferably corrosion resistant. A fitting 30 is welded to the  
10 downstream end of the cage 24 and one end of a swivel connection 31 is joined to the fitting 30 to prevent fouling the net in the event components become unstable under adverse harvesting conditions. A hose 32 is connected to the other end of the connection 31.

15

Referring again to Figure 1, hose 32 extends upwardly from the cod end of the net 20 to the barge 14. A pump of a variety of configurations but, conveniently, a diaphragm sump pump 33, is located at the other end of the  
20 hose 32 on barge 14. A dewatering trough is generally shown at 34 and is illustrated in Figures 2B and 2C. Dewatering trough 34 has a lengthwise generally rectangular configuration and is also located on barge 14. Dewatering trough conveniently takes the configuration of a "lazy L".  
25 A set of screens 40 positioned at obtuse angles are utilised to allow water to drain from the pumped euphausiids and exit the trough 34 through drain pipes 41 while the euphausiids accumulate within the dewatering trough 34.

- 12 -

A blast freezer 42 was also located on the barge 14 to stabilize the harvested euphausiids. The blast freezer 42 subjects the euphausiids to a temperature of approximately +9° to -17°C and is used to freeze the dewatered euphausiids and stabilize the product for further processing. The euphausiids accumulate within the dewatering trough 34 and which are periodically removed from the trough 34 from time to time for freezing. Thereafter, the frozen euphausiids are transported to a processing location and processed as described hereafter. Alternatively, the euphausiids may conveniently be processed aboard a vessel.

In prototype demonstrations, the net 20 utilised for the harvesting operation was a specially designed 13 ft. by 21 ft. plankton net suspended from a 46 ft. aluminum barge. The pumping action was by a three inch diaphragm pump located on the barge 14 and the freezing action occurred within a minus seventeen (-17°C) degree centigrade blast freezer 42.

As earlier described, the frozen euphausiids are transported to a processing location in order to transform the euphausiids into the desired feed product. Reference is now made to the flow chart of Figure 3.

A pump 43 is connected to a hopper 44 which receives the euphausiids which are now in a thawed condition. Pump 43 is connected to a heat exchanger generally illustrated at 50 and diagrammatically illustrated

- 13 -

in Figure 3. The heat exchanger 50 is intended to raise the temperature of the euphausiids to a temperature of approximately 40°C to 60°C which will more closely approximate the temperature maintained in the digester which is generally lower than 70°C and which digester is generally illustrated at 51. Digester 51 is located downstream of the heat exchanger 50 in the process illustrated in Figure 3.

Although several different types of heat exchangers may be used, heat exchanger 50 conveniently comprises a plurality of pipes 52 (Figure 4A) in which the euphausiids are conveyed through the heat exchanger. Heated water enters the inlet 54 of the heat exchanger 50 and is circulated through the heat exchanger 50 generally following the flow path seen in Figure 4B which utilizes a plurality of baffles 53. The heated water exits the heat exchanger at outlet 61. Following the increase of temperature created in the euphausiids by the heat exchanger 50, the euphausiids pass to the digester 51.

20

Digester 51 is seen in greater detail in Figure 5. It comprises a product inlet 61 and a product outlet 62. A water inlet 63 and a water outlet 64 are provided. A water jacket 70 through which the heated water circulates surrounds the cylindrical cavity area 71 of the digester 51 which contains the euphausiids. A plurality of stirring discs 72 are located vertically within the cavity area 71 of the digester 51 and are used to stir the euphausiids when they are positioned within the digester 51. A valve 73 is used to close the product outlet 62 so as to maintain the

30

- 14 -

euphausiids within the digester 51 until the proper temperature and time for the desired enzyme action within the euphausiids has taken place. The time period has conveniently extended between thirty (30) minutes and two  
5 (2) hours.

It is thought that a degree of hydrolysis will enhance digestibility of the feed product particularly for early stage larvae or juveniles but also for virtually all  
10 fish. This degree of hydrolysis is determined by the applications and will be monitored by measuring the apparent viscosity in the final product. In utilising the digester 51 illustrated in Figure 5, a batch process is currently being used with a volume of euphausiids of 250 lb./hr being  
15 used.

The valve 62 is then opened and the quantity of euphausiids within the digester 51 pass through the valve 62 and are transported through valve 74 to the surge tank or  
20 heated batch storage vessel 80 where they await treatment in the dryer, conveniently a ball dryer generally illustrated at 81 (Figure 6) where relatively low and controlled temperatures can be applied to the euphausiids such that any enzymes existing within the euphausiids are not inactivated  
25 as would otherwise be the case in a normal drying process.

The euphausiids pass from the storage vessel 80 to the ball dryer 81 through product inlet 83 and, thence, about the periphery of the dryer 81 initially through the  
30 application zones 91 where the balls initially contact the

- 15 -

euphausiids and begin the drying process. The ball dryer 81 performs a "soft" drying process which reduces damage to the euphausiids because of its gentle action by way of controlled temperature. The ball drying process utilises a continuous feed into the ball dryer 81 and a product flow of 15 lb./hr. is available.

As the balls and euphausiids move downwardly through the drying zones 92, they meet a counter-current flow of controlled-temperature drying air at less than 50°C which air enters the ball dryer 81 through air inlet 82. Air flow, temperature and dwell time are precisely controlled and monitored within this zone. All of these are variable factors which depend upon whether the product is wet or dried and what period of time the product is intended to stay in the dryer 81.

In the separation zone 93 at the bottom of the dryer 81, the ball and euphausiids meet a co-current flow of controlled temperature air for final drying and separation. The dried euphausiids leave the ball dryer 81 through the product outlet 84 and pass to the packaging step. The drying balls are elevated by rotating helix 94 and recycled to the application zone 91 and the process continues.

One of many commercial and known dryers may be used for the air drying of the euphausiids.

It is contemplated that although the processing of the euphausiids has been described as taking place at a land

- 16 -

location, such processing steps may take place at the  
harvesting location on board either the harvesting vessel or  
another vessel conveniently located nearby. This results in  
advantages in that the euphausiids need not be frozen  
5 following harvesting and need not be transported to a land  
based processing plant thereby resulting in considerable  
cost savings and quality improvement. In addition, the  
euphausiids may be introduced directly to a low temperature  
dryer on board a vessel following harvesting or to an  
10 evaporator. The dried or concentrated euphausiids, after  
being subjected to the digester and/or the drying processes,  
may then be stored on the vessel until a substantial  
quantity of krill hydrolysate concentrate has been obtained  
at which time they may be transferred to another vessel for  
15 transport to the processing vessel itself which, when full,  
will transport the euphausiids to the shore.

Likewise and while it is desirable for the  
digester and drying steps to take place concurrently and  
20 sequentially in the event the euphausiids are intended to be  
used as a feed product for juvenile and early stage larvae.

A further harvesting technique is contemplated in  
Figure 1B. In this technique, weights 101 are connected to  
25 the mouth end of the net generally illustrated at 114 at the  
ends of the lower horizontal beam 103. Floats 100 are  
connected to the top horizontal beam 102 of the mouth end of  
the net 114. Depending on the size of the net 114, lines  
are connected on one end to attachment points 104, in the  
30 first instance or, alternatively, to points 110, 111, 112,

- 17 -

113 and, on the other end, to the towing vessel. The net  
114 is pulled through the water gathering the zooplankton  
which enter the net 114 through the mouth.

5           Many applications for the hydrolysed krill and  
hydrolysed krill concentrate products are also contemplated  
because of the desirable characteristics of the of the krill  
hydrolysate in which the proteins and nutritional value is  
retained and improved through the partial digestions of the  
10 proteins. For example, fish under stress, which is common  
with cultivated species raised with aquacultural techniques,  
are reluctant to eat and, accordingly, therapeutic drug  
delivery and special diets used for such marine species are  
difficult to use because the fish do not find such products  
15 palatable. The hydrolysed krill products and other  
zooplankton products according to the invention may be used  
with such special diets and drug delivery by creating an  
enhanced flavour and enhanced assimilation when the  
medicinal product such as a pellet is coated or mixed with  
20 the hydrolysed zooplankton product in a liquid or paste  
form. Likewise, while other such products may include  
specially added amino acids and other compounds to enhance  
the flavour of the product, the hydrolysed krill according  
to the present invention preserves, enhances and optimises  
25 the level of certain free amino acids and other flavourants  
thereby allowing flavour enhancement with a natural product  
and without the addition of amino acids or other  
flavourants. Likewise, the krill hydrolysates retain the  
protein and nutrient quality including the original  
30 pigments, fatty acids, other nutrients and mineral elements.

- 18 -

The activity of the enzymes, which are contained in the krill, is also retained in the hydrolysed natural product according to the invention. Such enzymes allow for enhanced digestion of feed by certain cultivated marine species by increasing the availability of peptides and free amino acids without creating additional harmful stress on such species.

Yet a further application contemplated by the present invention is the use of hydrolysed krill that is blended and codried in association with plant or vegetable protein and other dry carriers such as soymeal, corn gluten meal and canola meal in fish feed mixtures. The range of co-drying carriers used in the blending process include a wide range of dry animal or vegetable protein and feed ingredients including soy conola and other soil seed meals, coarse ground cereal gains and flours, oil seed concentrates and isolates, corn and cereal glutes, pea and pulse meals, oil seed and cereal processing by products and brans, dried yeasts, algae and other single cell organisms, milk powders, blood meal and other body fluid products, animal and poultry by products, fish and shellfish meals, and vitaminised mineral premixes. Such applications would increase the palatability, amino acid balance and other nutrient levels in the dry blended meal so that it can be used to replace fish meal in aquaculture feeds and other applications. Further enzymes in the hydrolysed krill products according to the invention are preserved following the hydrolysis and can be allowed to act on the plant proteins. The enhanced digestibility of a product combination of plant protein and hydrolysed krill is also contemplated to improve the

- 19 -

efficiency of the feed and decrease the fecal load in the environment by fish fed with diets containing such combination. This can be an important feature with the rearing of cultivated marine and freshwater species.

5 Likewise, the palatability of such non-fish meal proteins, in particular, plant proteins such as canola, corn gluten or soy meal is enhanced.

Experiments conducted to date utilize the enzymes  
10 in krill to carry out a limited hydrolysis of soy, canola and other plant proteins. For example, one part of dry canola or soy meal which has added ten percent (10%) wheat bran is blended with five (5) parts of hydrolysed krill. The hydrolysate is pumped from the digester to the feed  
15 stock hopper and the dry blend is added. The mixture is brought to the desired temperature while agitated in the digester for approximately one (1) hour. Measurements of phytic acid and the levels of the amino acids and ammonia are then taken. For example, 250 lbs. of krill is  
20 hydrolysed by bringing the krill to approximately 45° Celsius. The temperature is held for one (1) hour and is then blended with 5 lbs. of wheat bran with 45 lbs. of canola concentrate. The use of wheat bran is necessary to provide phytase, an enzyme which is absent in canola meal  
25 and krill. The phytic acid is dephosphorylated by phytase from the wheat bran. The phytic acid is acted on by the phytase enzyme. It is noted that the blend may be retained in the digester for an extended period, up to a period of four (4) hours or even longer.

30

- 20 -

In yet a further embodiment of the invention, it is contemplated that the wet krill hydrolysate product is evaporated and then mixed with and co-dried with other wet and dry products. Various predetermined ratios of wet krill hydrolysate and liquid marine products may be concentrated and then mixed with dry carrier conveniently in the form of dried krill products, dried vegetable protein and/or dried fish product, used in combination or singly. The resulting moist blend is subject to concentration, processing and co-drying in a dehydrator such as a dryer. A dehydrator system with the following characteristics has been found to work well, namely a type of flash and fluidized drier or combination thereof with an agitator and vertical or tangential flow of heated air. Although the temperature of the inflowing air may be high at impact (the impact temperature), the temperature of the product is not significantly increased in the dryer. This is an important element in the drying system. Following hot air impact and agitation, the water evaporates rapidly and the duration of the drying process is greatly reduced as set out in greater detail hereafter.

Co-drying the mixture of the krill hydrolysate, liquid marine product and the dry carrier product mixture has been found to be relatively economical at relatively low temperatures. Under such conditions, the krill proteins, pigments and other constituents are substantially preserved. Thus produced, the product has unique benefits for dietary uses in aquaculture and animal feeds. These blended and agglomerated dry products are uniquely different

- 21 -

from other product mixes. The unique sequences and control of the process provides intimate agglomeration and adsorption of the krill hydrolysate with the dry carrier. It also preserves the unique nutrient quality of the krill hydrolysate in the blend without significant losses due to excess heat or oxidation during the drying process. Further, cost savings and economic advantages in the manufacture of the product are improved.

10                    Depending on the moisture content of the dry carrier, liquid marine protein, and the krill hydrolysate, and the proportion of each in the mixture to be co-dried, the removal of moisture can be accomplished by a drying process at relatively low temperatures thereby to preserve the temperature and oxidation sensitive constituents including the krill constituents and the krill pigments. Particles of the dry carrier are coated with, adsorbed and absorbed with the wet hydrolysate thereby facilitating the drying process by exposing a greater surface area of wet hydrolysate and/or liquid fish product for heated air to act upon. The mixture may then be fractured into smaller particles which further increases the available surface area to expedite the drying process. At the outset, the mixture may be placed in a reactor cell balance tank to permit chemical interactions between components of the mixture, such reactions including enzymatic activity of a wide range of enzymes including proteolytic, lipolytic and carbohydrate splitting enzyme prior to drying. A well-mixed, homogeneous mixture is prepared to reduce and to eliminate high moisture pockets. Water is then removed from this mixture by an

- 22 -

evaporator and a subsequent dehydrator such as is described above and the endproduct is a dried krill premix or feedstuff blended with the aforementioned carrier.

5 Temperature sensitive enzymes, flavorants or other bioactive products may be added to the cooled endproduct after the drying step. Alternatively, the krill hydrolysate may be combined with wet fish products and other carriers such as dry fish meal, corn meal, canola meal, oil seed meal, or other vegetable meals, used in combination or taken singly.

10

Referring now to the drawings, Figure 7 illustrates the steps of the co-drying process in its entirety according to the present invention. A predetermined quantity of wet krill hydrolysate product 210 is mixed with a predetermined quantity of liquid marine protein 212 and a predetermined amount of dry carrier 211, conveniently dried krill product, dried fish product and/or dried vegetable protein used in combination or taken singly. The resulting mixture is placed in a mixing blender 215, where the various ratios of hydrolysate, marine protein and dry carrier are thoroughly blended. The blending required will vary with the constitution of the mixture. The blended mixture is then ground within a grinder 217 where the mixture is reduced to particles of substantially uniform size. The ground mixture is then transferred to reactor cell balance tank 216 where the continuously stirred blended mixture is allowed to chemically react and/or undergo enzymatic action prior to the drying process. After the intended reaction has taken place in the tank 216, the mixture is conveyed to the dehydrator 220 for drying.

30

- 23 -

The dehydrator 220 is illustrated in greater detail in Figure 8 and with reference thereto, the mixture enters the agitator bowl 224 of the dehydrator 220 through inlet 219 where the mixture is agitated into smaller particles which is intended to prevent clumping of the mixture. A continuous feed of mixture into the dehydrator 220 is intended through inlet 219.

Directly heated air from the burner 221 or indirectly heated air is directed to the agitator bowl 224 of the dehydrator 220 by way of fans (not illustrated) where the air mixes with particles of the mixture in the bowl 224. The particles are carried up the drying tower 230 by the column of hot air. The classifier 231 sorts the particles at the top of tower 230. Drier mixture consists of lighter, individual particles which proceed along the column of hot air into a cyclone 232. The classifier 231 redirects larger and heavier masses of more damp mixture back to the agitator bowl 224 for further agitation and drying.

The particles are drawn downwards along a spiralling column of heated air in cyclone 232 and centrifugal action removes further moisture from the particles. At the bottom of the cyclone 232, the particles are isolated from the air column by airlock 233 and are sorted by a rotary screen 234. Smaller, lighter particles of dried product pass through the rotary screen 234 and exit the dehydrator 220 at outlet 240 for further processing. Larger, heavier particles of damp mixture are redirected to

- 24 -

the agitator bowl 224 from outlet 241 for further agitation and drying within several seconds.

5 With reference again to Figure 7, heated product 241 exiting the dehydrator 220 from outlet 240. The average transit time through the dryer is between 60 and 90 seconds and the end moisture content below 10% moisture may then be permitted to cool. Some of this dried product 245 may be further used in the co-drying process as a quantity of the  
10 dry carrier 211 so as to increase the fluid content of marine constituents. Temperature sensitive enzyme active products 242 or other bioactive products, which might be denatured by the drying process, may be introduced to the dried product 241 after the product has passed through the  
15 dehydrator 220 as illustrated. The dried product 241 then undergoes further mixing and blending at mixing step 250 to ensure the homogenous addition of the temperature sensitive enzyme active products 242. The final product 243 may then proceed to a packaging step such as a bagger 244 or to a  
20 storage bin 245 prior to further use in aquaculture or animal feeds.

Concentration and Co-Drying of Krill with Vegetable proteins Trials

25

The objectives were the concentration of liquid krill hydrolysate to 42%DM in a rising film plate evaporator. (Alfa Vap). The drying of a krill concentrate blend with soya meal and corn gluten meal in a flash dryer (drier with  
30 performance characteristics as defined), to determine the

- 25 -

maximum amount of krill concentrate that can be added to the dry vegetable protein meal.

Raw material hydrolysed krill with 18-20% DM including  
5 approximately 0.3% oil.

Evaporator. The hydrolysed krill was concentrated in an Alfa Vap evaporator from 18-20% DM to 42% DM. The 42% level was not obtained with any difficulty.  
10

#### Mixing

The mixing was done in 100 kg batches using a cylindrical container with a vertical shaft paddle. This was  
15 accomplished without unusual difficulties.

#### Drying

Drying and mixing was carried out in two steps: Step 1 was  
20 mixing the krill concentrate and carrier (vegetable and protein) and drying to about 90% DM. Step 2 was mixing the dried product from step 1 with more krill concentrate and drying a second time.

#### 25 Flash Drying

The mixtures were dried in a flash dryer. This was done by feeding the mixture into a chamber containing a fast rotating agitator. Through intake air ducts hot air was led  
30 through the chamber and agitator.

- 26 -

Impact Temperature was 165-175 deg. C.

Drying Temperature (set point) is 110 deg. C to 125 deg C.

5 Capacity

The flow to the dryer for all three test vegetable protein products was 600-700 kg/hr. This gave an evaporation rate of approximately 500 kg/hr. in the dryer.

10

Results

The temperature of the product is not increased in the dryer by any significant amount. The evaporation of the water on the product keeps the temperature low. The rapid transit of the product through the dryer also minimizes the temperature and time effects that can reduce the value of the product as a feed.

20 A third or fourth step is also contemplated and considered possible with this type of dryer.

Other driers besides those of ball dryer 81 (Figure 6) are contemplated. For example, dryers such as direct heated flash driers or fluidized bed driers that cause rapid drying of the particles within a few seconds are well known. With reference to Figure 9, a built in air scrubber generally illustrated at 500 is used for odour control. A burner or indirect heating system 501 heats the air to the required level with impact temperatures not

30

- 27 -

exceeding 450 deg. C before the air enters agitator 502. the product is augered tangentially into the agitator chamber 503 where most of the water in the product is evaporated. Agitator 502 rotates with a high tangential  
5 speed of the agitator blades concurrent with the tangential air flow. The motion of the agitator 502 causes mechanical fluidization of the particles and comminutes the particles, thus accelerating evaporation. The acceleration of the drying velocity reduces the adverse effect of heat or the  
10 heat burden on the product during the drying process.

In yet a further embodiment of the invention, it is contemplated that a process for obtaining enzymes from the Euphausia superba species of krill and other krill  
15 species is of interest. Euphausia superba ("E.s.") is a small crustacean from the Antarctic that contains numerous enzymes that are principally but not exclusively represented by proteases, amylases, chitinases, carboxymethyl cellulases, lipases, etc. This enzymatic cocktail as a whole or in a  
20 partial purified form can be used for a number of industrial applications such as aquaculture and other general feed manufacturing and the further process of marine and other proteins. The inclusion rate of enzymes in the feed would vary depending on the target species and the composition of  
25 the diet. For example, these krill enzyme cocktails can be added to aquaculture diets containing large quantities of vegetable proteins which would otherwise be difficult to process by the animals and which could also be part of specialty diets for larval stages of shrimp and starter  
30 diets for salmonids where higher survival rates are

- 28 -

required. Krill enzymes may also conveniently be used to produce protein hydrolysates from other proteins to incorporate into diets or to improve the functional properties of these diets. Other potential applications would include the production of flavors, protein and peptide extraction from marine by products, protein and pigment recovery from shrimp and crab shell offal, the production of free amino acids and other benefits relating to the actions of these krill enzymes on biological materials.

10

Using the processes previously disclosed, it was desired to obtain enzymes from the previously autolysed krill preparations.

15

With reference to Figures 9 and 10, ultrafiltration membrane 303 was used with the krill hydrolysate 301 and with fresh krill 310. Since most of the krill-derived enzymes have molecular weights above 20,000 daltons, experiments were conducted to determine the most appropriate molecular weight cut-off ultrafiltration membrane to attempt a concentration of the aqueous phase enzyme-rich E.s. and E.p. extracts. It was revealed during experiments that total protease activity begins to become apparent in the filtrates at the 50,000 molecular weight cut off and up. On the other hand, trypsin-like activity is present in filtrates at 30,000 molecular weight cut off. It is therefore desirable to use a 10,000 dalton cut off membrane for filtration purposes.

20

25

- 29 -

In order to handle larger volumes of krill hydrolysate and to concentrate the enzyme extracts, a tangential flow filtration ("TFF") cartridge 302 was used using a 10,000 dalton molecular weight cut-off. One such cartridge commercially available is a Millipore Preparative Scale Tangential Flow Filtration cartridge. Such cartridges are intended to handle volumes from 100 ml to 100 liters, although it is readily possible to scale up such techniques to handle larger volumes, if desired. Before subjecting the krill extracts to TFF, they were centrifuged at 4000-10000 x G for twenty(20) minutes in a Beckman centrifuge 300 to clarify from solids and eliminate part of the fat. Rather than centrifugation, this clarification step can be replaced by prefiltration 303 with a larger pore filter. After centrifugation, the aqueous phase 305 containing the enzymes of interest was recover and stored at 4 deg. C. The autolysed krill extracts were run through a one square foot TFF cartridge 302 using a Hoechst displacement pump 304. The initial extract volume was about two(2) liters and was brought down to approximately 250-300 ml after four(4) to five(5) hours of operation (below 20 psi of pressure). It was revealed that enzymatic activity recovery differed significantly between the two samples (i.e., autolysed and freshly squeezed extracts).

25

By measuring the trypsin-like activity ("TLA"), it was found that the recovery of krill enzymes from the fresh frozen krill 310 was relatively smaller than the recovery from hydrolysed krill 301. However, the total units recovered after ultrafiltration were higher for fresh frozen

30

- 30 -

extracts. Accordingly, TLA could be recovered from either freshly squeezed or autolysed krill preparations. Since there was little or no enzymatic activity associated with the filtrate, it is apparent the proteins of interest were not leaching out through the membrane filter.

The resultant enzyme cocktail obtained by the ultrafiltration technique from both the hydrolysed and fresh krill 301, 310, respectively, could then be coupled with freeze drying 313 which would reduce the amount of water associated with the enzymes significantly which would reduce transportation costs. Subsequent processing could then be performed on the enzyme cocktails to further increase the purity and quality of the enzymes present.

Yet a further aspect of the invention relates to a method for removal of protein from crustacean wastes using the aforementioned krill enzyme extracts. With reference to Figure 12, a quantity of crustacean wastes 400, 401 is ground to dried particulate size by grinders 402, 403, respectively, with a portion of water added to facilitate this grinding. Various of a plurality of grinders which will accomplish this include a piranha pump, a macerator or cerator, all of which are known. Acid stabilized shell waste 400 is then de-watered through a de-watering system 404, many of which are readily known to be available, such as the Vincent screw press, wine presses or centrifuges. Non acid stabilized shell waste 401 has no need to be de-watered prior to the addition of enzymes. Water is conveniently added to the de-watered acid stabilized shell

- 31 -

waste 410 to facilitate enzymatic reaction. The shell waste 410 is transferred to a digesting tank 411 where an amount of krill enzyme cocktail 412 is added. The enzyme cocktail can be in either a concentrated or non-concentrated form consistent with squeezed extractions from the whole animal as has been described. The squeezed fractions are in the range of 25-75% of the whole animal depending on the amount of enzyme desired and the need to keep the enzyme with the krill to facilitate autolysis. The shell enzyme mixture is subjected to digestion in the digester 411 for a time period in the range of one(1) to forty-eight(48) hrs at a temperature in the range of 0 to 70 Celsius with an optimum temperature being approximately 45 deg. Celsius. Following the digestive process, the mixture is subjected to water removal 413 as has been described. Two fractions will result, a protein rich enzymatically active portion 414 and a shell material portion 415 high in chitin and low in protein. The liquid high protein portion 414 is low temperature dried or co-dried as earlier described or acid stablized. The shell portion 415 can then be further processed by the addition of more enzyme cocktail to facilitate further protein removal in further steps or can be subjected to traditional deproteinization or demineralization techniques as illustrated generally at 420. The extent of de-mineralization necessary can be greatly reduced by the storing of the shell waste for long periods of time while stabilized with acids, preferably formic.

In experiments which have been conducted to date, 70kg of water was added to 210 kg of mechanically peeled

- 32 -

shrimp shell wastes. The slurry was subjected to grinding with a piranha pump to a suitable particle size. 60kg of this slurry was combined with 15 kg of Euphasia superba juice obtained by squeezing whole krill through a screw press 315 (Figure 11) to obtain 50% by weight of the animal in a liquid form. The shell juice mixture was subjected to digestion for six(6) hours at 45 deg. C. The mixture was dewatered by pressing through a Vincent screw press to obtain the protein rich enzymatically active portion and the shell ash portion 415, as described. The shell portion was approximately 7.5% by weight and the liquid portion made up the remainder. The liquid portion was acid stabilized with 3% by weight formic acid. The shell portion was washed and dried.

In a second trial conducted to establish the efficacy of using krill enzymes for the removal of protein from shrimp shell wastes and the benefit of reincorporating the superba squeezed solids, 26 kg of squeezed superba juice, obtained through the procedures described, was incubated with 10 kg water and 70 kg of ground shrimp shell for six(6) hours at 45 deg C. Samples were taken every hour and squeezed through a screw press. After six(6) hours, 14 kg of squeezed superba solids comprising the remainder of the whole animal after enzyme liquid removal were added into the mixture and hydrolyzed for an additional one and one-half (1.5) hours. The remaining slurry was squeezed and the separate fractions were frozen.

- 33 -

While specific embodiments of the invention have been described, such descriptions should be taken as illustrative of the invention only and not as limiting its scope as defined in accordance with the accompanying claims.

5

- 34 -

## WE CLAIM:

5                   1.           Method of producing a feed product comprising the steps of adding a predetermined quantity of krill hydrolysate to a quantity of liquid marine protein and a quantity of dry carrier to produce a mixture and co-drying said mixture to obtain an end product.

10                   2.           Method as in claim 1 wherein said mixture is mixed prior to co-drying said mixture.

15                   3.           Method as in claim 2 wherein said mixture is subjected to chemical and/or enzymatic reaction for a predetermined time period prior to co-drying said mixture.

                  4.           Method as in claim 3 wherein said mixture is co-dried in a dryer or other dehydrator.

20                   5.           Method as in claim 4 wherein said mixture is ground prior to being subject to said chemical reaction.

25                   6.           Method as in claim 5 wherein said mixture is cooled following drying of said mixture in said dryer.

                  7.           Method as in claim 6 wherein said dry carrier may be one or a combination of dry marine protein

- 35 -

meals, dried krill products, dried vegetable and dried fish product.

5           8.           Method as in claim 7 wherein said liquid marine protein may be liquid fish product.

10           9.           Method as in claim 8 wherein temperature sensitive enzyme active or other bioactive dry products are added or readded to said mixture following said drying of said mixture.

15           10.           Method as in claim 9 and further comprising mixing said temperature sensitive enzyme active products with said mixture.

          11.           Method as in claim 1 wherein said mixture is co-dried in a dryer or other dehydrator.

20           12.           Method as in claim 11 wherein said dryer includes an agitator to agitate said mixture entering said dryer.

25           13.           Method as in claim 12 wherein said dryer further includes a drying tower downstream from said agitator and a heat source to provide heat to said tower.

          14.           Method as in claim 13 and further comprising a classifier downstream of said tower for separating said mixture, said mixture comprising relatively

- 36 -

lighter and relatively heavier particles, said classifier separating said lighter from said heavier particles.

5           15.           Method as in claim 14 wherein said relatively heavier particles are returned to said agitator.

          16.           Method as in claim 14 and further comprising a cyclone downstream from said classifier.

10           17.           Method as in claim 16 wherein said cyclone removes further moisture from said relatively lighter particles.

15           18.           Method as in claim 17 wherein said relatively lighter particles are separated into relatively smaller and relatively larger particles.

          19.           Method as in claim 18 wherein said relatively larger particles are returned to said agitator.

20           20.           A feed product or additive produced by the method as in any one of claims 1 to 19.

25           21.           Co-drying apparatus for drying a mixture of krill hydrolysate, liquid marine product and a dry carrier comprising a dryer for agitating, heating and separating particles of said mixture.

- 37 -

22. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 21 and further comprising a mixer for blending said mixture prior to said mixture entering said dryer.

5 23. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 22 and further comprising a reactor cell for treating said mixture prior to said mixture entering said dryer.

10 24. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 23 and further comprising a grinder for grinding said mixture prior to said mixture entering said reactor cell.

15 25. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 24 wherein said dryer produces a product.

26. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 25 and further comprising a mixer for mixing said product following said product exiting said dryer.

20 27. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 21 wherein said dryer comprises a source of warm air, an agitator for agitating said mixture following entry of said mixture into said dryer, a tower to expose said mixture to said warm air, a first classifier to separate the relatively  
5 lighter particles of said mixture from the relatively heavier particles of said mixture, a cyclone for drying said relatively lighter particles separated from said relatively heavier particles, and a second classifier to separate relatively lighter particles and relatively heavier

- 38 -

particles constituting said relatively lighter particles in said cyclone.

5                   28.           Co-dryer as in claim 27 and further comprising a fan to move said warm air within said dryer.

10                   29.           Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate comprising the steps of subjecting said hydrolysate to centrifugation to obtain a clarified liquid and further subjecting said clarified liquid to ultrafiltration using a membrane with a capacity to retain said enzymes having a molecular weight greater than 10,000 daltons.

15                   30.           Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 29 and further comprising the step of storing said clarified liquid at a reduced temperature for a predetermined time period.

20                   31.           Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 30 wherein said ultrafiltration is achieved using a tangential flow filtration system.

25                   32.           Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 31 wherein said enzyme extract obtained from said ultrafiltration is freeze dried.

- 39 -

33. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 32 wherein said krill is *Euphausia superba*.

5 34. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 32 wherein said krill is *Euphausia pacifica*.

10 35. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill comprising the steps of squeezing said krill to obtain an aqueous extract and subjecting said aqueous extract to ultrafiltration with a membrane adapted to retain enzymes having molecular weights above 10,000 daltons.

15 36. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 35 wherein said ultrafiltration is achieved using a tangential flow filtration system allowing enzymes to retain which have molecular weights  
20 above 10,000 daltons.

37. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 36 and further including the step of centrifuging said aqueous extract prior to  
25 subjecting said extract to ultrafiltration.

38. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 37 and further comprising the step of storing said aqueous extract at a reduced  
0 temperature following said centrifuging.

- 40 -

39. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 38 wherein said reduced temperature is approximately 4 degrees Celsius.

5 40. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 39 and further comprising subjecting said enzyme extract obtained from said ultrafiltration to low temperature drying.

10 41. Product produced by the method as in any one of claims 29 to 39.

15 42. Method for removal of protein from non-stabilized crustacean shell wastes, comprising grinding said crustacean wastes and water to a relatively small particulate size, transferring said small particulate size product to a digester, adding a predetermined quantity of krill enzymes to said digester, subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined time period at a predetermined  
20 temperature, dewatering said digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion of shell material relatively high in chitin and low in protein.

25 43. Method for removal of protein from acid stabilized shell wastes comprising grinding said crustacean wastes to a described small particulate size, transferring desired size shell wastes to a digester, adding a predetemined quantity of krill enzymes to said digester,  
0 subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined

- 41 -

time period at a predetermined temperature, dewatering said digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion of shell ash relatively high in chitin and low in protein.

44. Method as in claim 42 and further comprising drying said liquid portion by means of low temperature drying to preserve the enzymatic activity.

45. Method as in claim 44 wherein said drying is by way of a flash drier.

46. Method as in claim 45 wherein said drying is by way of a fluidized bed drier.

47. Method as in claim 42 and further comprising adding krill enzyme material to said shell material portion.

48. Method as in claim 43 and further comprising adding krill enzyme material to said shell material portion.

49. Method as in claim 42 wherein said product is subject to digestion between approximately 0-70 degrees Celsius and for times between 30 minutes and several hours.

- 42 -

50. Method as in claim 43 wherein said product is subject to digestion between approximately 0-70 degrees Celsius.

5 51. Method of producing a concentrated krill hydrolysate comprising the steps of harvesting, digesting and evaporating the krill hydrolysate to provide a partial hydrolysis for a predetermined time and temperature so as to enhance the nutrient characteristics of said krill.

10 52. Method of producing a dry krill premix or feedstuff comprising the steps of producing a predetermined amount of concentrated krill hydrolysate, producing a predetermined amount of dry matter and mixing  
15 said concentrated krill hydrolysate and said dry carrier matter and co-drying said mixture.

20 54. Method as in claim 52 wherein the dry matter is selected from the group of vegetable and/or vegetable and/or animal protein meals and by products.

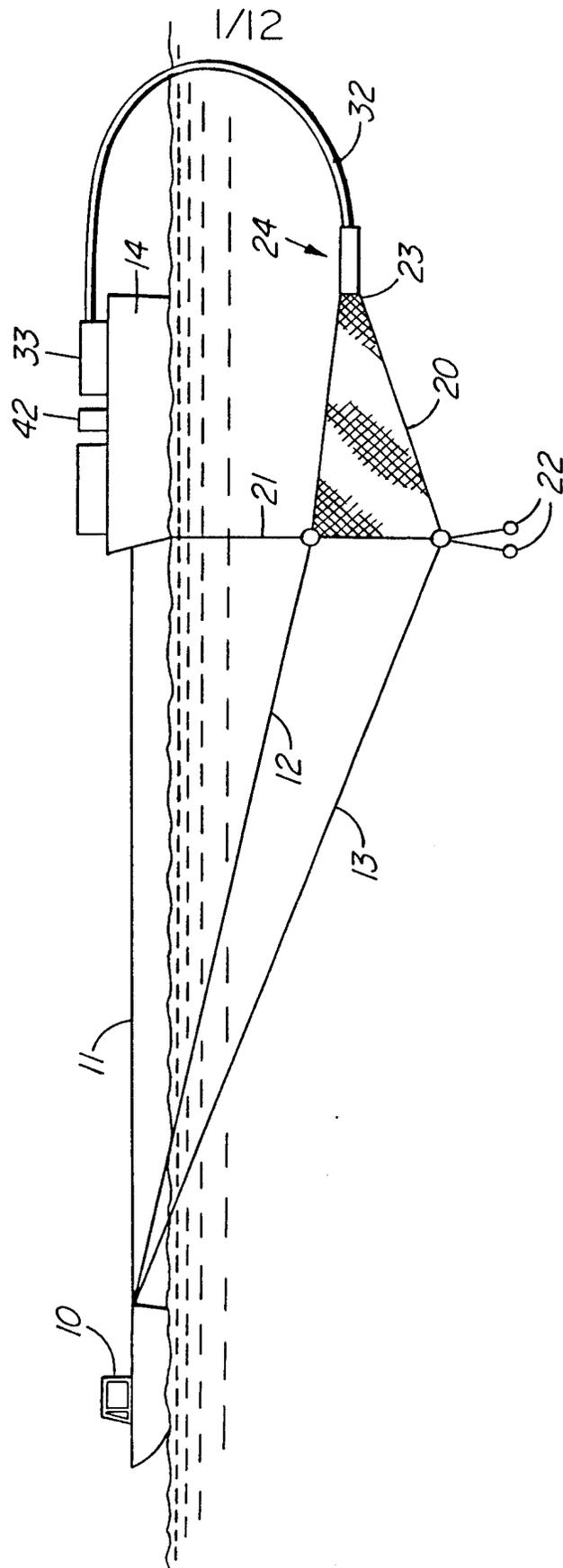


FIG. 1A

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

2/12

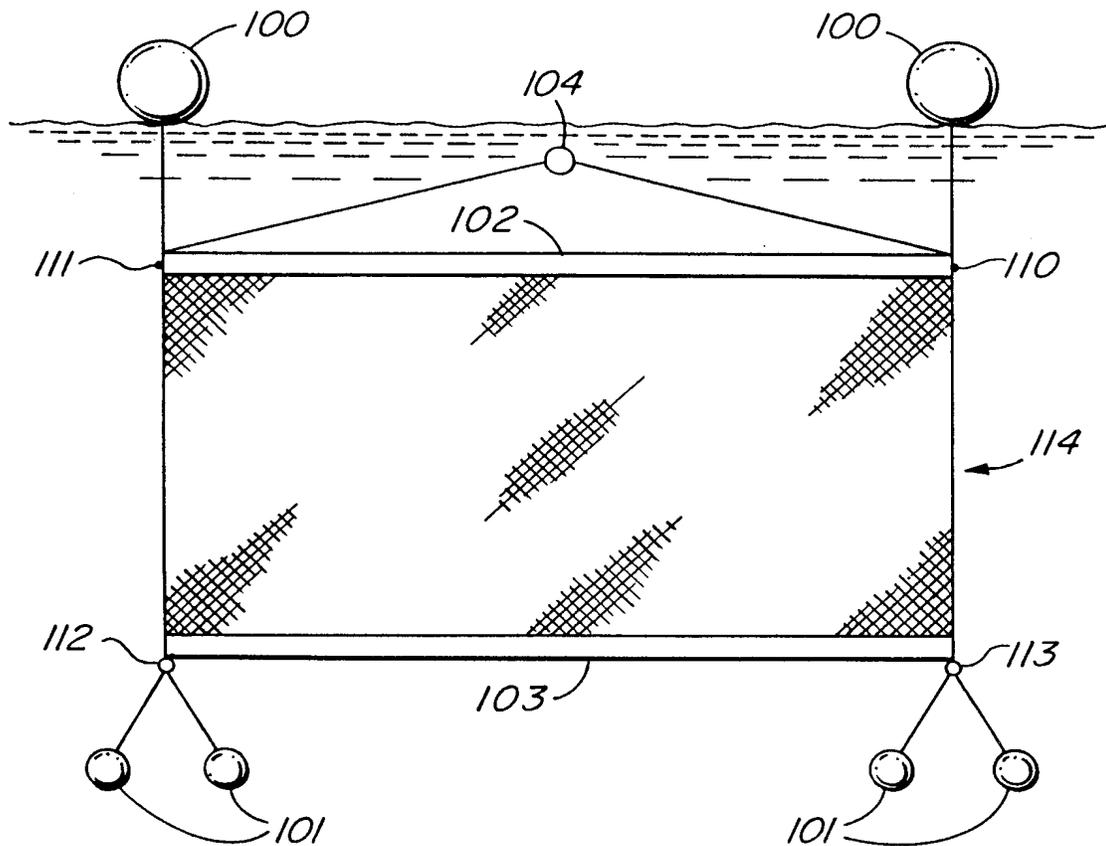


FIG. 1B

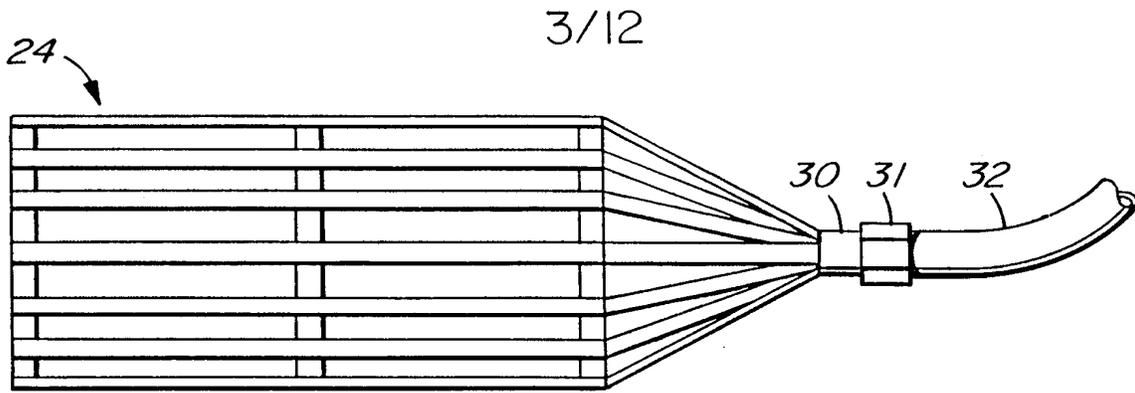


FIG. 2A

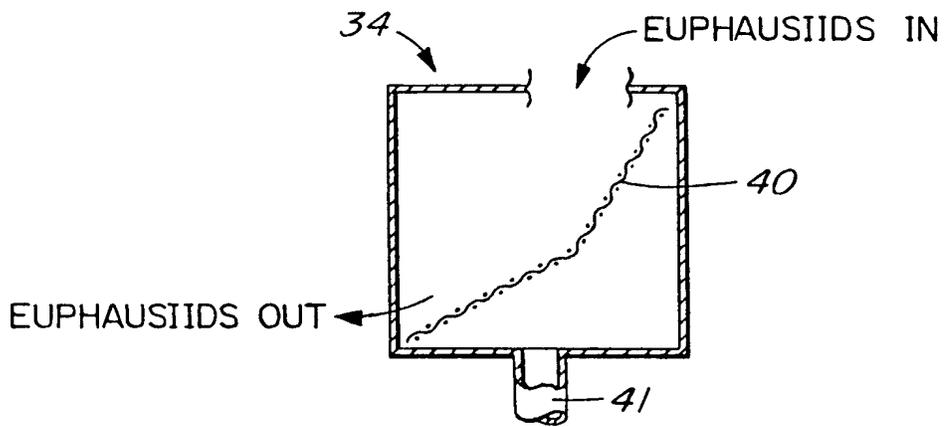


FIG. 2B

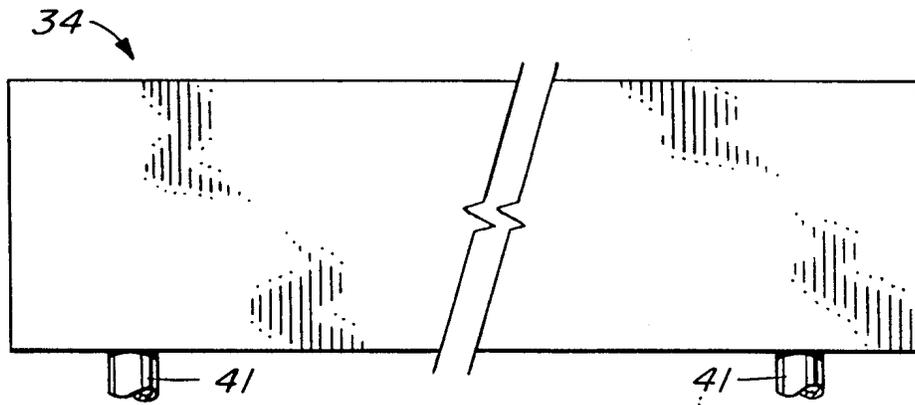
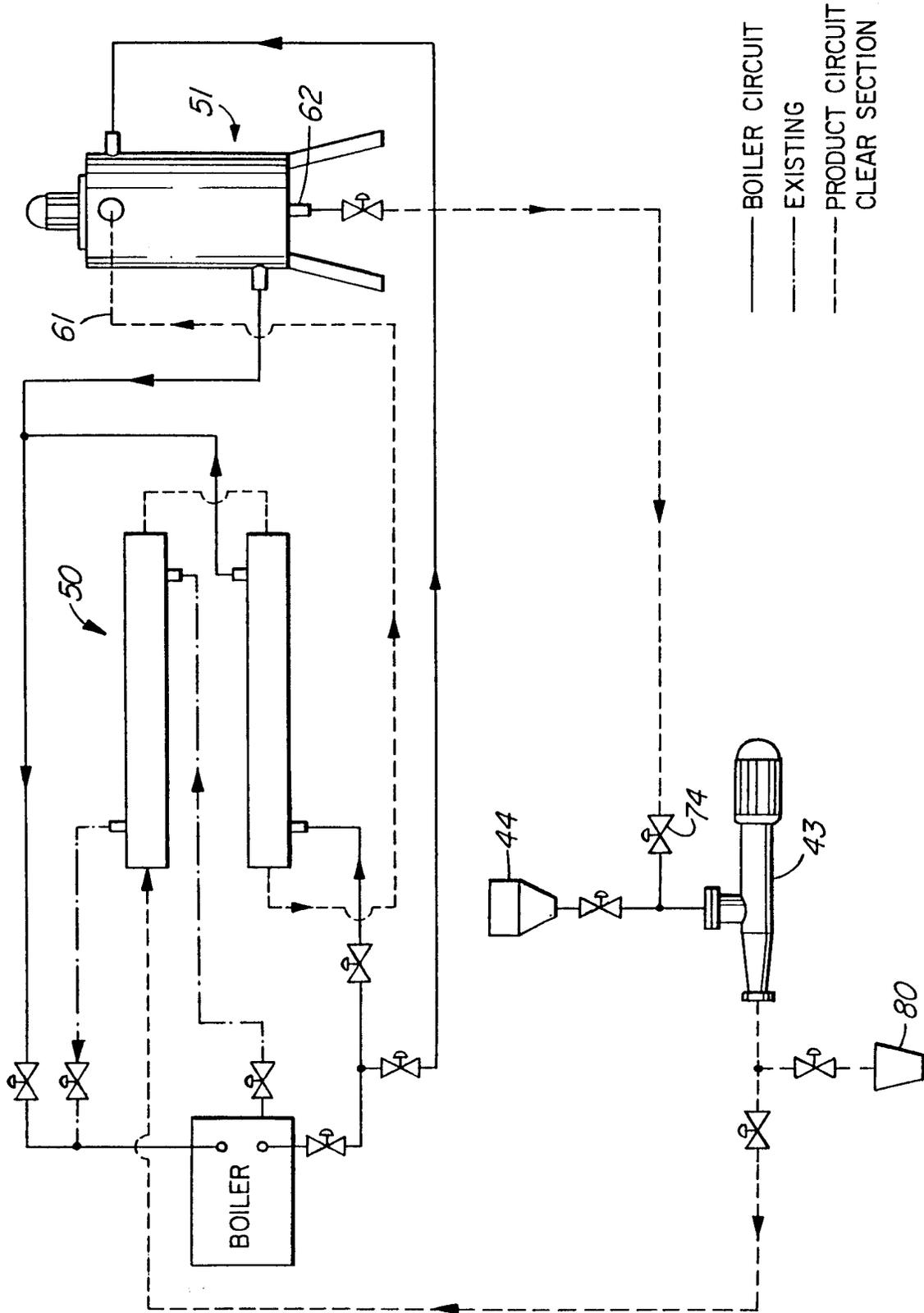


FIG. 2C

4/12



- BOILER CIRCUIT
- - - EXISTING
- · - · - PRODUCT CIRCUIT CLEAR SECTION

FIG. 3

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

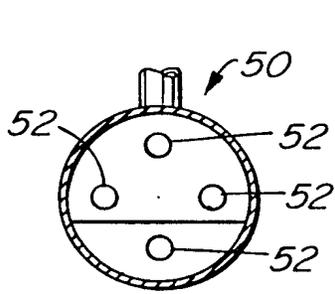


FIG. 4A

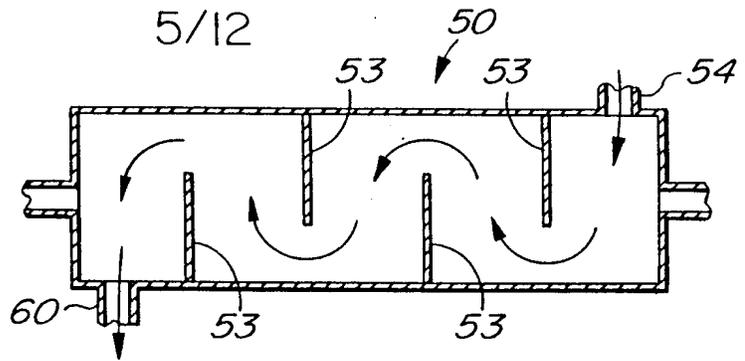


FIG. 4B

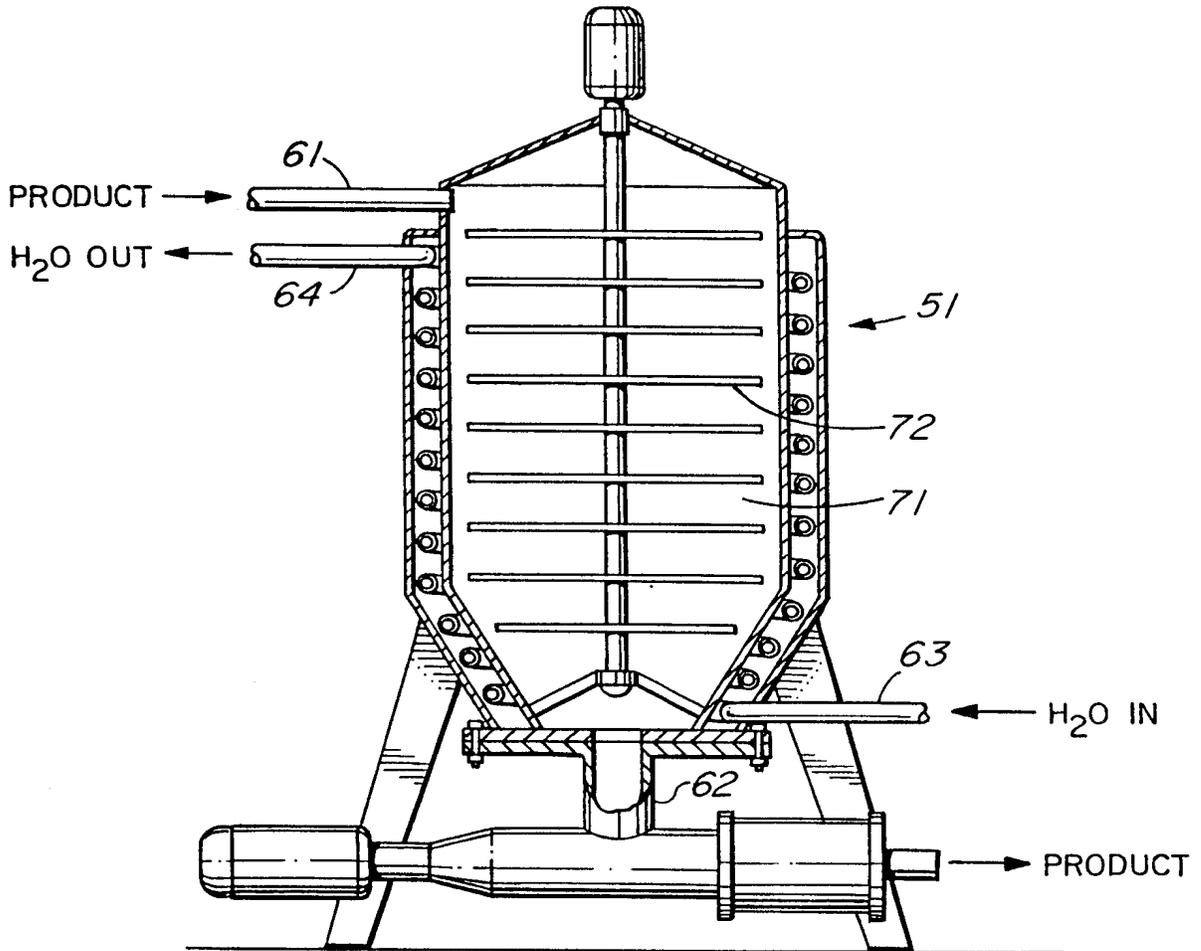


FIG. 5

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

6/12

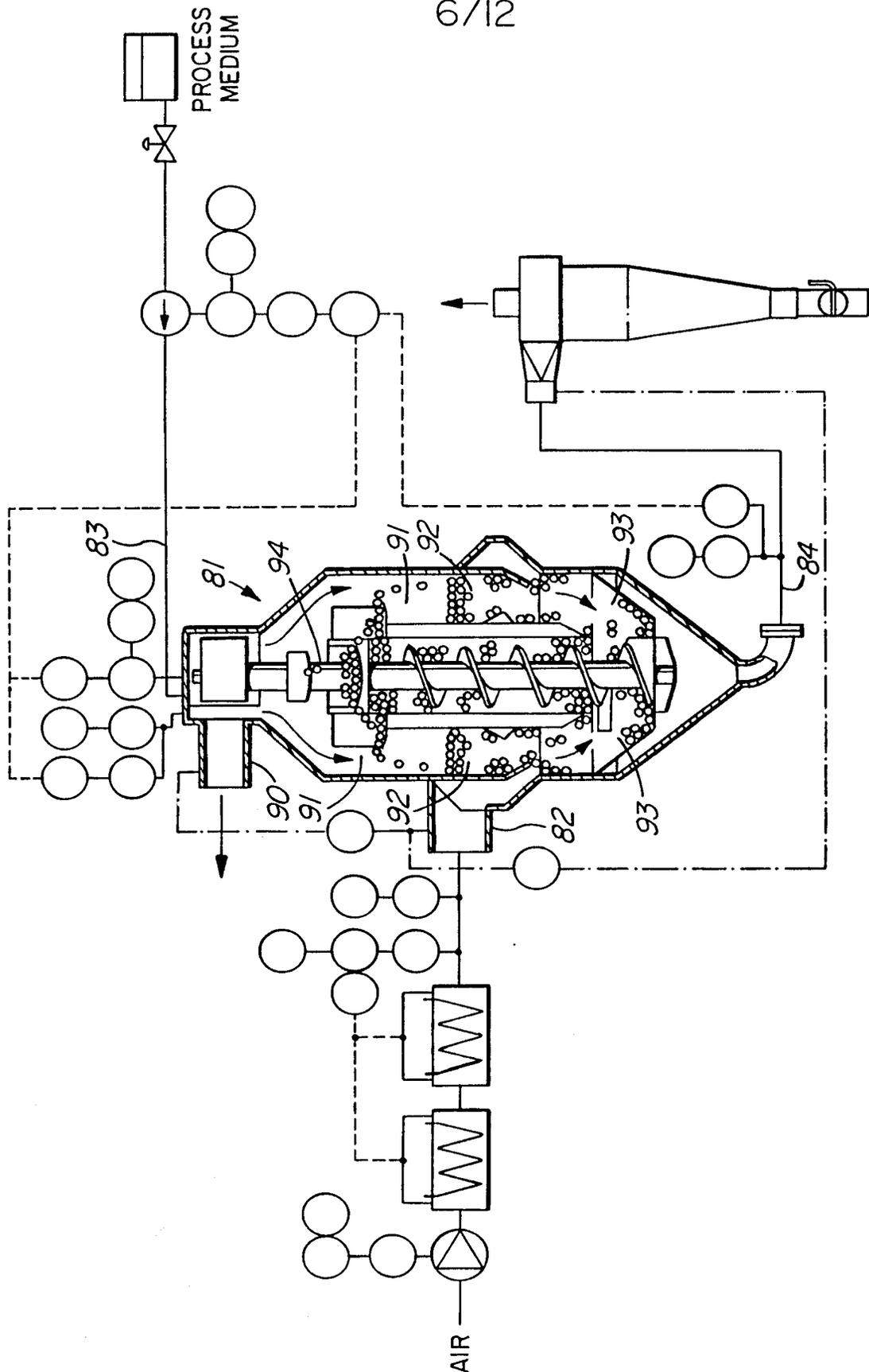


FIG. 6

7/12

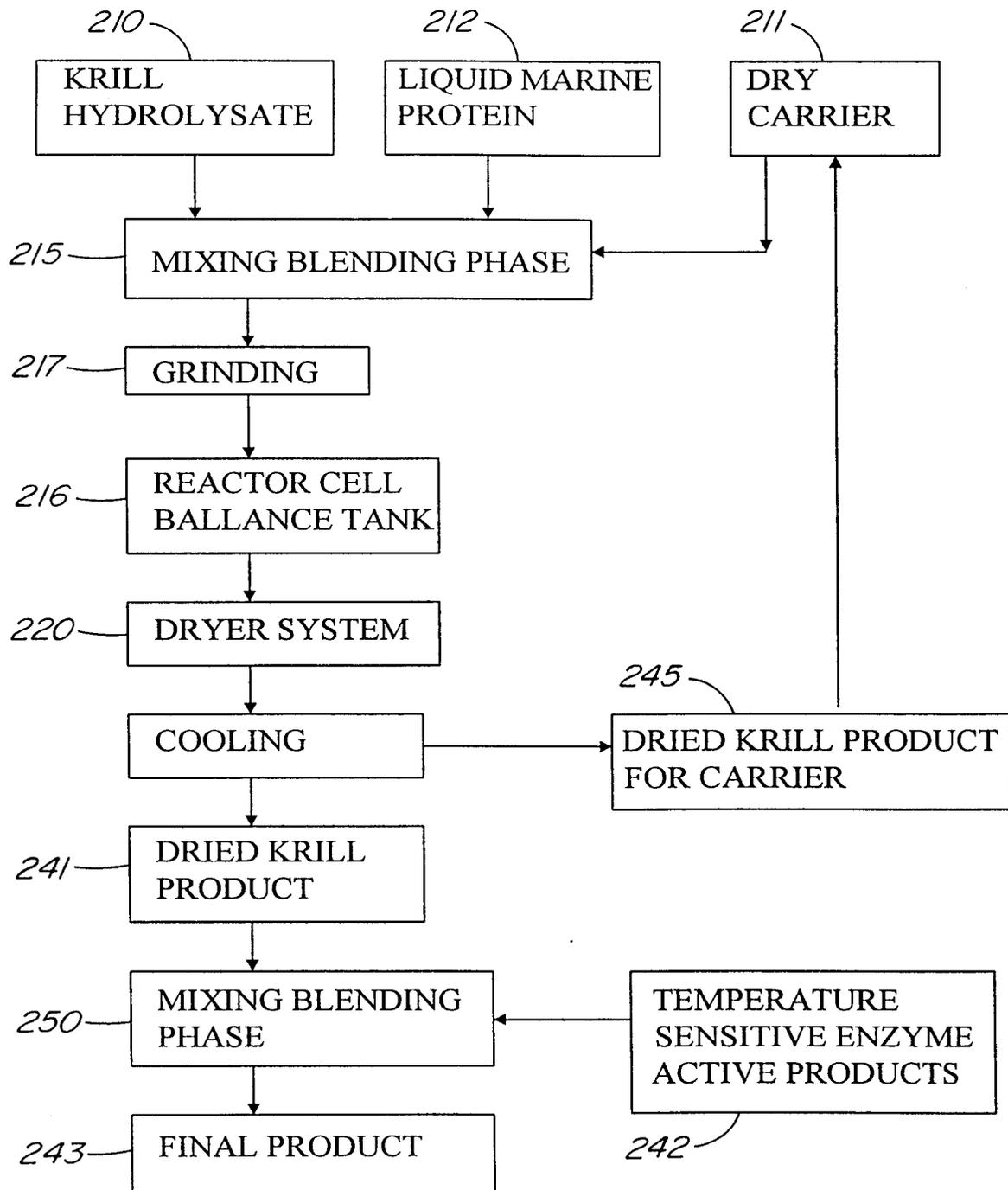


FIG. 7

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

8/12

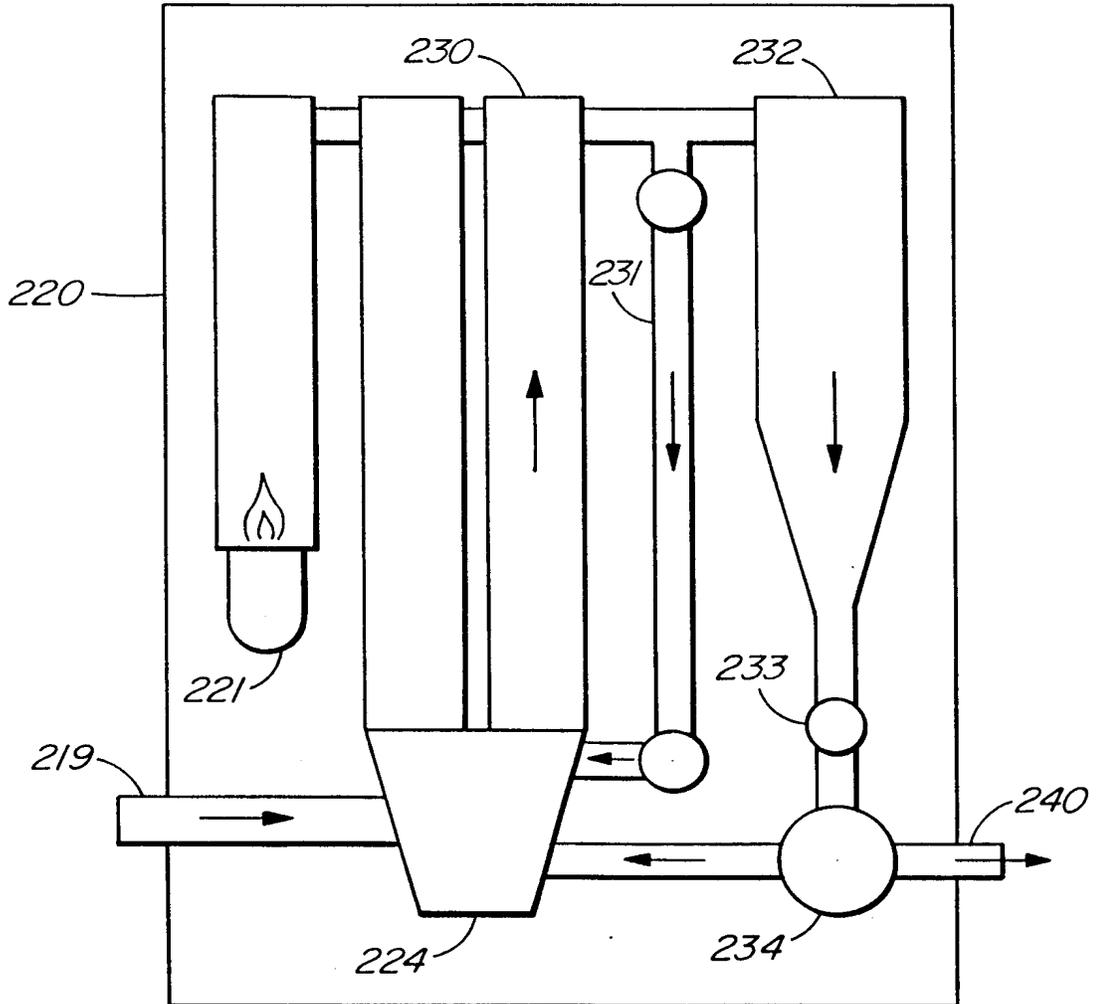


FIG. 8

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

9/12

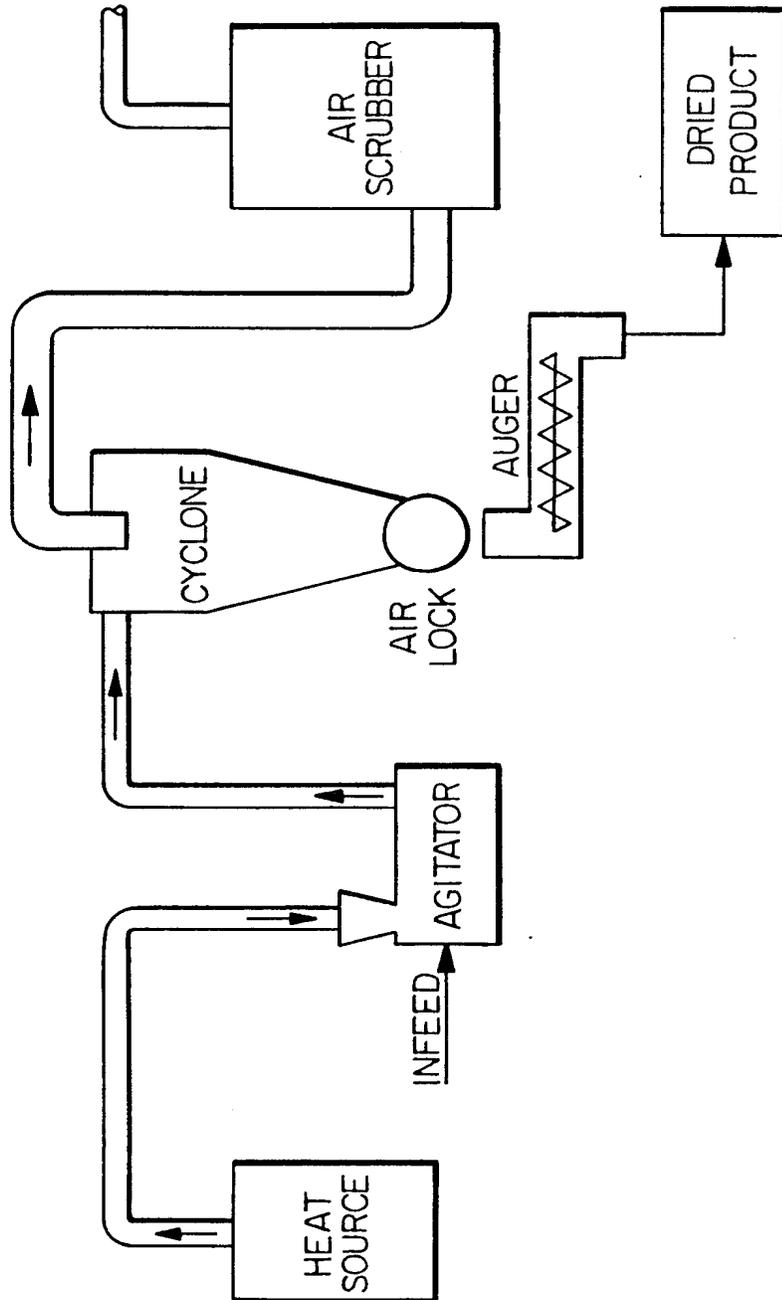


FIG. 9

10/12

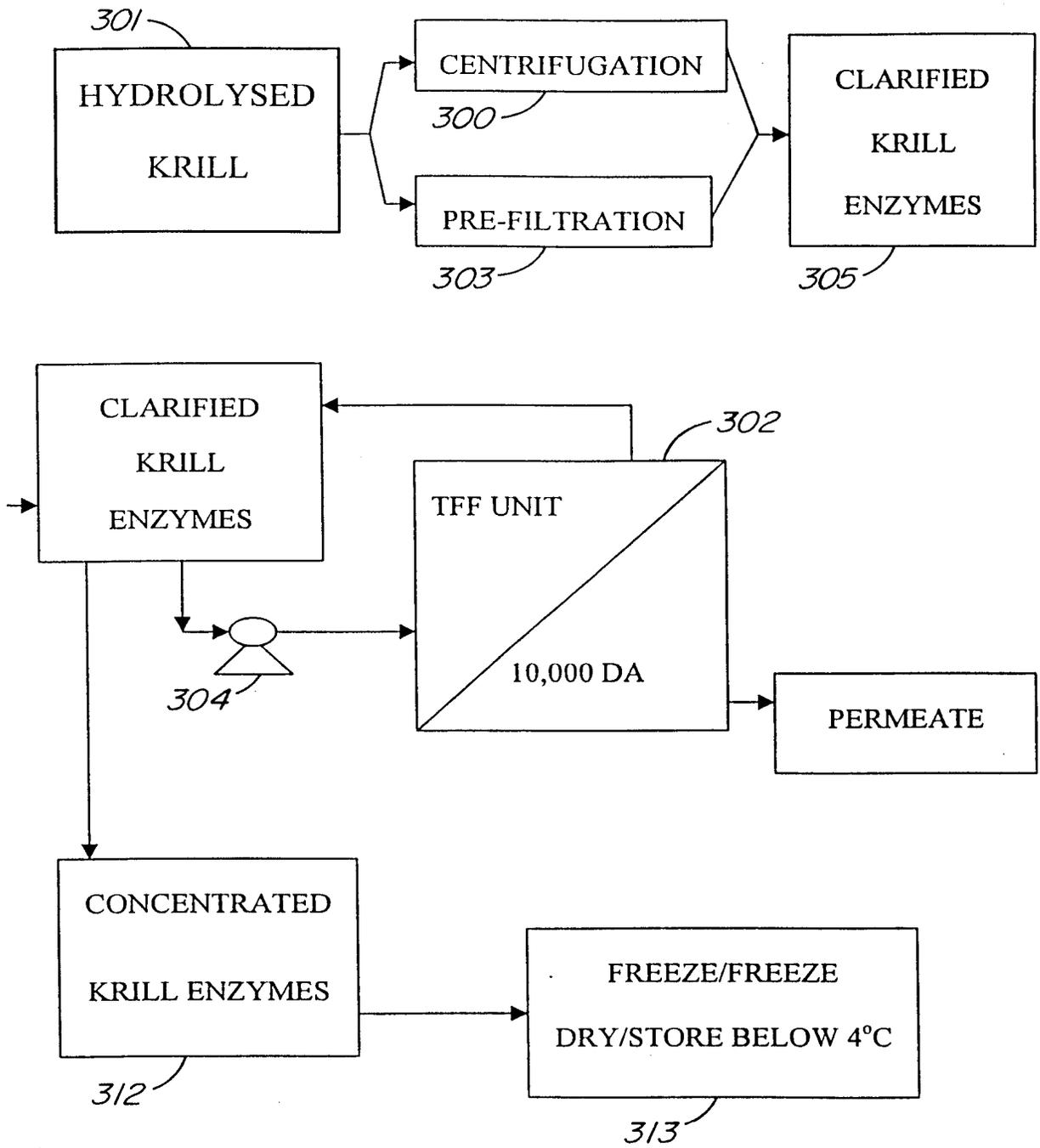


FIG. 10

11/12

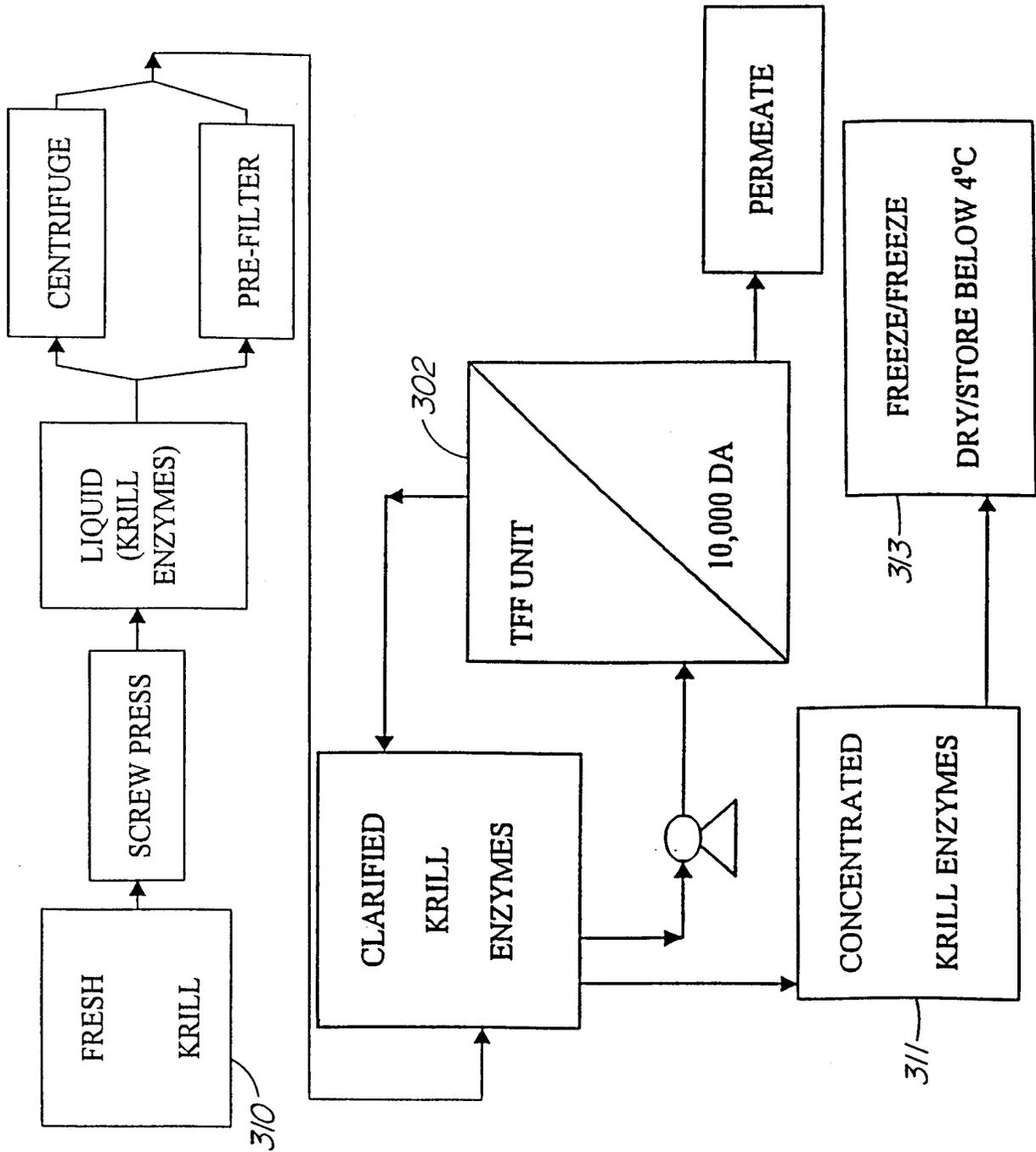


FIG. 11

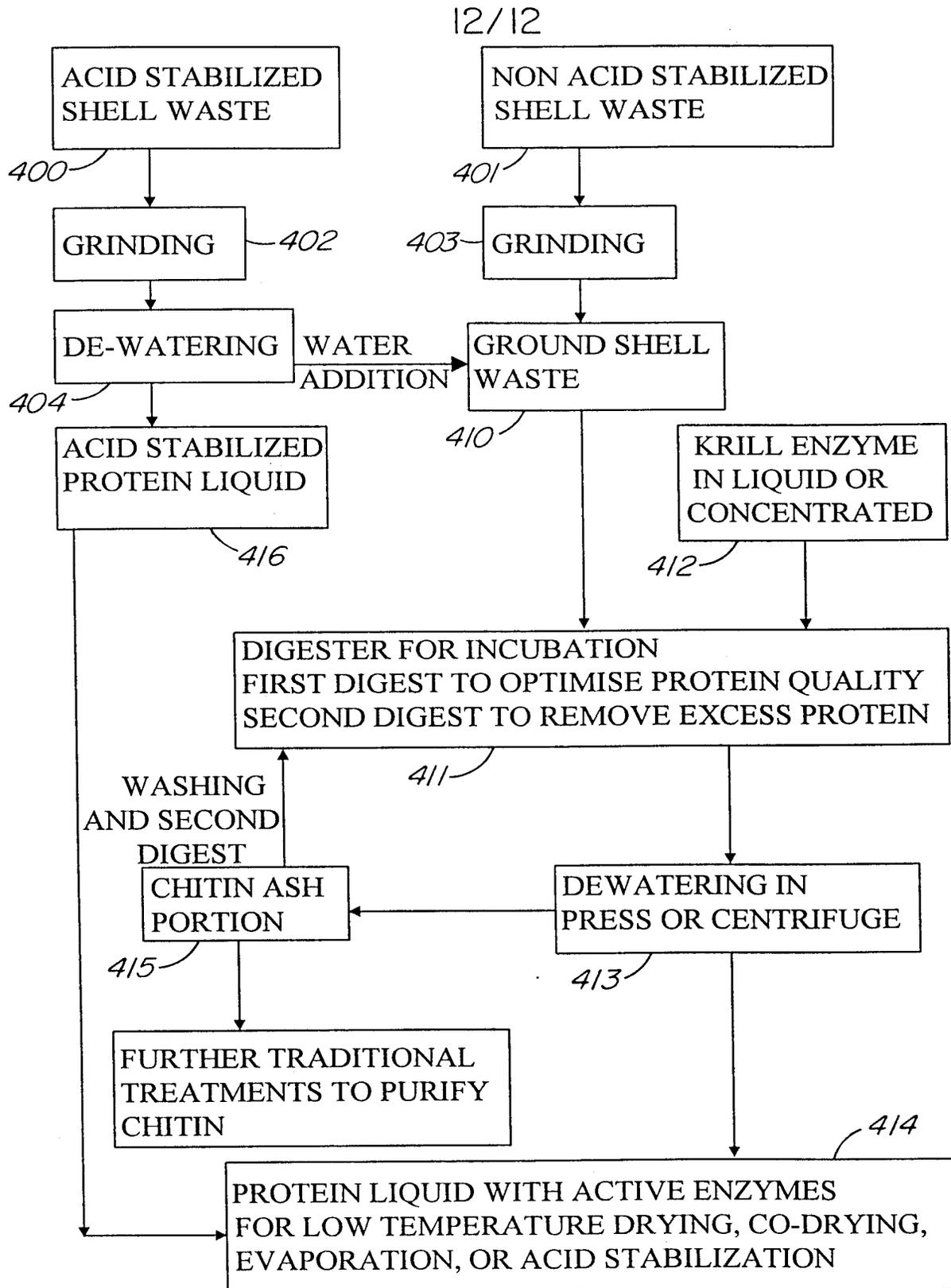


FIG. 12

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/CA 98/00082

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**  
 IPC 6 A23K1/10 A23K1/16 A23K1/18 A23N17/00 C12N9/00  
 A23J1/04

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**  
 Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
 IPC 6 A23K C12N A23J A23N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	DATABASE WPI Section Ch, Week 8447 Derwent Publications Ltd., London, GB; Class C03, AN 84-293719 XP002070859 & SU 1 084 005 A (N BASSIN FISHING IND) see abstract ---	1,20,52
X	WO 95 22893 A (SPECIALTY MARINE FEEDS INC) 31 August 1995 see page 15, line 19 - page 17, line 19 see claims 11-28,30-46 --- -/--	51

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

° Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art. "&" document member of the same patent family
---	---

Date of the actual completion of the international search  <b>8 July 1998</b>	Date of mailing of the international search report  <b>21/07/1998</b>
---	---

Name and mailing address of the ISA European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Authorized officer   <b>Dekeirel, M</b>
--	--

1

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/CA 98/00082

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 89 01031 A (PHARMACIA AB) 9 February 1989 see page 5, paragraph 2 see page 7, paragraph 1 see examples 1-3 see claim 1	29-34, 41
A	---	35-40
X	WO 89 10960 A (PHARMACIA AB) 16 November 1989 see page 8, last paragraph see page 11, paragraph 3 - paragraph 5 see page 14, paragraph 3 see page 27, paragraph 4 see claims 1,7,17	42, 43
X	WO 90 05026 A (AKT CONSULTANTS) 17 May 1990 see figure 1	21, 27
A	---	1, 20, 52
A	PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 017, no. 315 (C-1071), 16 June 1993 & JP 05 030923 A (RIKEN VITAMIN CO LTD), 9 February 1993, see abstract	1, 20, 52
A	---	1, 20, 52
A	DATABASE WPI Section Ch, Week 9602 Derwent Publications Ltd., London, GB; Class D13, AN 96-018544 XP002070860 & RU 2 034 492 C (TROITSKII B N) see abstract	1, 20, 52
	-----	

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/CA 98/00082

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9522893 A	31-08-1995	CA 2134515 A	28-04-1996
		AU 1802695 A	11-09-1995
		CN 1146709 A	02-04-1997
		EP 0758842 A	26-02-1997
		FI 963343 A	27-08-1996
		JP 10500004 T	06-01-1998
WO 8901031 A	09-02-1989	AT 124085 T	15-07-1995
		AU 2259788 A	01-03-1989
		DE 3854050 D	27-07-1995
		EP 0393035 A	24-10-1990
		JP 2504465 T	20-12-1990
WO 8910960 A	16-11-1989	NONE	
WO 9005026 A	17-05-1990	AU 4518389 A	28-05-1990
		CA 2002193 A	03-05-1990
		DK 158990 A	22-08-1990
		EP 0403608 A	27-12-1990
		GR 89100729 A	31-12-1990
		PT 92192 A,B	31-05-1990
		US 5105560 A	21-04-1992



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : A23K 1/10, 1/16, 1/18, A23J 1/04, A23N 17/00, C12N 9/00</p>	<p>A1</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/39589</b></p> <p>(43) International Publication Date: 12 August 1999 (12.08.99)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/CA99/00075</p> <p>(22) International Filing Date: 9 February 1999 (09.02.99)</p> <p>(30) Priority Data: 09/020,695                      9 February 1998 (09.02.98)                      US</p> <p>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): BIOZYME SYSTEMS INC. [CA/CA]; 4160 Marine Drive, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7V 1N6 (CA).</p> <p>(71)(72) Applicants and Inventors: SAXBY, David, J. [CA/CA]; 4727 South Piccadily, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7W 1J8 (CA). SPENCE, John, A. [CA/CA]; 2025 Gisby Street, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7V 4N2 (CA). SAXBY, Gregar [CA/CA]; 4727 South Piccadily, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7W 1J8 (CA). ALOISE, Pedro [CA/CA]; 202-1725 Osoyoos Crescent, Vancouver, British Columbia V6T 1X7 (CA).</p> <p>(74) Agent: UREN, John, Russell; Suite 202, 1590 Bellevue Avenue, West Vancouver, British Columbia V7V 1A7 (CA).</p>	<p>(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p><b>Published</b> <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>	
<p>(54) Title: METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR PROCESSING KRILL HYDROLYSATES</p>		
<p>(57) Abstract</p> <p>Method and apparatus used in producing a feed product or premix and the products made by the method. A predetermined quantity of krill hydrolysate is added to a predetermined quantity of dry carrier with or without a predetermined quantity of liquid marine protein. The mixture is subject to evaporation and drying steps in which relatively heavier particles are separated from relatively lighter particles. The mixture may be blended, ground and subject to chemical reaction in a balance tank prior to entering a dryer. The dryer utilises a warm air source, a tower and a cyclone to dry the mixture following its entry into the dryer. Temperature sensitive enzymes or other bioactive products may be added to the product produced from the dryer. A method for obtaining enzymes from a fresh krill extract or an autolysed krill preparation and the product are also disclosed. A method for separating the bound protein and pigments from crustacean waste using krill enzymes and a product produced by the method are also described.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

<b>AL</b>	Albania	<b>ES</b>	Spain	<b>LS</b>	Lesotho	<b>SI</b>	Slovenia
<b>AM</b>	Armenia	<b>FI</b>	Finland	<b>LT</b>	Lithuania	<b>SK</b>	Slovakia
<b>AT</b>	Austria	<b>FR</b>	France	<b>LU</b>	Luxembourg	<b>SN</b>	Senegal
<b>AU</b>	Australia	<b>GA</b>	Gabon	<b>LV</b>	Latvia	<b>SZ</b>	Swaziland
<b>AZ</b>	Azerbaijan	<b>GB</b>	United Kingdom	<b>MC</b>	Monaco	<b>TD</b>	Chad
<b>BA</b>	Bosnia and Herzegovina	<b>GE</b>	Georgia	<b>MD</b>	Republic of Moldova	<b>TG</b>	Togo
<b>BB</b>	Barbados	<b>GH</b>	Ghana	<b>MG</b>	Madagascar	<b>TJ</b>	Tajikistan
<b>BE</b>	Belgium	<b>GN</b>	Guinea	<b>MK</b>	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	<b>TM</b>	Turkmenistan
<b>BF</b>	Burkina Faso	<b>GR</b>	Greece			<b>TR</b>	Turkey
<b>BG</b>	Bulgaria	<b>HU</b>	Hungary	<b>ML</b>	Mali	<b>TT</b>	Trinidad and Tobago
<b>BJ</b>	Benin	<b>IE</b>	Ireland	<b>MN</b>	Mongolia	<b>UA</b>	Ukraine
<b>BR</b>	Brazil	<b>IL</b>	Israel	<b>MR</b>	Mauritania	<b>UG</b>	Uganda
<b>BY</b>	Belarus	<b>IS</b>	Iceland	<b>MW</b>	Malawi	<b>US</b>	United States of America
<b>CA</b>	Canada	<b>IT</b>	Italy	<b>MX</b>	Mexico	<b>UZ</b>	Uzbekistan
<b>CF</b>	Central African Republic	<b>JP</b>	Japan	<b>NE</b>	Niger	<b>VN</b>	Viet Nam
<b>CG</b>	Congo	<b>KE</b>	Kenya	<b>NL</b>	Netherlands	<b>YU</b>	Yugoslavia
<b>CH</b>	Switzerland	<b>KG</b>	Kyrgyzstan	<b>NO</b>	Norway	<b>ZW</b>	Zimbabwe
<b>CI</b>	Côte d'Ivoire	<b>KP</b>	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	<b>NZ</b>	New Zealand		
<b>CM</b>	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	<b>PL</b>	Poland		
<b>CN</b>	China	<b>KR</b>	Republic of Korea	<b>PT</b>	Portugal		
<b>CU</b>	Cuba	<b>KZ</b>	Kazakstan	<b>RO</b>	Romania		
<b>CZ</b>	Czech Republic	<b>LC</b>	Saint Lucia	<b>RU</b>	Russian Federation		
<b>DE</b>	Germany	<b>LI</b>	Liechtenstein	<b>SD</b>	Sudan		
<b>DK</b>	Denmark	<b>LK</b>	Sri Lanka	<b>SE</b>	Sweden		
<b>EE</b>	Estonia	<b>LR</b>	Liberia	<b>SG</b>	Singapore		

5

10

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR PROCESSING KRILL HYDROLYSATES

15

INTRODUCTION

20

This invention relates to a method and apparatus used in producing a feed product or premix and the product made by the method and, more particularly, to a process using co-drying to dry a mixture of krill hydrolysate and dry carrier or a mixture of krill hydrolysate, fish

25

hydrolysate and dry carrier. The invention further relates to recovering enzymes from krill and, more particularly, to recovering enzymes from both freshly harvested and hydrolyzed krill. The invention further relates to

30

utilising krill enzymes for removing protein from marine and biological wastes and, more particularly, for removing

protein, chitin and other constituents from crustacean and other marine wastes.

#### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

5

With the advent of increasing activity in aquaculture or fish farming in the early to mid-1980s, research has been ongoing into increasing productivity or growth rate and reducing the mortality rate of fish raised in aquaculture conditions since survival of such fish is important. One such factor relates to enhancing the nutritional value and palatability of feed used in raising such fish. In addition to the nutritional value, it is desirable to reduce the cost of feed to such fish since, typically, the feed totals approximately 40 to 50% of the cost of raising the fish. Such feed should be a high quality feed to meet the objectives of having high nutritional value to maximize growth and to reduce fish mortality.

20

The requirement for feed products in aquaculture is projected to grow substantially and, as a result, there is and will be pressure to obtain the necessary ingredients for fish food. The possibility of using zooplankton and, in particular, euphausiids, as a fish feed, appetizer or food product has been investigated and has been found to be possible and desirable, particularly as a feed product.

In addition, blends of krill hydrolysates and fish hydrolysates or any one of these with a dry carrier, can

30

- 3 -

provide alternatives to fish meals in aquaculture and other animal feed diets. Euphausiids are a natural feed harvested directly from coastal waters and have a high nutritional value but, previously, the cost of harvesting and processing such zooplankton for a feed product has been prohibitively expensive.

As well, the questions of the availability of the biomass of such zooplankton and its harvesting, handling, storage and processing are parameters that must be investigated in order to determine whether the product would be appropriate as a feed product.

Through papers written by Fulton and other authors, the use of zooplankton as a food or feed product has been contemplated for some time. In particular, antarctic krill (Euphausia superba) for human consumption have been investigated, although relatively little work has been investigated related to aquaculture. The use of Euphausia pacifica in the coastal waters of British Columbia, Canada has been considered in relation to its use in aquaculture and other animal feeds.

It appears, from those investigations, that the necessary biomass is available in coastal waters. Previously, euphausiids have been used as a pet food ingredient and some aquaculture operators have used euphausiids as a feed product. The euphausiids were used for such purposes in a frozen form after being harvested and

- 4 -

in some cases, the euphausiids were freeze dried following harvesting. This is an expensive procedure.

5 In processing feed products, it has typically been the case that the ingredients used in such feed products are heated to a high temperature around 100°C when the product is processed and dried. By heating the product to such a high temperature, it is believed that the enzymes and other proteins in the product are denatured. If, however, it is  
10 intended to utilize the product for early stage or juvenile aquaculture, which young fish have relatively undeveloped digestive systems, it is desirable that in some application, the euphausiid products maintain a certain proportion of enzymes which will assist the digestive process in juvenile  
15 and other life stages. If the theory that enzymes are advantageous in nutrition is correct, such destruction of the enzymes during the aforementioned drying process is disadvantageous.

20 It is also desirable to have a natural product, where the proteins are not denatured, available for early stage juvenile or larvae feed. In some previous products, exogenous enzymes have been added to the zooplankton mix. However, the addition of such enzymes is difficult to  
25 control and can result in a complete hydrolysis of the proteins to amino acids. The presence of free amino acids in the feed needs to be controlled since they can create an inferior product of substantially reduced value as a feed product.

30

- 5 -

It has been shown, surprisingly, that the degree of enzyme activity which results in determining the digestibility of a product, reaches a relatively constant value after a certain period of time in a natural product.

5 Recent investigations conducted by the applicant have confirmed this characteristic for Euphausia pacifica. This characteristic was first discovered in relation to Euphausia  
superba by Kubota and Sakai in a report entitled "Autolysis  
10 of Antarctic Krill Protein and Its Inactivation by Combined  
Effects of Temperature and pH", Transactions of the Tokyo  
University of Fisheries, number 2, page 53-63, March 1978.  
However, the antarctic krill study done by Messrs. Kubota  
and Sakai had the objective of limiting enzyme activity  
which was deleterious to obtaining a food as opposed to a  
15 feed product. Messrs. Kubota and Sakai wished to inhibit  
the enzymatic activity by certain processing techniques  
which they considered desirable when the product was  
intended as a food product.

20 An appropriate degree of hydrolysis is obtained during the digestion of the euphausiids. The approximate degree of hydrolysis will vary depending on the final application and it can be monitored by measuring the  
apparent viscosity in the final product. Further processing  
25 may then take place in order to make a useful product for commercial feed. Such processes may include adding acid to obtain an acid stabilized product concentrating  
fractionating or drying the product. A variety of drying  
techniques such as freeze drying, spray drying, or vacuum  
30 and air drying. Spray drying, as well as some other drying

processes, however, are done at temperatures that will permanently inactivate the enzymes in the euphausiids which, as earlier mentioned, may be undesirable for aquaculture purposes although it is acceptable for purposes where the product is intended to be used as a carotenoid biopigment for coloring purposes in both feed and food products or as a source of protein, fatty acids, minerals or other nutrients.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

10

According to one aspect of the invention, there is provided a method of producing a feed product comprising the steps of adding a predetermined quantity of krill hydrolysate to a quantity of dry carrier to produce a mixture and co-drying said mixture to obtain an end product. The dry carrier may conveniently be a plant protein, dry krill, fish meal, byproduct meal or other dry ingredient suitable for inclusion in a diet.

20

According to a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a product produced by adding a predetermined quantity of krill hydrolysate to a quantity of liquid marine protein and a quantity of dry carrier to produce a mixture and co-drying said mixture.

25

According to a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a co-drying apparatus for drying a mixture of krill hydrolysate with or without an evaporator and liquid marine product and a dry carrier comprising a dryer

for concentrating, mixing, agitating, heating and separating particles of said mixture.

According to still a further aspect of the  
5 invention, there is provided a method of obtaining an enzyme  
extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate comprising the steps  
of subjecting said hydrolysate to decanting and then to  
centrifugation to obtain a clarified liquid and further  
subjecting said clarified liquid to ultrafiltration using a  
10 membrane with a capacity to retain said enzymes having a  
molecular weight greater than 10,000 daltons and the product  
produced by the method.

According to still a further aspect of the  
15 invention, there is provided a method of obtaining an enzyme  
extract from fresh krill comprising the steps of squeezing  
said krill to obtain an aqueous extract and subjecting said  
aqueous extract to ultrafiltration with a membrane adapted  
to retain enzymes having molecular weights above 10,000  
20 daltons and the product produced by the method.

According to still yet a further aspect of the  
invention, there is provided a method for removal of protein  
from non-stabilized or fresh crustacean shell wastes  
25 comprising grinding said crustacean wastes and water,  
transferring said product to a digester, adding a  
predetermined quantity of krill enzymes to said digester,  
subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined  
time period at a predetermined temperature, dewatering said  
30 digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively

enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion of shell material relatively high in chitin and low in protein.

5                   According to still yet a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a method for removal of protein from acid stabilized shell wastes comprising grinding said crustacean wastes, transferring said small particulate size shell wastes to a digester, adding a predeternined quantity  
10 of krill enzymes to said digester, subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined time period at a predetermined temperature, dewatering said digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion  
15 of shell material relatively high in chitin and low in protein.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE SEVERAL VIEWS OF THE DRAWINGS

20                   Specific embodiments of the invention will now be described, by way of example only, with the use of drawings in which:

25                   Figure 1A is a diagrammatic isometric view of a fishing vessel with an attached net which utilizes the euphausiid harvesting technique according to the invention;

30                   Figure 1B is a diagrammatic front view of a net in an alternative harvesting technique according to the invention;

Figure 2A is a diagrammatic side view of a cage which is used to maintain the cod end of the fishing net illustrated in Figure 1 in an open position and which is further used to transport the harvested euphausiids to the harvesting vessel;

Figures 2B and 2C are side and rear views, respectively, of the dewatering trough used to remove water from the harvested euphausiids;

Figure 3 is a diagrammatic process chart illustrating the processing of the euphausiids subsequent to the dewatering steps illustrated in Figure 2 and prior to the drying step;

Figures 4A and 4B are end and side sectional views of the heat exchanger used to raise the temperature of the harvested euphausiids prior to the digester process;

Figure 5 is a diagrammatic side sectional view of the digester used to create the desired enzyme activity within the euphausiids;

Figure 6 is a diagrammatic side sectional view of a ball drier used to dry the euphausiids following removal of the euphausiids from the surge tank located downstream from the digester;

Figure 7 is a flow chart illustrating the process of co-drying the product according to the invention;

- 10 -

Figure 8 is a diagrammatic view of the dehydrator used in the co-drying process according to the invention;

5 Figure 9 is a diagrammatic view of the codrying process according to a further aspect of the present invention;

10 Figure 10 is a diagrammatic flow chart illustrating the enzyme extraction process utilising hydrolysed krill;

15 Figure 11 is a diagrammatic flow chart illustrating the enzyme extraction process utilising fresh krill; and

20 Figure 12 is a diagrammatic flow chart illustrating the removal of protein and other constituents from crustacean wastes using krill enzymes according to a further aspect of the present invention.

#### DESCRIPTION OF SPECIFIC EMBODIMENT

Referring now to the drawings, a towing vessel 10 is illustrated in Figure 1. A plurality of towing ropes 11, 12, 13 are connected to the towing vessel 10 in order to tow a barge 14 and a net 20. A plurality of ropes 21 (only one of which is shown) are connected to the net 20 and extend downwardly from the barge 14. Weights 22 are connected to the bottom of the open forward facing portion of the net 20 in order to maintain the net 20 at a desired and

- 11 -

predetermined depth where the concentration of zooplankton is satisfactory.

5 The cod or rearward end 23 of the net 20 is  
maintained in an open condition by the use of a cage  
generally illustrated at 24 in Figure 2. Cage 24 is of  
cylindrical configuration and is positioned within the cod  
end of net 20. It is made from aluminum and is preferably  
corrosion resistant. A fitting 30 is welded to the  
10 downstream end of the cage 24 and one end of a swivel  
connection 31 is joined to the fitting 30 to prevent fouling  
the net in the event components become unstable under  
adverse harvesting conditions. A hose 32 is connected to  
the other end of the connection 31.

15

Referring again to Figure 1, hose 32 extends  
upwardly from the cod end of the net 20 to the barge 14. A  
pump of a variety of configurations but, conveniently, a  
diaphragm sump pump 33, is located at the other end of the  
20 hose 32 on barge 14. A dewatering trough is generally shown  
at 34 and is illustrated in Figures 2B and 2C. Dewatering  
trough 34 has a lengthwise generally rectangular  
configuration and is also located on barge 14. Dewatering  
trough conveniently takes the configuration of a "lazy L".  
25 A set of screens 40 positioned at obtuse angles are utilised  
to allow water to drain from the pumped euphausiids and exit  
the trough 34 through drain pipes 41 while the euphausiids  
accumulate within the dewatering trough 34.

- 12 -

A blast freezer 42 was also located on the barge 14 to stabilize the harvested euphausiids. The blast freezer 42 subjects the euphausiids to a temperature of approximately +9° to -17°C and is used to freeze the dewatered euphausiids and stabilize the product for further processing. The euphausiids accumulate within the dewatering trough 34 and which are periodically removed from the trough 34 from time to time for freezing. Thereafter, the frozen euphausiids are transported to a processing location and processed as described hereafter. Alternatively, the euphausiids may conveniently be processed aboard a vessel.

In prototype demonstrations, the net 20 utilised for the harvesting operation was a specially designed 13 ft. by 21 ft. plankton net suspended from a 46 ft. aluminum barge. The pumping action was by a three inch diaphragm pump located on the barge 14 and the freezing action occurred within a minus seventeen (-17°C) degree centigrade blast freezer 42.

As earlier described, the frozen euphausiids are transported to a processing location in order to transform the euphausiids into the desired feed product. Reference is now made to the flow chart of Figure 3.

A pump 43 is connected to a hopper 44 which receives the euphausiids which are now in a thawed condition. Pump 43 is connected to a heat exchanger generally illustrated at 50 and diagrammatically illustrated

- 13 -

in Figure 3. The heat exchanger 50 is intended to raise the temperature of the euphausiids to a temperature of approximately 40°C to 60°C which will more closely approximate the temperature maintained in the digester which is generally lower than 70°C and which digester is generally illustrated at 51. Digester 51 is located downstream of the heat exchanger 50 in the process illustrated in Figure 3.

Although several different types of heat exchangers may be used, heat exchanger 50 conveniently comprises a plurality of pipes 52 (Figure 4A) in which the euphausiids are conveyed through the heat exchanger. Heated water enters the inlet 54 of the heat exchanger 50 and is circulated through the heat exchanger 50 generally following the flow path seen in Figure 4B which utilizes a plurality of baffles 53. The heated water exits the heat exchanger at outlet 61. Following the increase of temperature created in the euphausiids by the heat exchanger 50, the euphausiids pass to the digester 51.

20

Digester 51 is seen in greater detail in Figure 5. It comprises a product inlet 61 and a product outlet 62. A water inlet 63 and a water outlet 64 are provided. A water jacket 70 through which the heated water circulates surrounds the cylindrical cavity area 71 of the digester 51 which contains the euphausiids. A plurality of stirring discs 72 are located vertically within the cavity area 71 of the digester 51 and are used to stir the euphausiids when they are positioned within the digester 51. A valve 73 is used to close the product outlet 62 so as to maintain the

30

- 14 -

euphausiids within the digester 51 until the proper temperature and time for the desired enzyme action within the euphausiids has taken place. The time period has conveniently extended between thirty (30) minutes and two  
5 (2) hours.

It is thought that a degree of hydrolysis will enhance digestibility of the feed product particularly for early stage larvae or juveniles but also for virtually all  
10 fish. This degree of hydrolysis is determined by the applications and will be monitored by measuring the apparent viscosity in the final product. In utilising the digester 51 illustrated in Figure 5, a batch process is currently being used with a volume of euphausiids of 250 lb./hr being  
15 used.

The valve 62 is then opened and the quantity of euphausiids within the digester 51 pass through the valve 62 and are transported through valve 74 to the surge tank or  
20 heated batch storage vessel 80 where they await treatment in the dryer, conveniently a ball dryer generally illustrated at 81 (Figure 6) where relatively low and controlled temperatures can be applied to the euphausiids such that any enzymes existing within the euphausiids are not inactivated  
25 as would otherwise be the case in a normal drying process.

The euphausiids pass from the storage vessel 80 to the ball dryer 81 through product inlet 83 and, thence, about the periphery of the dryer 81 initially through the  
30 application zones 91 where the balls initially contact the

euphausiids and begin the drying process. The ball dryer 81 performs a "soft" drying process which reduces damage to the euphausiids because of its gentle action by way of controlled temperature. The ball drying process utilises a  
5 continuous feed into the ball dryer 81 and a product flow of 15 lb./hr. is available.

As the balls and euphausiids move downwardly through the drying zones 92, they meet a counter-current  
10 flow of controlled-temperature drying air at less than 50°C which air enters the ball dryer 81 through air inlet 82. Air flow, temperature and dwell time are precisely controlled and monitored within this zone. All of these are variable  
15 factors which depend upon whether the product is wet or dried and what period of time the product is intended to stay in the dryer 81.

In the separation zone 93 at the bottom of the dryer 81, the ball and euphausiids meet a co-current flow of  
20 controlled temperature air for final drying and separation. The dried euphausiids leave the ball dryer 81 through the product outlet 84 and pass to the packaging step. The drying balls are elevated by rotating helix 94 and recycled to the application zone 91 and the process continues.

25

One of many commercial and known dryers may be used for the air drying of the euphausiids.

It is contemplated that although the processing of  
30 the euphausiids has been described as taking place at a land

location, such processing steps may take place at the harvesting location on board either the harvesting vessel or another vessel conveniently located nearby. This results in advantages in that the euphausiids need not be frozen following harvesting and need not be transported to a land based processing plant thereby resulting in considerable cost savings and quality improvement. In addition, the euphausiids may be introduced directly to a low temperature dryer on board a vessel following harvesting or to an evaporator. The dried or concentrated euphausiids, after being subjected to the digester and/or the drying processes, may then be stored on the vessel until a substantial quantity of krill hydrolysate concentrate has been obtained at which time they may be transferred to another vessel for transport to the processing vessel itself which, when full, will transport the euphausiids to the shore.

Likewise and while it is desirable for the digester and drying steps to take place concurrently and sequentially in the event the euphausiids are intended to be used as a feed product for juvenile and early stage larvae.

A further harvesting technique is contemplated in Figure 1B. In this technique, weights 101 are connected to the mouth end of the net generally illustrated at 114 at the ends of the lower horizontal beam 103. Floats 100 are connected to the top horizontal beam 102 of the mouth end of the net 114. Depending on the size of the net 114, lines are connected on one end to attachment points 104, in the first instance or, alternatively, to points 110, 111, 112,

- 17 -

113 and, on the other end, to the towing vessel. The net 114 is pulled through the water gathering the zooplankton which enter the net 114 through the mouth.

5                   Many applications for the hydrolysed krill and hydrolysed krill concentrate products are also contemplated because of the desirable characteristics of the of the krill hydrolysate in which the proteins and nutritional value is retained and improved through the partial digestions of the  
10 proteins. For example, fish under stress, which is common with cultivated species raised with aquacultural techniques, are reluctant to eat and, accordingly, therapeutic drug delivery and special diets used for such marine species are difficult to use because the fish do not find such products  
15 palatable. The hydrolysed krill products and other zooplankton products according to the invention may be used with such special diets and drug delivery by creating an enhanced flavour and enhanced assimilation when the medicinal product such as a pellet is coated or mixed with  
20 the hydrolysed zooplankton product in a liquid or paste form. Likewise, while other such products may include specially added amino acids and other compounds to enhance the flavour of the product, the hydrolysed krill according to the present invention preserves, enhances and optimises  
25 the level of certain free amino acids and other flavourants thereby allowing flavour enhancement with a natural product and without the addition of amino acids or other flavourants. Likewise, the krill hydrolysates retain the protein and nutrient quality including the original  
30 pigments, fatty acids, other nutrients and mineral elements.

- 18 -

The activity of the enzymes, which are contained in the krill, is also retained in the hydrolysed natural product according to the invention. Such enzymes allow for enhanced digestion of feed by certain cultivated marine species by  
5 increasing the availability of peptides and free amino acids without creating additional harmful stress on such species.

Yet a further application contemplated by the present invention is the use of hydrolysed krill that is  
10 blended and codried in association with plant or vegetable protein and other dry carriers such as soymeal, corn gluten meal and canola meal in fish feed mixtures. The range of co-drying carriers used in the blending process include a wide range of dry animal or vegetable protein and feed  
15 ingredients including soy conola and other soil seed meals, coarse ground cereal gains and flours, oil seed concentrates and isolates, corn and cereal glutens, pea and pulse meals, oil seed and cereal processing by products and brans, dried yeasts, algae and other single cell organisms, milk powders,  
20 blood meal and other body fluid products, namial and poultry by products, fish and shellfish meals, and vitaminised mineral premixes. Such applications would increase the palatability, amino acid balance and other nutrient levels in the dry blended meal so that it can be used to replace  
25 fish meal in aquaculture feeds and other applications. Further enzymes in the hydrolysed krill products according to the invention are preserved following he hydrolysis and can be allowed to act on the plant proteins. The enhanced digestibility of a product combination of plant protein and  
30 hydrolysed krill is also contemplated to improve the

- 19 -

efficiency of the feed and decrease the fecal load in the environment by fish fed with diets containing such combination. This can be an important feature with the rearing of cultivated marine and freshwater species.

5 Likewise, the palatability of such non-fish meal proteins, in particular, plant proteins such as canola, corn gluten or soy meal is enhanced.

Experiments conducted to date utilize the enzymes  
10 in krill to carry out a limited hydrolysis of soy, canola and other plant proteins. For example, one part of dry canola or soy meal which has added ten percent (10%) wheat bran is blended with five (5) parts of hydrolysed krill. The hydrolysate is pumped from the digester to the feed  
15 stock hopper and the dry blend is added. The mixture is brought to the desired temperature while agitated in the digester for approximately one (1) hour. Measurements of phytic acid and the levels of the amino acids and ammonia are then taken. For example, 250 lbs. of krill is  
20 hydrolysed by bringing the krill to approximately 45° Celsius. The temperature is held for one (1) hour and is then blended with 5 lbs. of wheat bran with 45 lbs. of canola concentrate. The use of wheat bran is necessary to provide phytase, an enzyme which is absent in canola meal  
25 and krill. The phytic acid is dephosphorylated by phytase from the wheat bran. The phytic acid is acted on by the phytase enzyme. It is noted that the blend may be retained in the digester for an extended period, up to a period of four (4) hours or even longer.

30

In yet a further embodiment of the invention, it is contemplated that the wet krill hydrolysate product is evaporated and then mixed with and co-dried with other wet and dry products. Various predetermined ratios of wet krill hydrolysate and liquid marine products may be concentrated and then mixed with dry carrier conveniently in the form of dried krill products, dried vegetable protein and/or dried fish product, used in combination or singly. The resulting moist blend is subject to concentration, processing and co-drying in a dehydrator such as a dryer. A dehydrator system with the following characteristics has been found to work well, namely a type of flash and fluidized drier or combination thereof with an agitator and vertical or tangential flow of heated air. Although the temperature of the inflowing air may be high at impact (the impact temperature), the temperature of the product is not significantly increased in the dryer. This is an important element in the drying system. Following hot air impact and agitation, the water evaporates rapidly and the duration of the drying process is greatly reduced as set out in greater detail hereafter.

Co-drying the mixture of the krill hydrolysate, liquid marine product and the dry carrier product mixture has been found to be relatively economical at relatively low temperatures. Under such conditions, the krill proteins, pigments and other constituents are substantially preserved. Thus produced, the product has unique benefits for dietary uses in aquaculture and animal feeds. These blended and agglomerated dry products are uniquely different

- 21 -

from other product mixes. The unique sequences and control of the process provides intimate agglomeration and adsorption of the krill hydrolysate with the dry carrier. It also preserves the unique nutrient quality of the krill hydrolysate in the blend without significant losses due to excess heat or oxidation during the drying process. Further, cost savings and economic advantages in the manufacture of the product are improved.

10                    Depending on the moisture content of the dry carrier, liquid marine protein, and the krill hydrolysate, and the proportion of each in the mixture to be co-dried, the removal of moisture can be accomplished by a drying process at relatively low temperatures thereby to preserve the temperature and oxidation sensitive constituents including the krill constituents and the krill pigments. Particles of the dry carrier are coated with, adsorbed and absorbed with the wet hydrolysate thereby facilitating the drying process by exposing a greater surface area of wet hydrolysate and/or liquid fish product for heated air to act upon. The mixture may then be fractured into smaller particles which further increases the available surface area to expedite the drying process. At the outset, the mixture may be placed in a reactor cell balance tank to permit chemical interactions between components of the mixture, such reactions including enzymatic activity of a wide range of enzymes including proteolytic, lipolytic and carbohydrate splitting enzyme prior to drying. A well-mixed, homogeneous mixture is prepared to reduce and to eliminate high moisture pockets. Water is then removed from this mixture by an

evaporator and a subsequent dehydrator such as is described above and the endproduct is a dried krill premix or feedstuff blended with the aforementioned carrier.

5 Temperature sensitive enzymes, flavorants or other bioactive products may be added to the cooled endproduct after the drying step. Alternatively, the krill hydrolysate may be combined with wet fish products and other carriers such as dry fish meal, corn meal, canola meal, oil seed meal, or other vegetable meals, used in combination or taken singly.

10

Referring now to the drawings, Figure 7 illustrates the steps of the co-drying process in its entirety according to the present invention. A predetermined quantity of wet krill hydrolysate product 210 is mixed with a predetermined quantity of liquid marine protein 212 and a predetermined amount of dry carrier 211, conveniently dried krill product, dried fish product and/or dried vegetable protein used in combination or taken singly. The resulting mixture is placed in a mixing blender 215, where the various ratios of hydrolysate, marine protein and dry carrier are thoroughly blended. The blending required will vary with the constitution of the mixture. The blended mixture is then ground within a grinder 217 where the mixture is reduced to particles of substantially uniform size. The ground mixture is then transferred to reactor cell balance tank 216 where the continuously stirred blended mixture is allowed to chemically react and/or undergo enzymatic action prior to the drying process. After the intended reaction has taken place in the tank 216, the mixture is conveyed to the dehydrator 220 for drying.

25

20

15

The dehydrator 220 is illustrated in greater detail in Figure 8 and with reference thereto, the mixture enters the agitator bowl 224 of the dehydrator 220 through inlet 219 where the mixture is agitated into smaller particles which is intended to prevent clumping of the mixture. A continuous feed of mixture into the dehydrator 220 is intended through inlet 219.

Directly heated air from the burner 221 or indirectly heated air is directed to the agitator bowl 224 of the dehydrator 220 by way of fans (not illustrated) where the air mixes with particles of the mixture in the bowl 224. The particles are carried up the drying tower 230 by the column of hot air. The classifier 231 sorts the particles at the top of tower 230. Drier mixture consists of lighter, individual particles which proceed along the column of hot air into a cyclone 232. The classifier 231 redirects larger and heavier masses of more damp mixture back to the agitator bowl 224 for further agitation and drying.

The particles are drawn downwards along a spiralling column of heated air in cyclone 232 and centrifugal action removes further moisture from the particles. At the bottom of the cyclone 232, the particles are isolated from the air column by airlock 233 and are sorted by a rotary screen 234. Smaller, lighter particles of dried product pass through the rotary screen 234 and exit the dehydrator 220 at outlet 240 for further processing. Larger, heavier particles of damp mixture are redirected to

- 24 -

the agitator bowl 224 from outlet 241 for further agitation and drying within several seconds.

5 With reference again to Figure 7, heated product 241 exiting the dehydrator 220 from outlet 240. The average transit time through the dryer is between 60 and 90 seconds and the end moisture content below 10% moisture may then be permitted to cool. Some of this dried product 245 may be further used in the co-drying process as a quantity of the  
10 dry carrier 211 so as to increase the fluid content of marine constituents. Temperature sensitive enzyme active products 242 or other bioactive products, which might be denatured by the drying process, may be introduced to the dried product 241 after the product has passed through the  
15 dehydrator 220 as illustrated. The dried product 241 then undergoes further mixing and blending at mixing step 250 to ensure the homogenous addition of the temperature sensitive enzyme active products 242. The final product 243 may then proceed to a packaging step such as a bagger 244 or to a  
20 storage bin 245 prior to further use in aquaculture or animal feeds.

Concentration and Co-Drying of Krill with Vegetable proteins Trials

25

The objectives were the concentration of liquid krill hydrolysate to 42%DM in a rising film plate evaporator (Alfa Vap). The drying of a krill concentrate blend with soya meal and corn gluten meal in a flash dryer (drier with  
30 performance characteristics as defined), to determine the

maximum amount of krill concentrate that can be added to the dry vegetable protein meal.

5 Raw material hydrolysed krill with 18-20% DM including approximately 0.3% oil.

10 Evaporator. The hydrolysed krill was concentrated in an Alfa Vap evaporator from 18-20% DM to 42% DM. The 42% level was not obtained with any difficulty.

#### Mixing

15 The mixing was done in 100 kg batches using a cylindrical container with a vertical shaft paddle. This was accomplished without unusual difficulties.

#### Drying

20 Drying and mixing was carried out in two steps: Step 1 was mixing the krill concentrate and carrier (vegetable and protein) and drying to about 90% DM. Step 2 was mixing the dried product from step 1 with more krill concentrate and drying a second time.

#### 25 Flash Drying

30 The mixtures were dried in a flash dryer. This was done by feeding the mixture into a chamber containing a fast rotating agitator. Through intake air ducts hot air was led through the chamber and agitator.

Impact Temperature was 165-175 deg. C.

Drying Temperature (set point) is 110 deg. C to 125 deg C.

5 Capacity

The flow to the dryer for all three test vegetable protein products was 600-700 kg/hr. This gave an evaporation rate of approximately 500 kg/hr. in the dryer.

10

Results

The temperature of the product is not increased in the dryer by any significant amount. The evaporation of the water on the product keeps the temperature low. The rapid transit of the product through the dryer also minimizes the temperature and time effects that can reduce the value of the product as a feed.

15  
20 A third or fourth step is also contemplated and considered possible with this type of dryer.

Other driers besides those of ball dryer 81 (Figure 6) are contemplated. For example, dryers such as direct heated flash driers or fluidized bed driers that cause rapid drying of the particles within a few seconds are well known. With reference to Figure 9, a built in air scrubber generally illustrated at 500 is used for odour control. A burner or indirect heating system 501 heats the air to the required level with impact temperatures not

25  
30

exceeding 450 deg. C before the air enters agitator 502. the product is augered tangentially into the agitator chamber 503 where most of the water in the product is evaporated. Agitator 502 rotates with a high tangential  
5 speed of the agitator blades concurrent with the tangential air flow. The motion of the agitator 502 causes mechanical fluidization of the particles and comminutes the particles, thus accelerating evaporation. The acceleration of the  
10 drying velocity reduces the adverse effect of heat or the heat burden on the product during the drying process.

In yet a further embodiment of the invention, it is contemplated that a process for obtaining enzymes from the Euphausia superba species of krill and other krill  
15 species is of interest. Euphasia superba ("E.s.") is a small crustacean from the Antarctic that contains numerous enzymes that are principally but not exclusively represented by proteases, amylases, chitinases, carboxymethy cellulases, lipases, etc. This enzymatic cocktail as a whole or in a  
20 partial purified form can be used for a number of industrial applications such as aquaculture and other general feed manufacturing and the further process of marine and other proteins. The inclusion rate of enzymes in the feed would vary depending on the target species and the composition of  
25 the diet. For example, these krill enzyme cocktails can be added to aquaculture diets containing large quantities of vegetable proteins which would otherwise be difficult to process by the animals and which could also be part of specialty diets for larval stages of shrimp and starter  
30 diets for salmonids where higher survival rates are

required. Krill enzymes may also conveniently be used to produce protein hydrolysates from other proteins to incorporate into diets or to improve the functional properties of these diets. Other potential applications would include the production of flavors, protein and peptide extraction from marine by products, protein and pigment recovery from shrimp and crab shell offal, the production of free amino acids and other benefits relating to the actions of these krill enzymes on biological materials.

10

Using the processes previously disclosed, it was desired to obtain enzymes from the previously autolysed krill preparations.

15

With reference to Figures 9 and 10, ultrafiltration membrane 303 was used with the krill hydrolysate 301 and with fresh krill 310. Since most of the krill-derived enzymes have molecular weights above 20,000 daltons, experiments were conducted to determine the most appropriate molecular weight cut-off ultrafiltration membrane to attempt a concentration of the aqueous phase enzyme-rich E.s. and E.p. extracts. It was revealed during experiments that total protease activity begins to become apparent in the filtrates at the 50,000 molecular weight cut off and up. On the other hand, trypsin-like activity is present in filtrates at 30,000 molecular weight cut off. It is therefore desirable to use a 10,000 dalton cut off membrane for filtration purposes.

20

25

In order to handle larger volumes of krill hydrolysate and to concentrate the enzyme extracts, a tangential flow filtration ("TFF") cartridge 302 was used using a 10,000 dalton molecular weight cut-off. One such  
5 cartridge commercially available is a Millipore Preparative Scale Tangential Flow Filtration cartridge. Such cartridges are intended to handle volumes from 100 ml to 100 liters, although it is readily possible to scale up such techniques to handle larger volumes, if desired. Before subjecting the  
10 krill extracts to TFF, they were centrifuged at 4000-10000 x G for twenty(20) minutes in a Beckman centrifuge 300 to clarify from solids and eliminate part of the fat. Rather than centrifugation, this clarification step can be replaced by prefiltration 303 with a larger pore filter. After  
15 centrifugation, the aqueous phase 305 containing the enzymes of interest was recover and stored at 4 deg. C. The autolysed krill extracts were run through a one square foot TFF cartridge 302 using a Hoechst displacement pump 304. The initial extract volume was about two(2) liters and was  
20 brought down to approximately 250-300 ml after four(4) to five(5) hours of operation (below 20 psi of pressure). It was revealed that enzymatic activity recovery differed significantly between the two samples (i.e., autolysed and freshly squeezed extracts).

25

By measuring the trypsin-like activity ("TLA"), it was found that the recovery of krill enzymes from the fresh frozen krill 310 was relatively smaller than the recovery from hydrolysed krill 301. However, the total units  
30 recovered after ultrafiltration were higher for fresh frozen

- 30 -

extracts. Accordingly, TLA could be recovered from either freshly squeezed or autolysed krill preparations. Since there was little or no enzymatic activity associated with the filtrate, it is apparent the proteins of interest were not leaching out through the membrane filter.

The resultant enzyme cocktail obtained by the ultrafiltration technique from both the hydrolysed and fresh krill 301, 310, respectively, could then be coupled with freeze drying 313 which would reduce the amount of water associated with the enzymes significantly which would reduce transportation costs. Subsequent processing could then be performed on the enzyme cocktails to further increase the purity and quality of the enzymes present.

15

Yet a further aspect of the invention relates to a method for removal of protein from crustacean wastes using the aforementioned krill enzyme extracts. With reference to Figure 12, a quantity of crustacean wastes 400, 401 is ground to dried particulate size by grinders 402, 403, respectively, with a portion of water added to facilitate this grinding. Various of a plurality of grinders which will accomplish this include a piranha pump, a macerator or cerator, all of which are known. Acid stabilized shell waste 400 is then de-watered through a de-watering system 404, many of which are readily known to be available, such as the Vincent screw press, wine presses or centrifuges. Non acid stabilized shell waste 401 has no need to be de-watered prior to the addition of enzymes. Water is conveniently added to the de-watered acid stabilized shell

30

- 31 -

waste 410 to facilitate enzymatic reaction. The shell waste 410 is transferred to a digesting tank 411 where an amount of krill enzyme cocktail 412 is added. The enzyme cocktail can be in either a concentrated or non-concentrated form  
5 consistent with squeezed extractions from the whole animal as has been described. The squeezed fractions are in the range of 25-75% of the whole animal depending on the amount of enzyme desired and the need to keep the enzyme with the krill to facilitate autolysis. The shell enzyme mixture is  
10 subjected to digestion in the digester 411 for a time period in the range of one(1) to forty-eight(48) hrs at a temperature in the range of 0 to 70 Celsius with an optimum temperature being approximately 45 deg. Celsius. Following the digestive process, the mixture is subjected to water  
15 removal 413 as has been described. Two fractions will result, a protein rich enzymatically active portion 414 and a shell material portion 415 high in chitin and low in protein. The liquid high protein portion 414 is low temperature dried or co-dried as earlier described or acid  
20 stablized. The shell portion 415 can then be further processed by the addition of more enzyme cocktail to facilitate further protein removal in further steps or can be subjected to traditional deproteinization or demineralization techniques as illustrated generally at 420.  
25 The extent of de-mineralization necessary can be greatly reduced by the storing of the shell waste for long periods of time while stabilized with acids, preferably formic.

In experiments which have been conducted to date,  
30 70kg of water was added to 210 kg of mechanically peeled

- 32 -

shrimp shell wastes. The slurry was subjected to grinding with a piranha pump to a suitable particle size. 60kg of this slurry was combined with 15 kg of Euphasia superba juice obtained by squeezing whole krill through a screw  
5 press 315 (Figure 11) to obtain 50% by weight of the animal in a liquid form. The shell juice mixture was subjected to digestion for six(6) hours at 45 deg. C. The mixture was dewatered by pressing through a Vincent screw press to obtain the protein rich enzymatically active portion and the  
10 shell ash portion 415, as described. The shell portion was approximately 7.5% by weight and the liquid portion made up the remainder. The liquid portion was acid stabilized with 3% by weight formic acid. The shell portion was washed and dried.

15

In a second trial conducted to establish the efficacy of using krill enzymes for the removal of protein from shrimp shell wastes and the benefit of reincorporating the superba squeezed solids, 26 kg of squeezed superba  
20 juice, obtained through the procedures described, was incubated with 10 kg water and 70 kg of ground shrimp shell for six(6) hours at 45 deg C. Samples were taken every hour and squeezed through a screw press. After six(6) hours, 14 kg of squeezed superba solids comprising the remainder of the  
25 whole animal after enzyme liquid removal were added into the mixture and hydrolyzed for an additional one and one-half (1.5) hours. The remaining slurry was squeezed and the separate fractions were frozen.

- 33 -

While specific embodiments of the invention have been described, such descriptions should be taken as illustrative of the invention only and not as limiting its scope as defined in accordance with the accompanying claims.

5

- 34 -

## WE CLAIM:

1. Method of producing a feed product comprising the steps of adding a predetermined quantity of  
5 krill hydrolysate to a quantity of liquid marine protein and a quantity of dry carrier to produce a mixture and co-drying said mixture to obtain an end product.
2. Method as in claim 1 wherein said  
10 mixture is mixed prior to co-drying said mixture.
3. Method as in claim 2 wherein said mixture is subjected to chemical and/or enzymatic reaction for a predetermined time period prior to co-drying said  
15 mixture.
4. Method as in claim 3 wherein said mixture is co-dried in a dryer or other dehydrator.
- 20 5. Method as in claim 4 wherein said mixture is ground prior to being subject to said chemical reaction.
6. Method as in claim 5 wherein said  
25 mixture is cooled following drying of said mixture in said dryer.
7. Method as in claim 6 wherein said dry carrier may be one or a combination of dry marine protein

- 35 -

meals, dried krill products, dried vegetable and dried fish product.

8. Method as in claim 7 wherein said liquid  
5 marine protein may be liquid fish product.

9. Method as in claim 8 wherein temperature  
sensitive enzyme active or other bioactive dry products are  
added or readded to said mixture following said drying of  
10 said mixture.

10. Method as in claim 9 and further  
comprising mixing said temperature sensitive enzyme active  
products with said mixture.

15 11. Method as in claim 1 wherein said  
mixture is co-dried in a dryer or other dehydrator.

12. Method as in claim 11 wherein said dryer  
20 includes an agitator to agitate said mixture entering said  
dryer.

13. Method as in claim 12 wherein said dryer  
further includes a drying tower downstream from said  
25 agitator and a heat source to provide heat to said tower.

14. Method as in claim 13 and further  
comprising a classifier downstream of said tower for  
separating said mixture, said mixture comprising relatively

- 36 -

lighter and relatively heavier particles, said classifier separating said lighter from said heavier particles.

15. Method as in claim 14 wherein said  
5 relatively heavier particles are returned to said agitator.

16. Method as in claim 14 and further comprising a cyclone downstream from said classifier.

10 17. Method as in claim 16 wherein said cyclone removes further moisture from said relatively lighter particles.

18. Method as in claim 17 wherein said  
15 relatively lighter particles are separated into relatively smaller and relatively larger particles.

19. Method as in claim 18 wherein said  
20 relatively larger particles are returned to said agitator.

20. A feed product or additive produced by the method as in any one of claims 1 to 19.

21. Co-drying apparatus for drying a mixture  
25 of krill hydrolysate, liquid marine product and a dry carrier comprising a dryer for agitating, heating and separating particles of said mixture.

- 37 -

22. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 21 and further comprising a mixer for blending said mixture prior to said mixture entering said dryer.

5 23. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 22 and further comprising a reactor cell for treating said mixture prior to said mixture entering said dryer.

10 24. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 23 and further comprising a grinder for grinding said mixture prior to said mixture entering said reactor cell.

15 25. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 24 wherein said dryer produces a product.

26. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 25 and further comprising a mixer for mixing said product following said product exiting said dryer.

20 27. Co-drying apparatus as in claim 21 wherein said dryer comprises a source of warm air, an agitator for agitating said mixture following entry of said mixture into said dryer, a tower to expose said mixture to said warm air, a first classifier to separate the relatively  
25 lighter particles of said mixture from the relatively heavier particles of said mixture, a cyclone for drying said relatively lighter particles separated from said relatively heavier particles, and a second classifier to separate relatively lighter particles and relatively heavier

- 38 -

particles constituting said relatively lighter particles in said cyclone.

28. Co-dryer as in claim 27 and further  
5 comprising a fan to move said warm air within said dryer.

29. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract  
from a liquid krill hydrolysate comprising the steps of  
subjecting said hydrolysate to centrifugation to obtain a  
10 clarified liquid and further subjecting said clarified  
liquid to ultrafiltration using a membrane with a capacity  
to retain said enzymes having a molecular weight greater  
than 10,000 daltons.

15 30. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract  
from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 29 and further  
comprising the step of storing said clarified liquid at a  
reduced temperature for a predetermined time period.

20 31. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract  
from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 30 wherein said  
ultrafiltration is achieved using a tangential flow  
filtration system.

25 32. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract  
from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 31 wherein said  
enzyme extract obtained from said ultrafiltration is freeze  
dried.

- 39 -

33. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 32 wherein said krill is *Euphausia superba*.

5 34. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from a liquid krill hydrolysate as in claim 32 wherein said krill is *Euphausia pacifica*.

10 35. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill comprising the steps of squeezing said krill to obtain an aqueous extract and subjecting said aqueous extract to ultrafiltration with a membrane adapted to retain enzymes having molecular weights above 10,000 daltons.

15 36. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 35 wherein said ultrafiltration is achieved using a tangential flow filtration system allowing enzymes to retain which have molecular weights  
20 above 10,000 daltons.

25 37. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 36 and further including the step of centrifuging said aqueous extract prior to subjecting said extract to ultrafiltration.

30 38. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 37 and further comprising the step of storing said aqueous extract at a reduced temperature following said centrifuging.

- 40 -

39. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 38 wherein said reduced temperature is approximately 4 degrees Celsius.
- 5 40. Method of obtaining an enzyme extract from fresh krill as in claim 39 and further comprising subjecting said enzyme extract obtained from said ultrafiltration to low temperature drying.
- 10 41. Product produced by the method as in any one of claims 29 to 39.
42. Method for removal of protein from non-stabilized crustacean shell wastes, comprising grinding said  
15 crustacean wastes and water to a relatively small particulate size, transferring said small particulate size product to a digester, adding a predetermined quantity of krill enzymes to said digester, subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined time period at a predetermined  
20 temperature, dewatering said digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion of shell material relatively high in chitin and low in protein.
- 25 43. Method for removal of protein from acid stabilized shell wastes comprising grinding said crustacean wastes to a described small particulate size, transferring desired size shell wastes to a digester, adding a  
predetermined quantity of krill enzymes to said digester,  
30 subjecting said mixture to digestion for a predetermined

- 41 -

time period at a predetermined temperature, dewatering said digested product to obtain a first portion being relatively enzymatically active and relatively high in protein and a second portion of shell ash relatively high in chitin and low in protein.

44. Method as in claim 42 and further comprising drying said liquid portion by means of low temperature drying to preserve the enzymatic activity.

45. Method as in claim 44 wherein said drying is by way of a flash drier.

46. Method as in claim 45 wherein said drying is by way of a fluidized bed drier.

47. Method as in claim 42 and further comprising adding krill enzyme material to said shell material portion.

48. Method as in claim 43 and further comprising adding krill enzyme material to said shell material portion.

49. Method as in claim 42 wherein said product is subject to digestion between approximately 0-70 degrees Celsius and for times between 30 minutes and several hours.

- 42 -

50. Method as in claim 43 wherein said product is subject to digestion between approximately 0-70 degrees Celsius.

5 51. Method of producing a concentrated krill hydrolysate comprising the steps of harvesting, digesting and evaporating the krill hydrolysate to provide a partial hydrolysis for a predetermined time and temperature so as to enhance the nutrient characteristics of said krill.

10

52. Method of producing a dry krill premix or feedstuff comprising the steps of producing a predetermined amount of concentrated krill hydrolysate, producing a predetermined amount of dry matter and mixing  
15 said concentrated krill hydrolysate and said dry carrier matter and co-drying said mixture.

54. Method as in claim 52 wherein the dry matter is selected from the group of vegetable and/or  
20 vegetable and/or animal protein meals and by products.

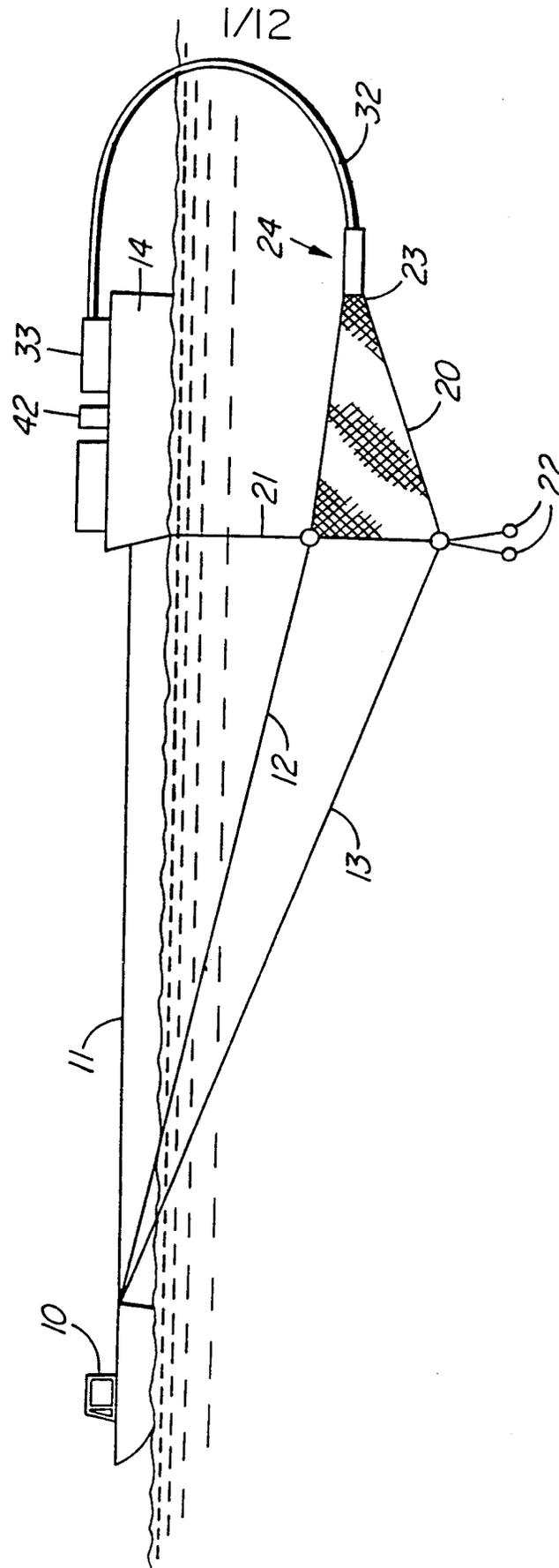


FIG. 1A

2/12

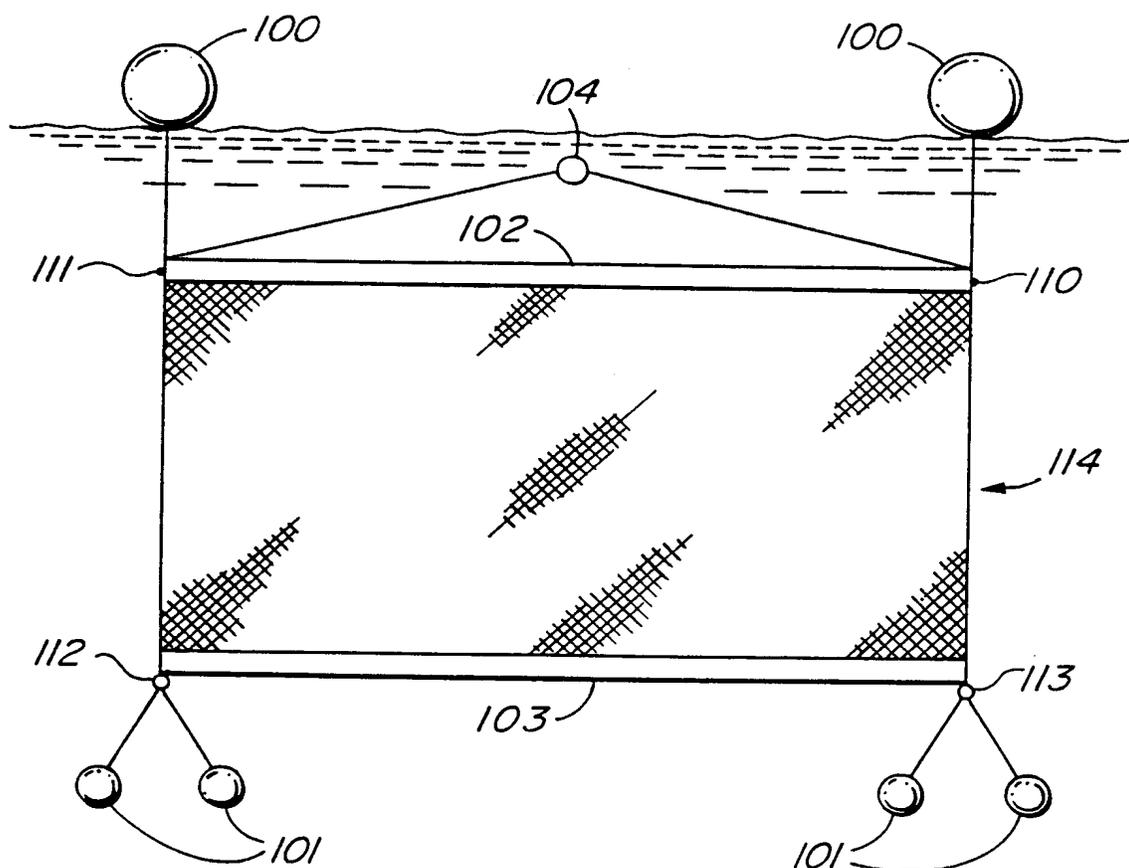


FIG. 1B

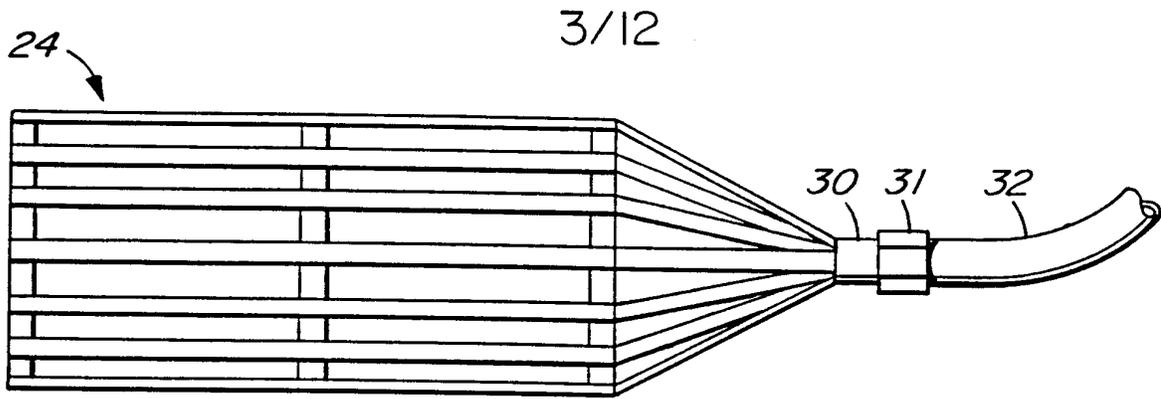


FIG. 2A

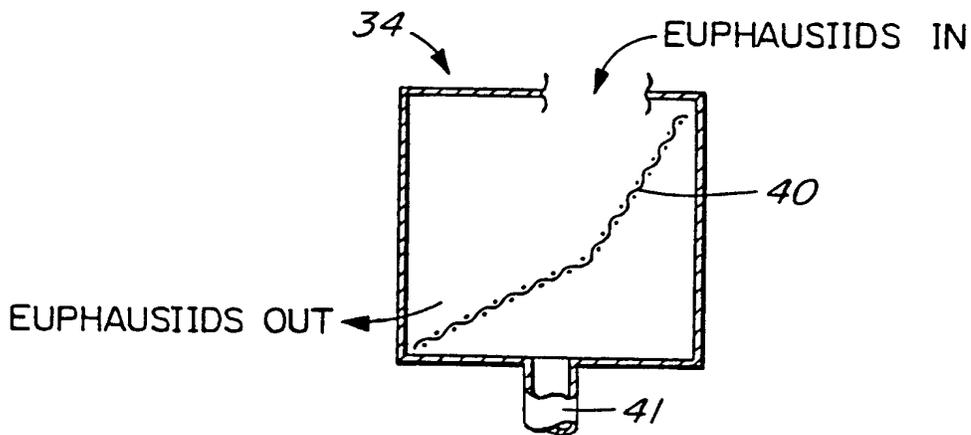


FIG. 2B

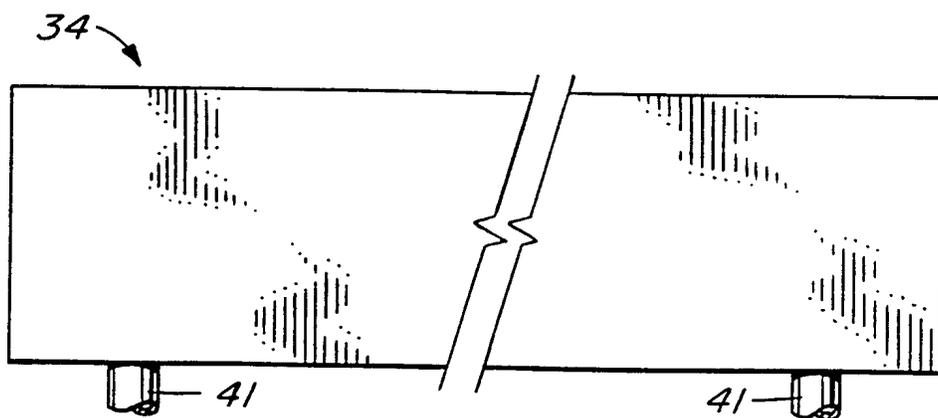


FIG. 2C

4/12

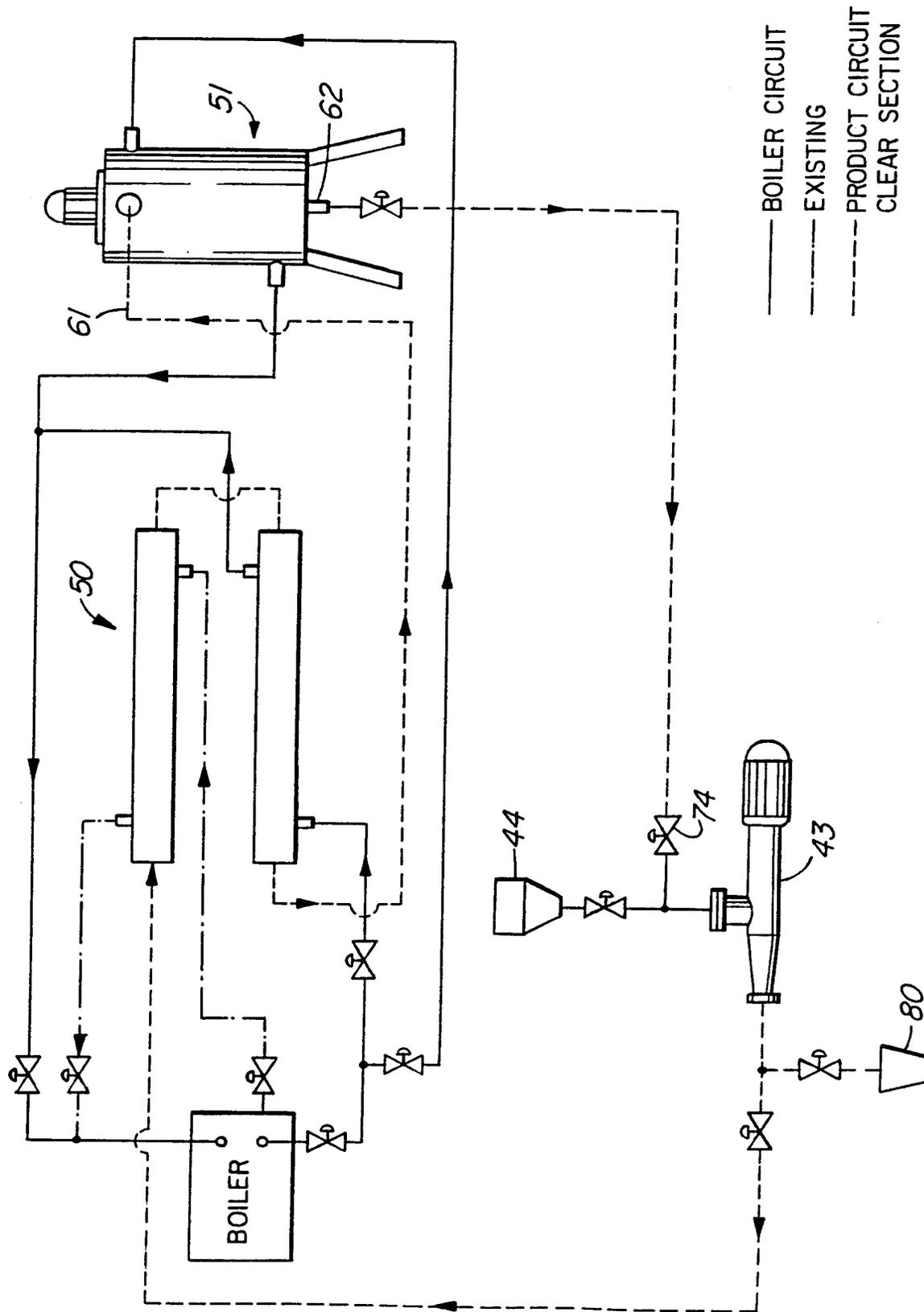


FIG. 3

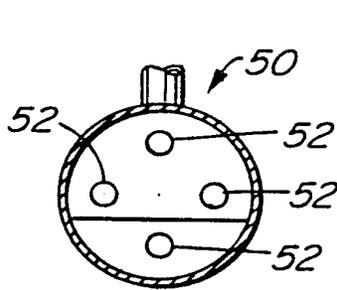


FIG. 4A

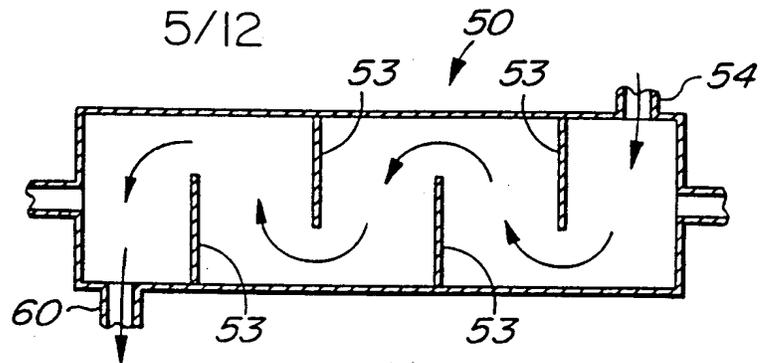


FIG. 4B

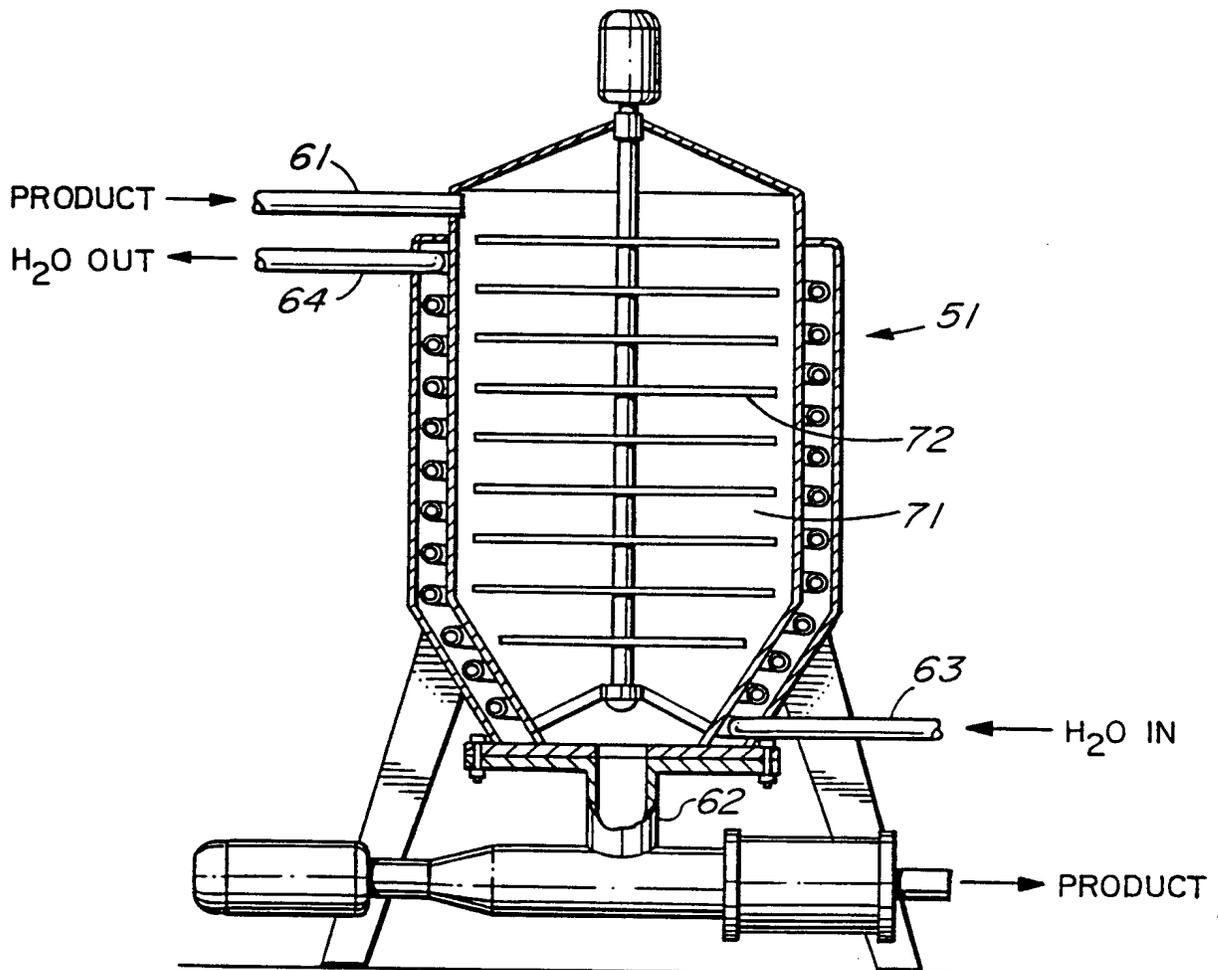


FIG. 5

6/12

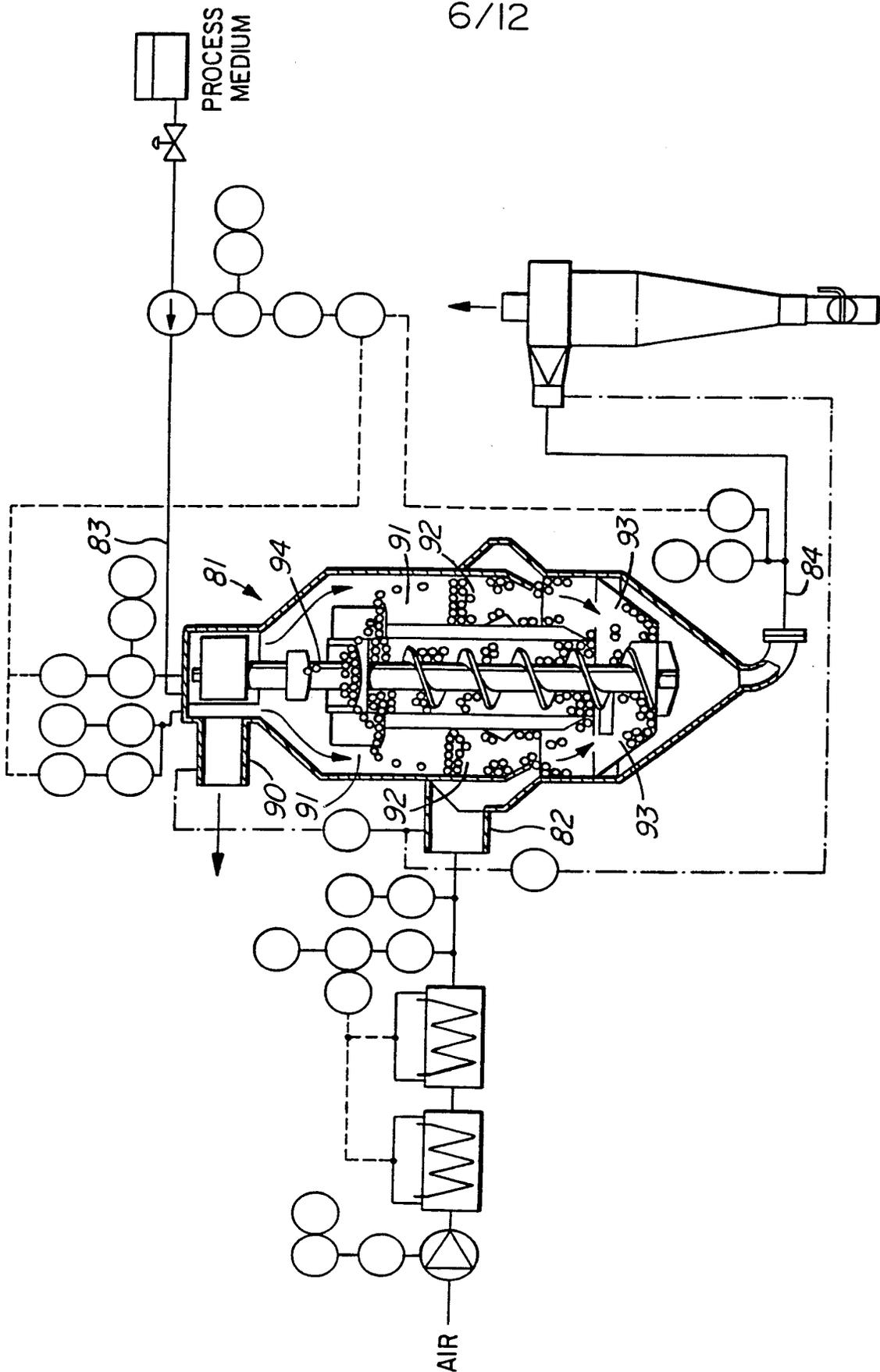


FIG. 6

7/12

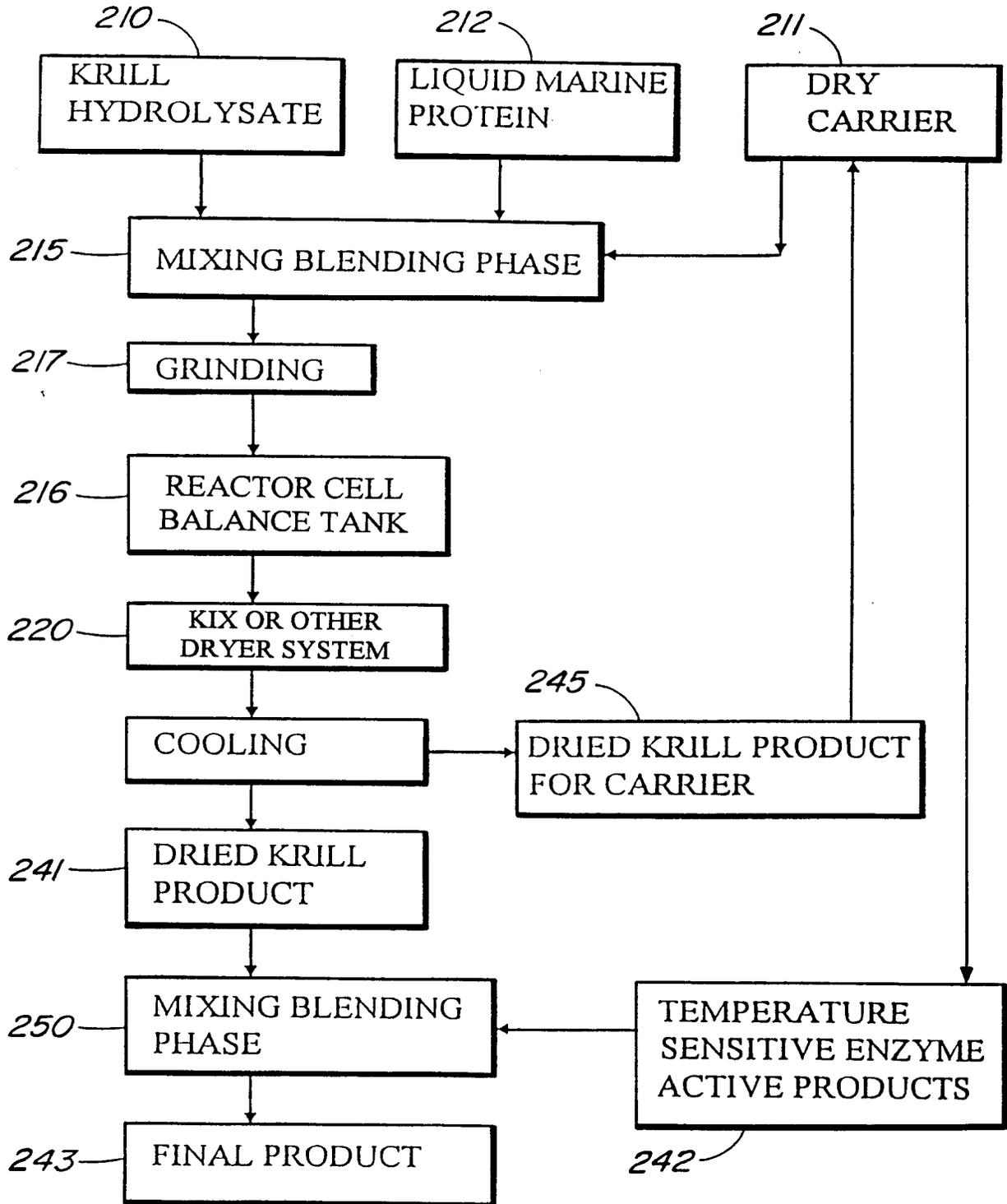


FIG. 7

8/12

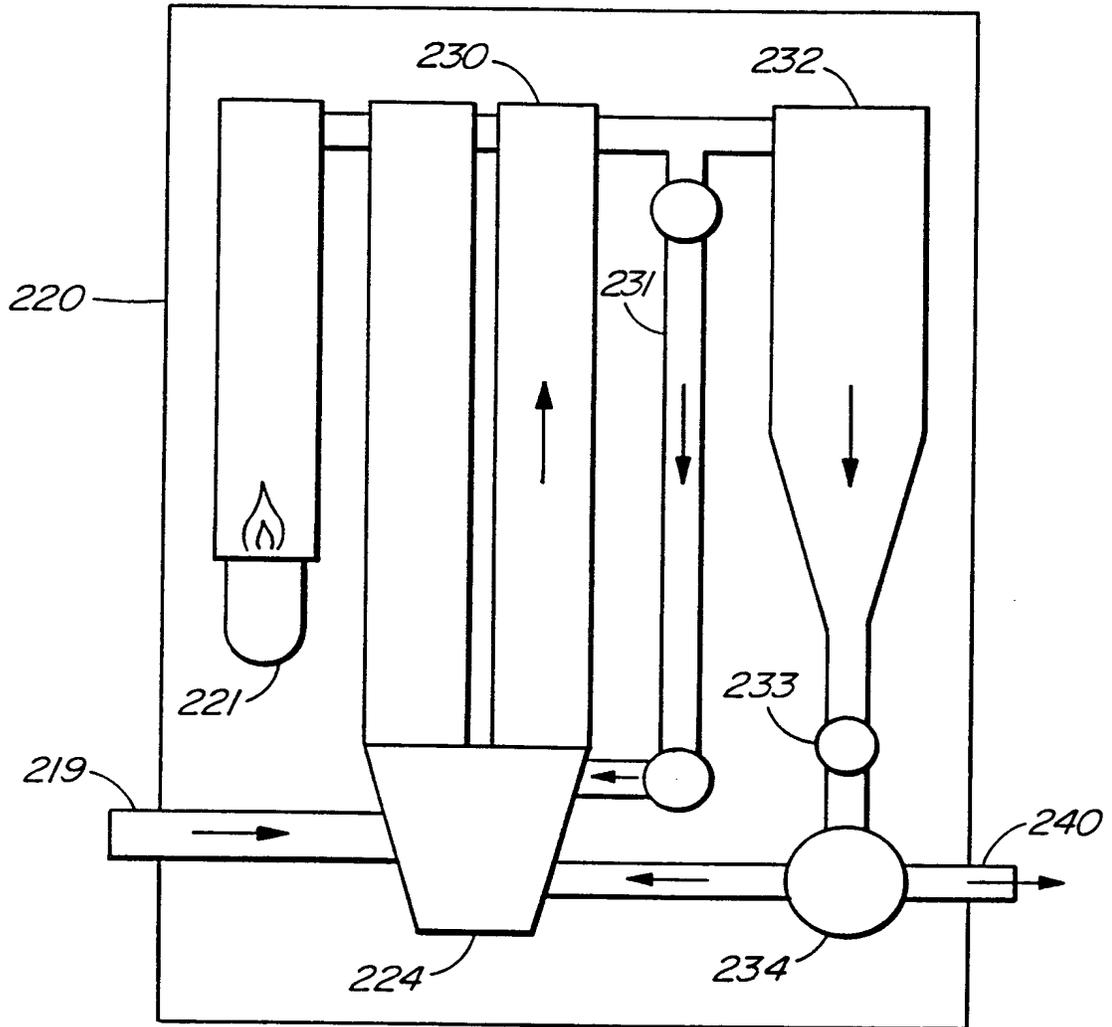


FIG. 8

9/12

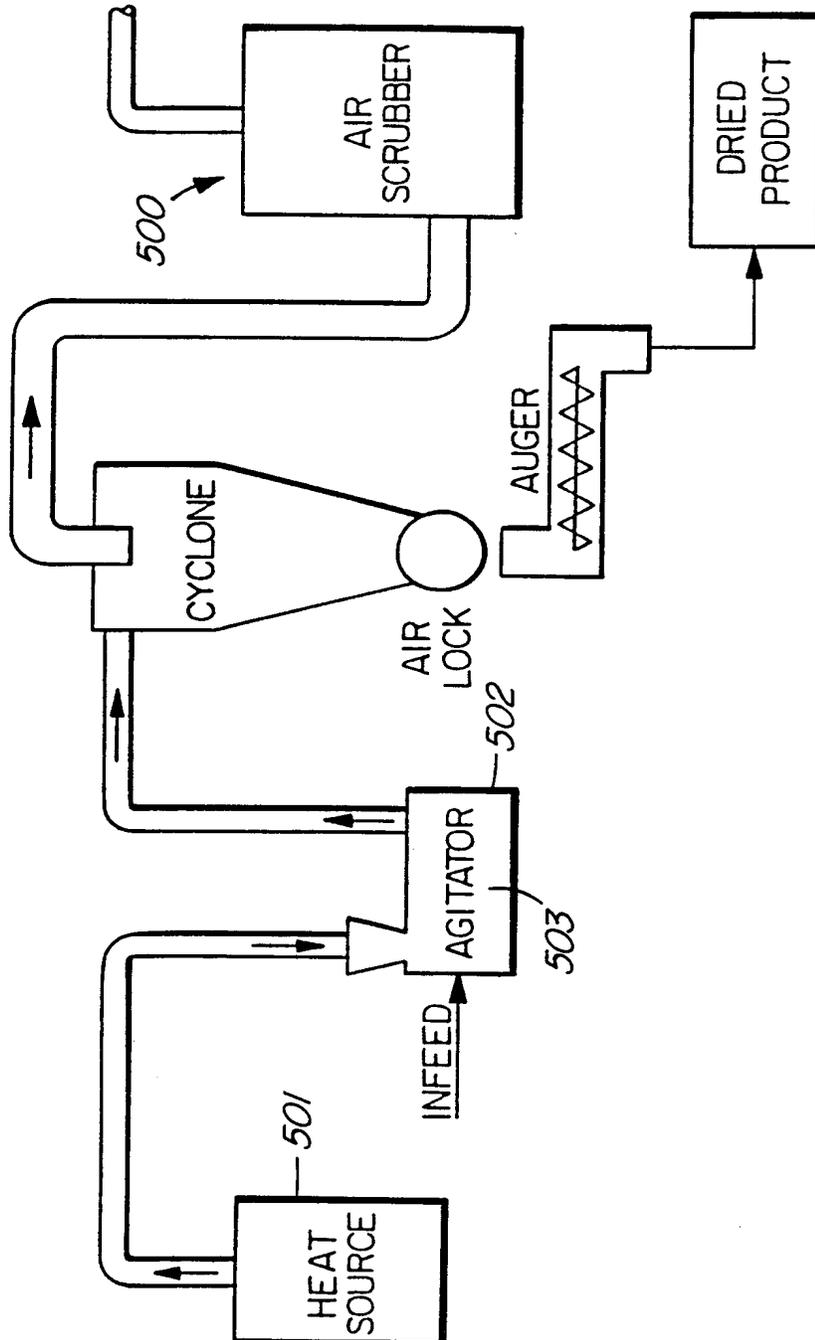


FIG. 9

10/12

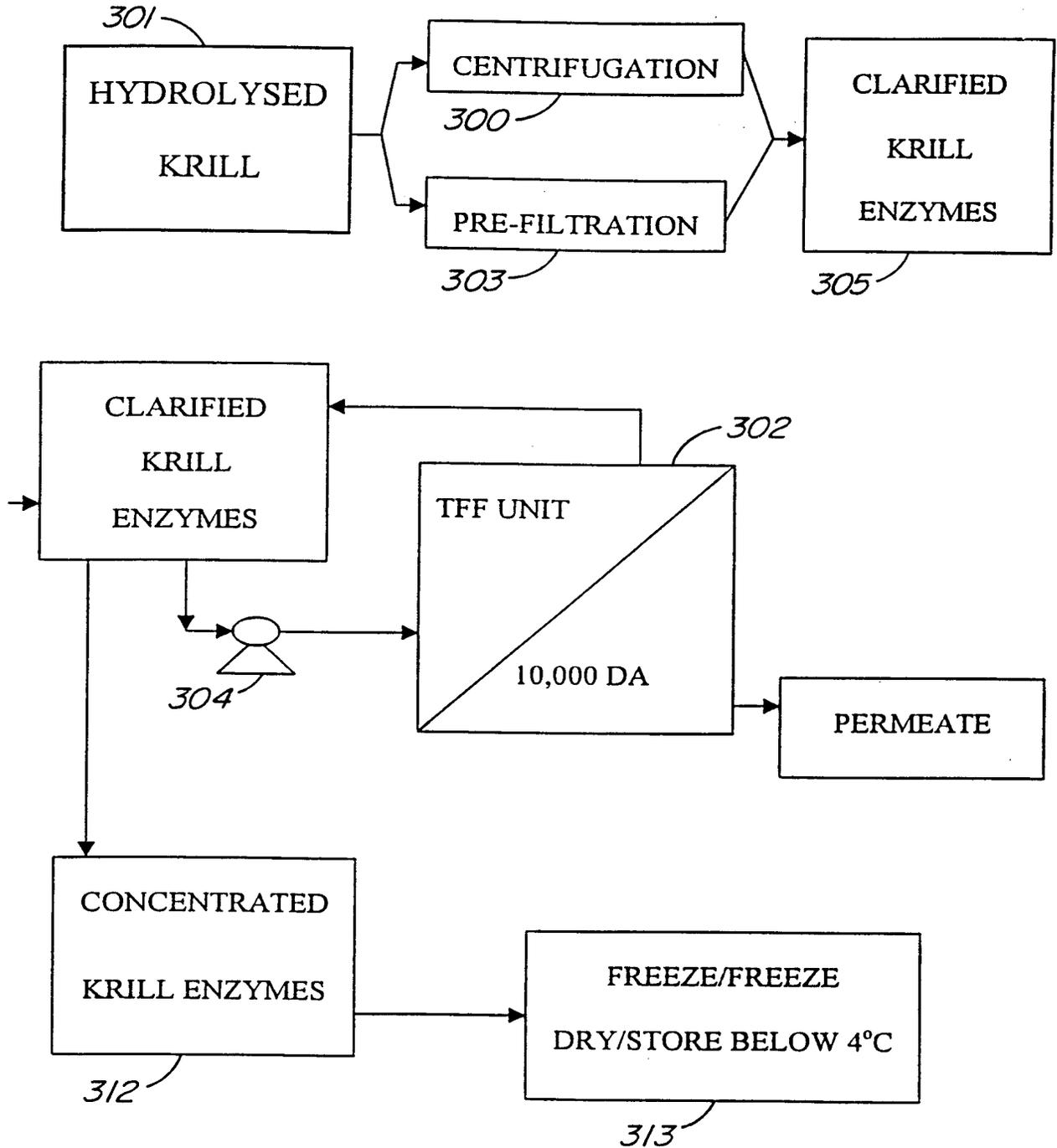


FIG. 10

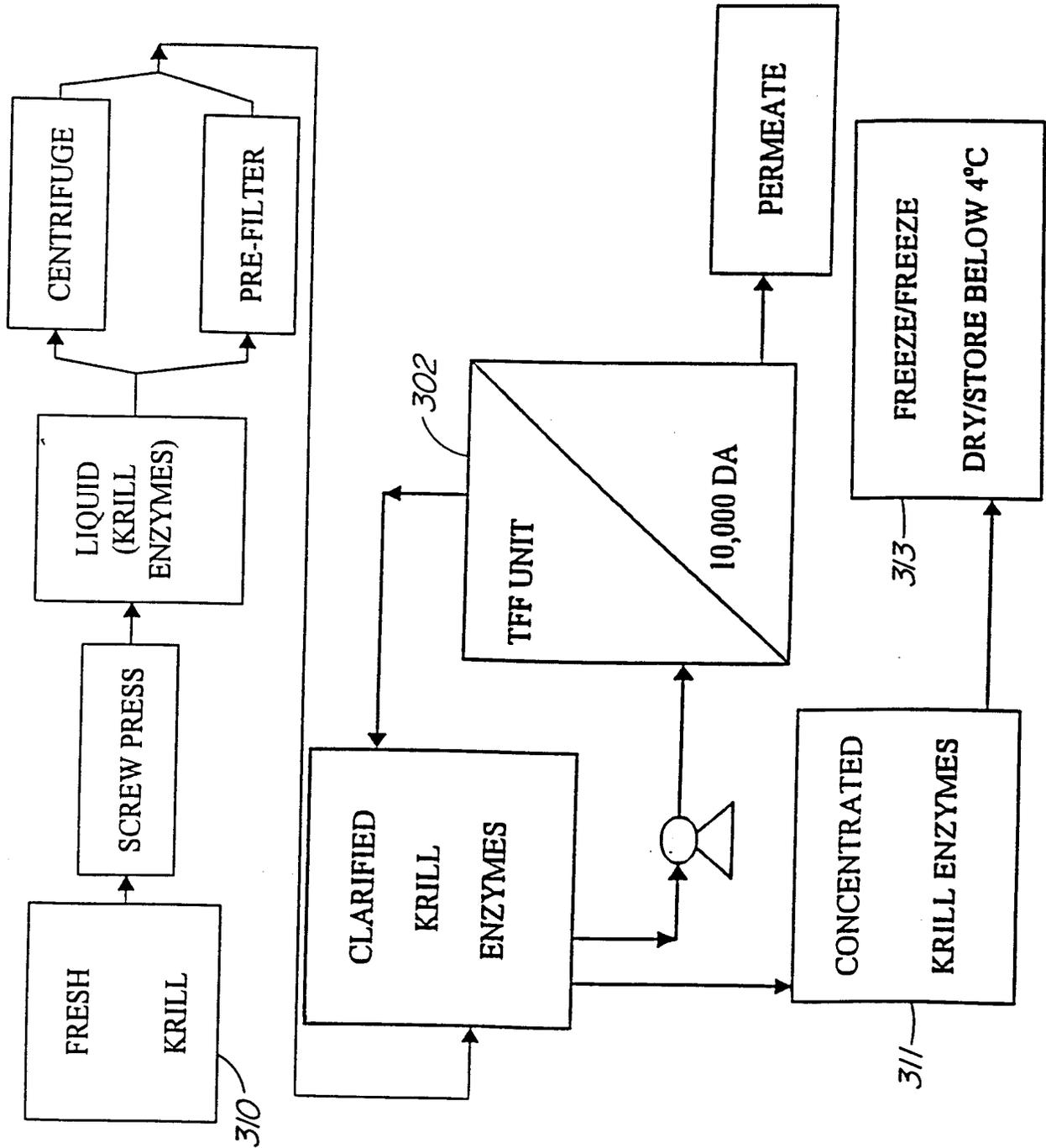


FIG. 11

12/12

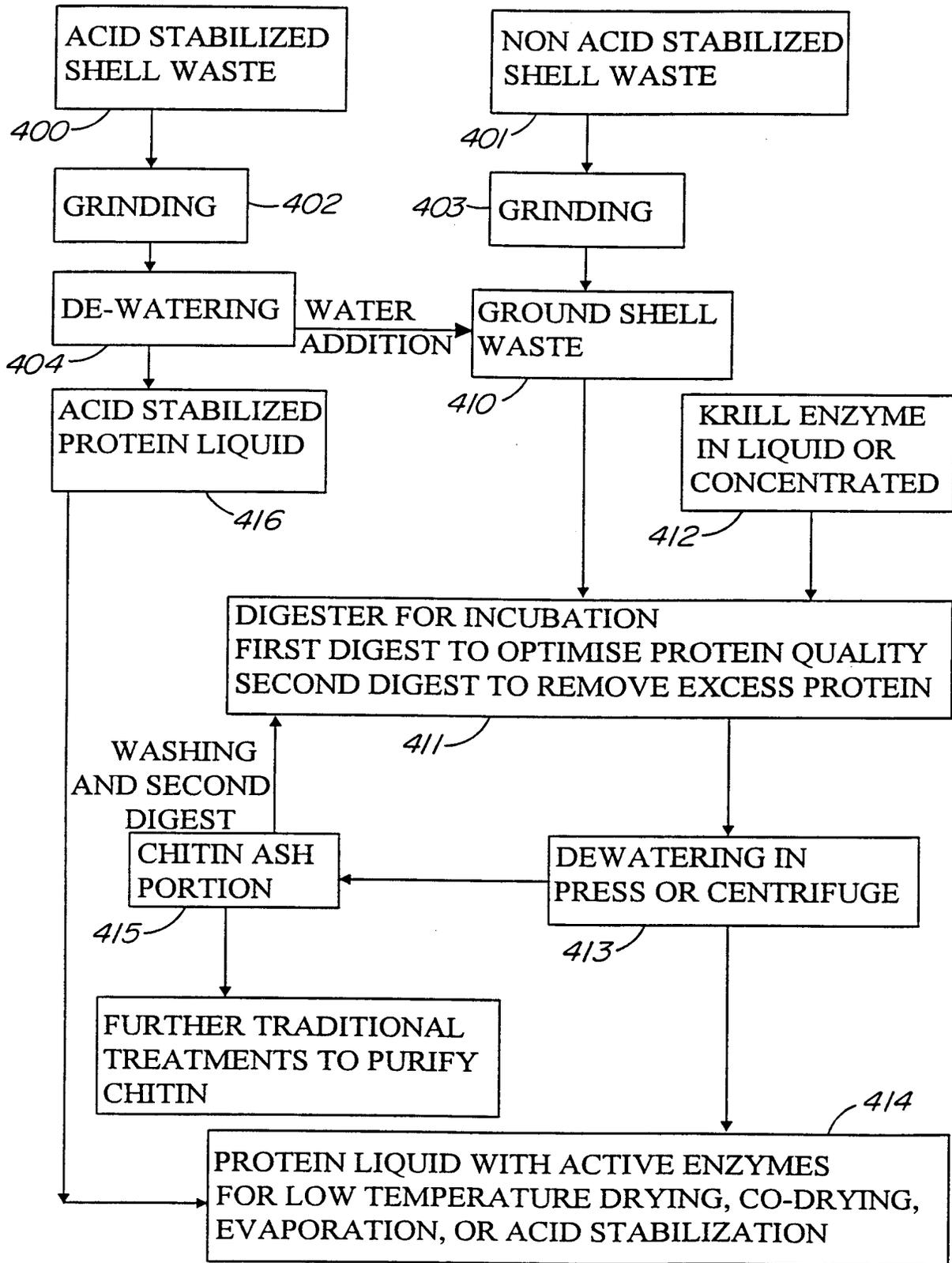


FIG. 12

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/CA 99/00075

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**

IPC 6 A23K1/10 A23K1/16 A23K1/18 A23J1/04 A23N17/00  
C12N9/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 A23K A23J C12N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P, X	WO 98 34498 A (BIOZYME SYSTEMS INC ;SAXBY DAVID J (CA); SPENCE JOHN A (CA); ALOIS) 13 August 1998 see the whole document ---	1-54
X	DATABASE WPI Section Ch, Week 8447 Derwent Publications Ltd., London, GB; Class C03, AN 84-293719 XP002070859 & SU 1 084 005 A (N BASSIN FISHING IND) , 7 April 1984 see abstract ---	1, 20, 52
X	WO 95 22893 A (SPECIALTY MARINE FEEDS INC) 31 August 1995 see page 15, line 19 - page 17, line 19 see claims 11-28, 30-46 ---	51
	-/--	

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

9 June 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

29/06/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nt,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Dekeirel, M

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/CA 99/00075

**C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 89 01031 A (PHARMACIA AB) 9 February 1989 see page 5, paragraph 2 see page 7, paragraph 1 see examples 1-3 see claim 1	29-34, 41
A	----	35-40
X	WO 89 10960 A (PHARMACIA AB) 16 November 1989 see page 8, last paragraph see page 11, paragraph 3 - paragraph 5 see page 14, paragraph 3 see page 27, paragraph 4 see claims 1,7,17	42, 43
X	WO 90 05026 A (AKT CONSULTANTS) 17 May 1990 see figure 1	21, 27
A	----	1, 20, 52
A	PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 017, no. 315 (C-1071), 16 June 1993 & JP 05 030923 A (RIKEN VITAMIN CO LTD), 9 February 1993 see abstract	1, 20, 52
A	DATABASE WPI Section Ch, Week 9602 Derwent Publications Ltd., London, GB; Class D13, AN 96-018544 XP002070860 & RU 2 034 492 C (TROITSKII B N) , 10 May 1995 see abstract	1, 20, 52
	-----	

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/CA 99/00075

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9834498	A	13-08-1998	CA 2197137	A 07-08-1998
			AU 5976698	A 26-08-1998
WO 9522893	A	31-08-1995	CA 2134515	A 28-04-1996
			AU 1802695	A 11-09-1995
			CN 1146709	A 02-04-1997
			EP 0758842	A 26-02-1997
			FI 963343	A 27-08-1996
			JP 10500004	T 06-01-1998
WO 8901031	A	09-02-1989	AT 124085	T 15-07-1995
			AU 2259788	A 01-03-1989
			DE 3854050	D 27-07-1995
			EP 0393035	A 24-10-1990
			JP 2504465	T 20-12-1990
WO 8910960	A	16-11-1989	NONE	
WO 9005026	A	17-05-1990	AU 4518389	A 28-05-1990
			CA 2002193	A 03-05-1990
			DK 158990	A 22-08-1990
			EP 0403608	A 27-12-1990
			GR 89100729	A 31-12-1990
			PT 92192	A, B 31-05-1990
			US 5105560	A 21-04-1992

(12) DEMANDE INTERNATIONALE PUBLIÉE EN VERTU DU TRAITÉ DE COOPÉRATION  
EN MATIÈRE DE BREVETS (PCT)

(19) Organisation Mondiale de la Propriété  
Intellectuelle  
Bureau international



(43) Date de la publication internationale  
26 octobre 2006 (26.10.2006)

PCT

(10) Numéro de publication internationale  
WO 2006/111633 A3

(51) Classification internationale des brevets :  
A61K 35/60 (2006.01) A61P 17/00 (2006.01)

(21) Numéro de la demande internationale :  
PCT/FR2006/000792

(22) Date de dépôt international : 11 avril 2006 (11.04.2006)

(25) Langue de dépôt : français

(26) Langue de publication : français

(30) Données relatives à la priorité :  
0503827 18 avril 2005 (18.04.2005) FR  
0506496 27 juin 2005 (27.06.2005) FR

CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, LY, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) États désignés (sauf indication contraire, pour tout titre de protection régionale disponible) : ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), eurasiatique (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), européen (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

**Déclarations en vertu de la règle 4.17 :**

- relative au droit du déposant de revendiquer la priorité de la demande antérieure (règle 4.17.iii)
- relative à la qualité d'inventeur (règle 4.17.iv)

**Publiée :**

- avec rapport de recherche internationale

(88) Date de publication du rapport de recherche internationale: 5 avril 2007

En ce qui concerne les codes à deux lettres et autres abréviations, se référer aux "Notes explicatives relatives aux codes et abréviations" figurant au début de chaque numéro ordinaire de la Gazette du PCT.

(71) Déposant (pour tous les États désignés sauf US) : SC DICOPHAR [FR/FR]; 10 Allée de Corrèze, F-31770 Colomiers (FR).

(72) Inventeur; et

(75) Inventeur/Déposant (pour US seulement) : DUPONT, Paul [FR/FR]; 10 Allée de Corrèze, F-31770 Colomiers (FR).

(74) Mandataire : MORELLE, Guy; Cabinet Morelle & Bardou, SC, Parc Technologique du Canal, BP 72253, F-31522 Ramonville Saint Agne Cedex (FR).

(81) États désignés (sauf indication contraire, pour tout titre de protection nationale disponible) : AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO,

(54) Title: USE OF LECITHIN AS A MEDICAMENT FOR TREATING PSORIASIS

(54) Titre : UTILISATION DE LA LECITHINE COMME MEDICAMENT DANS LE TRAITEMENT DU PSORIASIS

(57) Abstract: The invention relates to the use of lecithin or of an extract rich in lecithin for preparing a pharmaceutical composition that is useful in the prevention and therapeutic treatment of new or previous dermatites, particularly psoriasis. The invention also relates to therapeutic compositions containing lecithin or an extract rich in lecithin. According to one advantageous characteristic, the phospholipids that compose the lecithin are esterified by omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids, in particular, by docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA), docosapentaenoic acid (DPA) or by an alkyl glycerol. The lecithin can be a marine lecithin, i.e. an extract of a marine organism selected among fish, shrimp, krill, zooplankton, algae, phytoplankton or a mixture thereof, of which the advantage resides in the fact that its phospholipids, particularly the phosphatidylcholine, are naturally esterified by omega-3 fatty acids, and essentially by DHA and EPA.

(57) Abrégé : La présente invention se rapporte à l'emploi de la lécithine ou d'un extrait riche en lécithine pour la préparation d'une composition pharmaceutique utile dans la prévention et le traitement thérapeutique des dermatoses récentes ou anciennes, notamment du psoriasis. Les compositions thérapeutiques comprenant de la lécithine ou d'un extrait riche en lécithine sont également objet de la présente invention. Selon une caractéristique avantageuse de la présente invention, les phospholipides composant la lécithine sont estérifiés par des acides gras polyinsaturés du type oméga3, en particulier par l'acide docosahexanoïque (DHA), l'acide eicosapentanoïque (EPA), l'acide docosapentanoïque (DPA) ou par un alkyl-glycérol. La lécithine peut être une "lécithine marine" c'est-à-dire qu'elle est extraite d'un organisme marin choisi parmi les poissons, les crevettes, le krill, le zooplancton, les algues, le phytoplancton ou d'un mélange de ceux-ci, dont l'avantage réside dans le fait que ses phospholipides, notamment la phosphatidylcholine, sont naturellement estérifiés par des acides gras de type oméga3, et essentiellement par le DHA et l'EPA.

WO 2006/111633 A3

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No  
PCT/FR2006/000792A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER  
INV. A61K35/60 A61P17/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
A61K A61P

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data, FSTA, EMBASE, BIOSIS

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 98/42348 A (CRANDALL, WILSON, TRAFTON) 1 October 1998 (1998-10-01) page 3, lines 26-34 page 5, lines 9,10 page 6, lines 7-27	1-4, 11, 12
X	WO 2005/002591 A (HASSANIN, FOUAD, ABDELAZIZ, AHMED) 13 January 2005 (2005-01-13) page 1, lines 13-25	1-3, 11
X	US 2002/012648 A1 (ORTHOEFER FRANK T) 31 January 2002 (2002-01-31) paragraph [0024]; claims 1-3,10; table 1  -/--	1-4, 6, 11, 12, 14

 Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. See patent family annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents :

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- \*T\* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- \*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- \*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- \*Z\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

27 September 2006

Date of mailing of the international search report

05/10/2006

Name and mailing address of the ISA/  
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

ESCOLAR BLASCO, P

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No  
PCT/FR2006/000792

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	<p>ESCOBAR S O ET AL: "TOPICAL FISH OIL IN PSORIASIS-A CONTROLLED AND BLIND STUDY" CLINICAL AND EXPERIMENTAL DERMATOLOGY, BLACKWELL SCIENTIFIC PUBLICATIONS, OXFORD, GB, vol. 17, no. 3, 1992, pages 159-162, XP009030105 ISSN: 0307-6938 abstract page 161, left-hand column, paragraphs 3,4; figure 1</p>	1-18
A	<p>MAYSER P ET AL: "[omega]-3 Fatty acid-based lipid infusion in patients with chronic plaque psoriasis: Results of a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled, multicenter trial" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN ACADEMY OF DERMATOLOGY 1998 UNITED STATES, vol. 38, no. 4, 1998, pages 539-547, XP002360544 ISSN: 0190-9622 abstract; table 1</p>	1-18

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No  
PCT/FR2006/000792

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9842348	A	01-10-1998	AU	2550397 A	20-10-1998
WO 2005002591	A	13-01-2005	NONE		
US 2002012648	A1	31-01-2002	US	6312703 B1	06-11-2001

**RAPPORT DE RECHERCHE INTERNATIONALE**

Demande internationale n°

PCT/FR2006/000792

**A. CLASSEMENT DE L'OBJET DE LA DEMANDE**  
 INV. A61K35/60 A61P17/00

Selon la classification internationale des brevets (CIB) ou à la fois selon la classification nationale et la CIB

**B. DOMAINES SUR LESQUELS LA RECHERCHE A PORTE**

Documentation minimale consultée (système de classification suivi des symboles de classement)  
 A61K A61P

Documentation consultée autre que la documentation minimale dans la mesure où ces documents relèvent des domaines sur lesquels a porté la recherche

Base de données électronique consultée au cours de la recherche internationale (nom de la base de données, et si cela est réalisable, termes de recherche utilisés)  
 EPO-Internal, WPI Data, FSTA, EMBASE, BIOSIS

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERES COMME PERTINENTS**

Catégorie*	Identification des documents cités, avec, le cas échéant, l'indication des passages pertinents	no. des revendications visées
X	WO 98/42348 A (CRANDALL, WILSON, TRAFTON) 1 octobre 1998 (1998-10-01) page 3, ligne 26-34 page 5, ligne 9,10 page 6, ligne 7-27	1-4, 11, 12
X	WO 2005/002591 A (HASSANIN, FOUAD, ABDELAZIZ, AHMED) 13 janvier 2005 (2005-01-13) page 1, ligne 13-25	1-3, 11
X	US 2002/012648 A1 (ORTHOEFER FRANK T) 31 janvier 2002 (2002-01-31) alinéa [0024]; revendications 1-3,10; tableau 1	1-4, 6, 11, 12, 14

Voir la suite du cadre C pour la fin de la liste des documents

Les documents de familles de brevets sont indiqués en annexe

\* Catégories spéciales de documents cités:

- \*A\* document définissant l'état général de la technique, non considéré comme particulièrement pertinent
- \*E\* document antérieur, mais publié à la date de dépôt international ou après cette date
- \*L\* document pouvant jeter un doute sur une revendication de priorité ou cité pour déterminer la date de publication d'une autre citation ou pour une raison spéciale (telle qu'indiquée)
- \*O\* document se référant à une divulgation orale, à un usage, à une exposition ou tous autres moyens
- \*P\* document publié avant la date de dépôt international, mais postérieurement à la date de priorité revendiquée

- \*T\* document ultérieur publié après la date de dépôt international ou la date de priorité et n'appartenant pas à l'état de la technique pertinent, mais cité pour comprendre le principe ou la théorie constituant la base de l'invention
- \*X\* document particulièrement pertinent; l'invention revendiquée ne peut être considérée comme nouvelle ou comme impliquant une activité inventive par rapport au document considéré isolément
- \*Y\* document particulièrement pertinent; l'invention revendiquée ne peut être considérée comme impliquant une activité inventive lorsque le document est associé à un ou plusieurs autres documents de même nature, cette combinaison étant évidente pour une personne du métier
- \*Z\* document qui fait partie de la même famille de brevets

Date à laquelle la recherche internationale a été effectivement achevée

27 septembre 2006

Date d'expédition du présent rapport de recherche internationale

05/10/2006

Nom et adresse postale de l'administration chargée de la recherche internationale  
 Office Européen des Brevets, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
 Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
 Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Fonctionnaire autorisé

ESCOLAR BLASCO, P

C(suite). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERES COMME PERTINENTS		
Catégorie*	Identification des documents cités, avec, le cas échéant, l'indication des passages pertinents	no. des revendications visées
A	<p>ESCOBAR S O ET AL: "TOPICAL FISH OIL IN PSORIASIS-A CONTROLLED AND BLIND STUDY" CLINICAL AND EXPERIMENTAL DERMATOLOGY, BLACKWELL SCIENTIFIC PUBLICATIONS, OXFORD, GB, vol. 17, no. 3, 1992, pages 159-162, XP009030105 ISSN: 0307-6938 abrégé page 161, colonne de gauche, alinéas 3,4; figure 1</p>	1-18
A	<p>MAYSER P ET AL: "[omega]-3 Fatty acid-based lipid infusion in patients with chronic plaque psoriasis: Results of a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled, multicenter trial" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN ACADEMY OF DERMATOLOGY 1998 UNITED STATES, vol. 38, no. 4, 1998, pages 539-547, XP002360544 ISSN: 0190-9622 abrégé; tableau 1</p>	1-18

**RAPPORT DE RECHERCHE INTERNATIONALE**

Renseignements relatifs aux membres de familles de brevets

Demande internationale n°

PCT/FR2006/000792

Document brevet cité au rapport de recherche		Date de publication	Membre(s) de la famille de brevet(s)	Date de publication
WO 9842348	A	01-10-1998	AU 2550397 A	20-10-1998
WO 2005002591	A	13-01-2005	AUCUN	
US 2002012648	A1	31-01-2002	US 6312703 B1	06-11-2001

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
1 November 2007 (01.11.2007)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
WO 2007/123424 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:

C11B 7/00 (2006.01) A23L 1/48 (2006.01)  
C11B 1/10 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/NZ2007/000087

(22) International Filing Date: 20 April 2007 (20.04.2007)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:

546681 20 April 2006 (20.04.2006) NZ

(71) Applicants and

(72) Inventors: CATCHPOLE, Owen John, [NZ/NZ]; C/- Industrial Research Limited, Gracefield Research Centre, Gracefield Road, Lower Hutt (NZ). TALLON, Stephen John, [NZ/NZ]; C/- Industrial Research Limited, Gracefield Research Centre, Gracefield Road, Lower Hutt (NZ).

(74) Agents: ADAMS, Matthew, D et al.; A J Park, 6th Floor Huddart Parker Building, Post Office Square, P O Box 949, Wellington, 6015 (NZ).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available):

AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SV, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available):

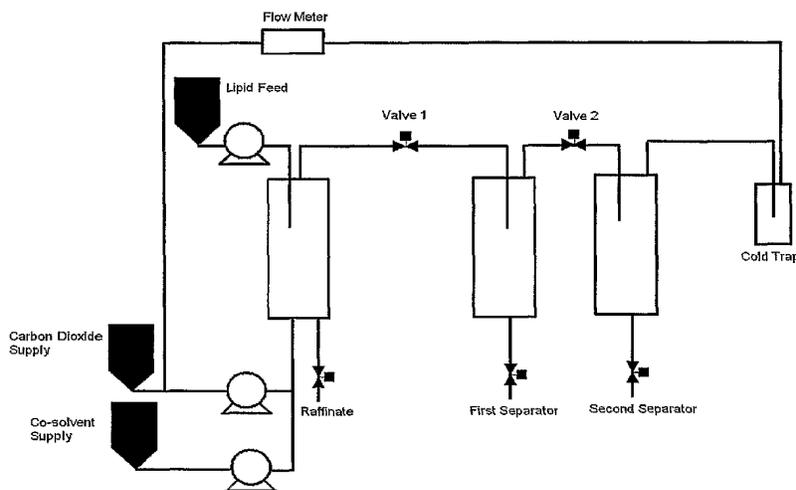
ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MT, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— with international search report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: PROCESS FOR SEPARATING LIPID MATERIALS



(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to processes for separating a feed material into soluble and insoluble components, by contacting a feed material and a solvent and subsequently separating the solvent containing the soluble components from the insoluble components, wherein the feed material comprises one or more of: at least 1% by mass phosphatidyl serine, at least 1% by mass sphingomyelin, at least 0.3 % by mass acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens, at least 0.5 % by mass aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids, at least 1% by mass cardiolipin, and at least 0.3% by mass gangliosides; and wherein the solvent comprises: supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>, and a co-solvent comprising one or more C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohols, and

water, wherein the co-solvent makes up at least 10% by mass of the CO<sub>2</sub>, and the water content of the co-solvent is 0 to 40 % by mass. The present invention also relates to processes for separating a feed material into soluble and insoluble components, comprising contacting a feed material and a first solvent and subsequently separating the first solvent containing the first soluble components from the first insoluble components, wherein the feed material comprises one or more of: at least 1 % by mass phosphatidyl serine, at least 1% by mass sphingomyelin, at least 0.3 % by mass acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens, at least 0.5 % by mass aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids, at least 1% by mass cardiolipin, or at least 0.3% by mass gangliosides; and wherein the first solvent comprises supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>. The process then provides contacting the first insoluble components with a second solvent and subsequently separating the second solvent containing the second soluble components from the second insoluble components, wherein the second solvent comprises supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>, and a co-solvent comprising one or more C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohols, and water, wherein the co-solvent makes up at least 10% by mass of the CO<sub>2</sub>, and the water content of the co-solvent is 0 to 40% by mass.

WO 2007/123424 A1

**PRODUCT AND PROCESS****FIELD OF INVENTION**

- 5 This invention relates to a separation process. More particularly it relates to a process for separating lipid materials containing phospholipids and/or glycolipids, including for example phosphatidyl serine, gangliosides, cardiolipin, sphingomyelin, plasmalogens, alkylacylphospholipids, phosphonolipids, cerebroside or a combination thereof.

**BACKGROUND**

10

Phospholipids are a major component of all biological membranes, and include phosphoglycerides (phosphatidyl choline (PC), phosphatidyl ethanolamine (PE), phosphatidyl inositol (PI), cardiolipin (CL), phosphatidyl serine (PS)), plasmalogens (PL), phosphonolipids (PP), alkylacylphospholipids (ALP); and sphingolipids such as  
15 sphingomyelin (SM) and ceramide aminoethylphosphonate (CAEP).

Gangliosides are glycolipid components in the cell plasma membrane, which modulate cell signal transductions events. They are implicated as being important in immunology and neurodegenerative disorders. Cerebroside are important components in animal muscle and nerve cell membranes.

- 20 Both phospholipids and gangliosides are involved in cell signalling events leading to, for example, cell death (apoptosis), cell growth, cell proliferation, and cell differentiation.

Reasonable levels of some of these components can be found in milk, soy products, eggs, animal glands and organs, marine animals, plants and other sources. A source of these components is the bovine milk fat globule membrane (MFGM) which is known to contain  
25 useful quantities of sphingomyelin, ceramides, gangliosides, and phosphatidyl serine. Another source of these components is the green-shell mussel, which is known to contain useful quantities of plasmalogens, alkylacylphospholipids and ceramide aminoethylphosphonate

- 30 Both phospholipids and gangliosides have been implicated in conferring a number of health benefits including brain health, skin health, eczema treatment, anti-infection, wound healing, gut microbiota modifications, anti-cancer activity, alleviation of arthritis, improvement of

cardiovascular health, and treatment of metabolic syndromes. They can also be used in sports nutrition.

Cardiolipin is an important component of the inner mitochondrial membrane. It is typically present in metabolically active cells of the heart and skeletal muscle. It serves as an  
5 insulator and stabilises the activity of protein complexes important to the electron transport chain.

Existing methods for isolation of these compounds rely on the use of chromatographic techniques, which are slow and costly processes to operate. These techniques can also require the use of solvents that are unsuitable and/or undesirable in products for nutritional  
10 or human use. For example, Palacios and Wang [1] describe a process for extraction of phospholipids from egg yolks using acetone and ethanol extractions, followed by a methanol/chloroform separation. Kang and Row [2] describe a liquid chromatography process for separation of soybean derived PC from PE and PI. This process may be  
15 expensive to carry out on an industrial scale, and also uses hexane, methanol, and isopropyl alcohol as solvents. Kearns et al [3] describe a process for purification of egg yolk derived PC from PE using mixtures of acetonitrile, hydrocarbons, and fluorocarbons. Again, these solvents are undesirable for nutritional or pharmaceutical use.

Supercritical fluid extraction processes using CO<sub>2</sub> are becoming increasingly popular because of a number of processing and consumer benefits. CO<sub>2</sub> can be easily removed from  
20 the final product by reducing the pressure, whereupon the CO<sub>2</sub> reverts to a gaseous state, giving a completely solvent free product. The extract is considered to be more 'natural' than extracts produced using other solvents, and the use of CO<sub>2</sub> in place of conventional organic solvents also confers environmental benefits through reduced organic solvent use. The disadvantage of supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> processing is that the solubility of many compounds in  
25 CO<sub>2</sub> is low, and only neutral lipids can be extracted.

It is known that the use of CO<sub>2</sub> with organic co-solvents such as ethanol allows extraction of some phosphatidyl choline and to a much lesser extent phosphatidyl ethanolamine. For example, Teberikler et al [4] describe a process for extraction of PC from a soybean lecithin. Using 10% ethanol in CO<sub>2</sub> at 60°C they found that PC was easily extracted, while PE and PI  
30 were extracted to a very low extent. Extraction at 12.5 % ethanol at 80°C gave a four-fold increase in solubility of PC. Montanari et al [5] describe a process for extracting phospholipids from soybean flakes. After first extracting neutral lipids using only CO<sub>2</sub> at 320 bar, they found that using 10 % ethanol co-solvent at pressures of 194 to 689 bar resulted in

some extraction of PC, PE, PI, and phosphatidic acid (PA). PC is selectively extracted under some conditions, but at higher temperatures and pressures some extraction of PE and PI was achieved. The pressures required to achieve good extraction were impractically high for industrial application, and the high temperatures used (80°C) could cause polyunsaturated fatty acids to be degraded. Taylor et al [6] describe a process in which soybean flakes are first extracted using only CO<sub>2</sub>, followed by CO<sub>2</sub> with 15% ethanol at 80°C and 665 bar. A mixture of phospholipids is obtained which were fractionated by alumina column. Again, the temperatures and pressures are too high for practical application. In these works, the soybean-derived feed materials do not contain detectable levels of SM, CL, GS or PS.

10 Tanaka and Sakaki [7] describe a method for extracting phospholipids from waste tuna shavings using CO<sub>2</sub> and ethanol as a co-solvent. They describe extraction of DHA-containing phospholipids using 5 % ethanol in CO<sub>2</sub>, and by presoaking the tuna flakes in straight ethanol and then extracting using CO<sub>2</sub>. The phospholipids obtained in this process are not specified and no fractionation of the different phospholipids is described. In addition, 15 the phospholipids fraction makes up a relatively small proportion of the total processed material, requiring use of large pressure vessels to produce a small yield of phospholipids.

Bulley et al [8] describe extraction of frozen egg yolks using CO<sub>2</sub> and 3 % ethanol, and CO<sub>2</sub> with up to 5 % methanol. Higher rates of triglyceride extraction were obtained with the use of the co-solvent. Extraction of small amounts of phospholipids, up to 17% concentration in 20 the extract, was also achieved. Fractionation of the phospholipids is not described.

In this specification where reference has been made to patent specifications, other external documents, or other sources of information, this is generally for the purpose of providing a context for discussing the features of the invention. Unless specifically stated otherwise, reference to such external documents or such sources of information is not to be construed as 25 an admission that such documents or such sources of information, in any jurisdiction, are prior art or form part of the common general knowledge in the art.

It is an object of this invention to provide a process for producing a product that contains desirable levels of particular phospholipids and/or gangliosides and/or cerebroside, or at least to offer the public a useful choice.

**SUMMARY OF INVENTION**

Accordingly the present invention provides a process for separating a feed material into soluble and insoluble components, comprising:

(a) providing a feed material comprising one or more of:

- 5 (i) at least 1% by mass phosphatidyl serine
- (ii) at least 1% by mass sphingomyelin
- (iii) at least 0.3 % by mass acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens
- (iv) at least 0.5 % by mass aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids
- (v) at least 1% by mass cardiolipin
- 10 (vi) at least 0.3% by mass gangliosides

(b) providing a solvent comprising:

- (i) supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>, and
- (ii) a co-solvent comprising one or more C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohols, and water

wherein the co-solvent makes up at least 10% by mass of the CO<sub>2</sub>, and the water content  
15 of the co-solvent is 0 to 40 % by mass

(c) contacting the feed material and the solvent and subsequently separating the solvent containing the soluble components from the insoluble components

(d) optionally separating the soluble components and the solvent.

20 Preferably the feed material comprises greater than 1% phosphatidyl serine. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% phosphatidyl serine. Most preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% phosphatidyl serine.

Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 1% sphingomyelin. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% sphingomyelin. Most preferably the feed material comprises greater than 15% sphingomyelin.

Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 1% cardiolipin. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% cardiolipin. Most preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% cardiolipin.

Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 0.3% gangliosides. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 1% gangliosides. Most preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% gangliosides.

Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens. Most preferably the feed material comprises greater than 10% acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.

Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids. Most preferably the feed material comprises greater than 20% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.

The present invention also provides a process for separating a feed material into soluble and insoluble components, comprising

(a) providing a feed material comprising one or more of:

(i) at least 1% by mass phosphatidyl serine,

(ii) at least 1% by mass sphingomyelin,

(iii) at least 0.3 % by mass acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens

(iv) at least 0.5 % by mass aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids

(v) at least 1% by mass cardiolipin, or

(vi) at least 0.3% by mass gangliosides

(b) providing a first solvent comprising supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>

(c) contacting the feed material and the first solvent and subsequently separating the first solvent containing the first soluble components from the first insoluble components

(d) optionally separating the first soluble components and the first solvent

(e) providing a second solvent comprising:

(i) supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>, and

(ii) a co-solvent comprising one or more C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohols, and water

5 wherein the co-solvent makes up at least 10% by mass of the CO<sub>2</sub>, and the water content of the co-solvent is 0 to 40% by mass

(f) contacting the first insoluble components and the second solvent and subsequently separating the second solvent containing the second soluble components from the second insoluble components

(g) optionally separating the second soluble components and the second solvent.

10 Preferably the first solvent comprises a mixture of supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub> and less than 10% C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohol.

The feed material preferably comprises greater than 1% phosphatidyl serine. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% phosphatidyl serine. Most preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% phosphatidyl serine.

15 Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 1% sphingomyelin. Preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% sphingomyelin. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 15% sphingomyelin.

20 Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 1% cardiolipin. Preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% cardiolipin. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% cardiolipin.

Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 0.3% gangliosides. Preferably the feed material comprises greater than 1% gangliosides. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% gangliosides.

25 Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens. Preferably the feed material comprises greater than 2% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 10% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.

Alternatively the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids. Preferably the feed material comprises greater than 5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids. More preferably the feed material comprises greater than 20% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.

- 5 The feed material of the present invention may be derived from terrestrial animals, marine animals, terrestrial plants, marine plants, or micro-organisms such as microalgae, yeast and bacteria. Preferably the feed material is derived from sheep, goat, pig, mouse, water buffalo, camel, yak, horse, donkey, llama, bovine or human.

- 10 Optionally the feed material is selected from: tissue, a tissue fraction, organ, an organ fraction, milk, a milk fraction, colostrum, a colostrum fraction, blood and a blood fraction.

Preferably the feed material is derived from dairy material, soy material, eggs, animal tissue, animal organ or animal blood. More preferably the feed material is selected from: a composition comprising dairy lipids, a composition comprising egg lipids, and a composition comprising marine lipids.

- 15 Most preferably the feed material used in the process of the present invention is a bovine milk fraction. Preferably the feed material is selected from: buttermilk, a buttermilk fraction, beta serum, a beta serum fraction, butter serum, a butter serum fraction, whey, a whey fraction, colostrum, and a colostrum fraction.

The feed material may comprise milk fat globule membrane.

- 20 Preferably, the feed material is in solid form. When solid, the feed material may be cryomilled before contact with the solvent.

The solvent of the present invention preferably comprises:

- (a) an alcohol selected from: methanol, ethanol, n-propanol, isopropanol and mixtures thereof; and
- 25 (b) 0 – 40% v/v water

More preferably the solvent comprises between 0 and 20% v/v water. Most preferably the solvent comprises between 1 and 10% v/v water.

Preferably the alcohol is ethanol.

Preferably the solvent used in the process of the present invention comprises 95% aqueous ethanol.

5 Preferably the mass fraction of the co-solvent in CO<sub>2</sub> is between 5% and 60%. More preferably the mass fraction is between 20% and 50%. Most preferably the mass fraction is between 25% and 30%.

Preferably the contacting temperature between the feed material and solvent is between 10°C and 80°C. More preferably the contacting temperature is between 55°C and 65°C. Most preferably the contacting pressure is between 100 bar and 500 bar.

10 Preferably the contacting pressure is between 200 bar and 300 bar. More preferably the ratio of the co-solvent to feed material is in the range 10:1 to 200:1. Most preferably the ratio of the co-solvent to feed material is in the range 15:1 to 50:1.

Preferably the separating pressure is between atmospheric pressure and 90 bar. More preferably the separating pressure is between 40 bar and 60 bar.

Preferably the co-solvent is recycled for further use.

15 Preferably the CO<sub>2</sub> is recycled for further use.

The co-solvent may be removed by evaporation under vacuum.

Preferably the feed material is contacted with a continuous flow of solvent.

Preferably the feed material is contacted with one or more batches of solvent.

The lipid and solvent streams may be fed continuously.

20 Optionally, the feed material and co-solvent streams may be mixed prior to contacting with CO<sub>2</sub>.

25 The invention also provides products produced by the process of the invention, both the insoluble components remaining after contact with the solvent (also referred to herein as the "residue"); and the soluble components that are dissolved in the solvent after contact with the feed material (also referred to herein as the "extract"). Where the feed material is contacted with more than one batch of solvent, or the solvent is cooled in a number of steps, there will be multiple "extract" products.

Preferably the product contains more sphingomyelin than the feed material. More preferably the product comprises greater than 3% sphingomyelin. Even more preferably the product comprises greater than 10% sphingomyelin. Most preferably the product comprises greater than 15% sphingomyelin.

- 5 Preferably the product contains more phosphatidyl serine than the feed material. More preferably the product comprises greater than 5% phosphatidyl serine. Even more preferably the product comprises greater than 30% phosphatidyl serine. Most preferably the product comprises greater than 70% phosphatidyl serine.

- 10 Preferably the product contains more gangliosides than the feed material. More preferably the product comprises greater than 2% gangliosides. Even more preferably the product comprises greater than 4% gangliosides. Most preferably the product comprises greater than 6% gangliosides.

- 15 Preferably the product contains more cardiolipin than the feed material. More preferably the product comprises greater than 5% cardiolipin. Even more preferably the product comprises greater than 10% cardiolipin. Most preferably the product comprises greater than 25% cardiolipin.

- 20 Preferably the product contains more acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens than the feed material. More preferably the product comprises greater than 5% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens. Even more preferably the product comprises greater than 10% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens. Most preferably the product comprises greater than 25% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.

- 25 Preferably the product contains more aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids than the feed material. More preferably the product comprises greater than 5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids. Even more preferably the product comprises greater than 10% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids. Most preferably the product comprises greater than 25% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

The invention may be more fully understood by having reference to the accompanying drawings wherein:

Figure 1 is scheme drawing illustrating a preferred process of the current invention.

5 Figure 2 is a scheme drawing illustrating a second preferred process of the current invention

Figure 3 is a scheme drawing illustrating a third preferred process of the current invention

Figure 4 is a scheme drawing illustrating a fourth preferred process of the current invention

**10 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS**

In this specification the following are the meanings of the abbreviations or acronyms used.

“CL” means cardiolipin

“PC” means phosphatidyl choline

“PI” means phosphatidyl inositol

15 “PS” means phosphatidyl serine

“PE” means phosphatidyl ethanolamine

“PA” means phosphatidic acid

“PL” means plasmalogen

“PP” means phosphonolipid

20 “ALP” means alkylacylphospholipid

“SM” means sphingomyelin

“CAEP” means ceramide aminoethylphosphonate

“GS” means ganglioside

“N/D” means not detected

25 “CO<sub>2</sub>” means carbon dioxide

**GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

As discussed in the Background, it is known that supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> with up to 12.5% ethanol as a co-solvent can extract the phospholipids PC, and to a much lesser extent, PE and PI  
5 from soy or egg. Surprisingly, we have found that the phospholipids PS, CAEP and CL; and gangliosides are virtually insoluble in CO<sub>2</sub> and a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohol co-solvent, and that SM, ALP, PL and PP are soluble. Therefore it is possible to separate the soluble phospholipids from the insoluble phospholipids and gangliosides to achieve fractions enriched in one or other of the desired components.

10

There are a number of factors affecting the operation of the process:

- Feed material and feed preparation
- Extraction temperature and pressure
- 15 ▪ Co-solvent concentration
- Total solvent throughput
- Solvent flow rate and contacting conditions

It is advantageous to start with a feed material containing at least 5 % by mass of lipids, and  
20 ideally at least 2 % by mass of phospholipids, particularly PS, SM, CL, ALP, PL, PP, CAEP and/or gangliosides.

The feed material can be processed using pure CO<sub>2</sub> before the co-solvent is introduced to remove much or all of neutral lipids. This reduces the neutral lipid content in the CO<sub>2</sub>+co-  
25 solvent extract leading to an extract enriched in soluble phospholipids and/or gangliosides.

The form of the feed material depends on the source of the lipids and its lipid composition. For example dairy lipid extracts high in phospholipids may be substantially solid even at elevated temperatures. Egg yolk and marine lipids in comparison have a lower melting point.  
30 The presence of neutral lipids also tends to produce a more fluid feed material. To promote good contacting it may be beneficial to prepare the feed material. Solid materials containing lipids may be able to be cryomilled. Lipid feed materials can also be made more fluid by the inclusion of some ethanol or water.

Changing the processing conditions of temperature, pressure, co-solvent concentration, and total solvent usage, influences the amount of material extracted, the purity of the final product, and the recovery (or efficiency) of the process. For example, the virtually insoluble lipids such as PS, GS, CAEP and CL, have very slight solubilities so that excessive use of solvent, or very favourable extraction conditions, can result in small losses of PS, GS and CL from the residual fraction. A high purity product may be achieved, but with a reduced yield. Conversely the enrichment of soluble lipids will be greater if smaller amounts of the other lipids are co-extracted, but the total yield will be lower. Processing economics, and the relative values of the products, will determine where this balance lies. A further option to obtain multiple enriched fractions is to carry out extractions under progressively more favourable extraction conditions, such as increasing the temperature.

We have found that co-solvent concentrations below about 10% produce very little extract of phospholipids and/or gangliosides. At higher concentrations the rate of material extracted increases rapidly. We have found the co-solvent concentrations of at least 20%, and more preferably 30% achieve high levels of extraction of PC, PE, SM, ALP, PL, PP and PI, while the lipids PS, CL and GS remain virtually insoluble.

Every substance has its own "critical" point at which the liquid and vapour state of the substance become identical. Above but close to the critical point of a substance, the substance is in a fluid state that has properties of both liquids and gases. The fluid has a density similar to a liquid, and viscosity and diffusivity similar to a gas. The term "supercritical" as used herein refers to the pressure-temperature region above the critical point of a substance. The term "subcritical" as used herein refers to the pressure-temperature region equal to or above the vapour pressure for the liquid, but below the critical temperature. The term "near-critical" as used herein encompasses both "supercritical" and "subcritical" regions, and refers to pressures and temperatures near the critical point.

Percentages unless otherwise indicated are on a w/w solids basis.

The term "comprising" as used in this specification means "consisting at least in part of". When interpreting each statement in this specification that includes the term "comprising", features other than that or those prefaced by the term may also be present. Related terms such as "comprise" and "comprises" are to be interpreted in the same manner.

The invention consists in the foregoing and also envisages constructions of which the following gives examples only.

## EXAMPLES

5 The experimental process is described, with reference to figure 1, as follows.

A measured mass of feed material containing lipids to be fractionated was placed in basket BK1 with a porous sintered steel plate on the bottom. Basket BK1 was placed in a 300 mL extraction vessel EX1. The apparatus was suspended in heated water bath WB1 and  
10 maintained at a constant temperature through use of a thermostat and electric heater.

In the continuous extraction mode of operation, liquid CO<sub>2</sub> from supply bottle B1 was pumped using pump P1 into extraction vessel EX1 until the pressure reached the desired operating pressure, after which valve V1 was operated to maintain a constant pressure in the  
15 extraction vessel. After passing through valve V1, the pressure was reduced to the supply cylinder pressure of 40 to 60 bar, which caused the CO<sub>2</sub> to be converted to a lower density fluid and lose its solvent strength. Precipitated material was captured in separation vessel SEP1, and the CO<sub>2</sub> exited from the top of separator SEP1 and was recycled back to the feed  
20 pump through coriolis mass flow meter FM1 and cold trap CT1 operated at -5°C. Extracted material was collected periodically from separator SEP1 by opening valve V2. The extraction was optionally carried out using CO<sub>2</sub> only until all of the compounds soluble in CO<sub>2</sub> only, such as neutral lipids, were extracted. When no further extract was produced by CO<sub>2</sub> extraction, ethanol co-solvent with or without added water was added to the CO<sub>2</sub> at the  
25 desired flow ratio from supply bottle B2 using pump P2. Ethanol and further extracted material were separated from the CO<sub>2</sub> in separator SEP1 and periodically removed through valve V2. After the desired amount of ethanol had been added the ethanol flow was stopped and the CO<sub>2</sub> flow continued alone until all the ethanol had been recovered from the system. The remaining CO<sub>2</sub> was vented and the residual material in basket BK1 was removed and dried under vacuum. The extract fraction was evaporated to dryness by rotary evaporation.

30

In the batch extraction mode of operation CO<sub>2</sub> alone was optionally passed continuously through the apparatus, as for the continuous flow mode of operation, until all CO<sub>2</sub> alone extractable material was removed. The CO<sub>2</sub> flow was then stopped and valve V1 closed to maintain the pressure. Approximately 140g of ethanol was pumped from supply bottle B2

through pump P2 into extraction vessel EX1. The system was left for 15 minutes to allow the system to equilibrate, after which time the CO<sub>2</sub> flow was started and valve V1 opened to maintain a constant pressure and allow ethanol and dissolved compounds to flow through to separator SEP1. This process was repeated twice more, after which the CO<sub>2</sub> was vented and  
5 the residual material in basket BK1 was removed and dried under vacuum.

Extract and residue fractions were analysed for phospholipid content and profile by <sup>31</sup>P-NMR. The phospholipid mass fractions reported here are for phosphatidylcholine (PC), phosphatidylinositol (PI), phosphatidylethanolamine (PE), plasmalogens (PL),  
10 phosphonolipids (PP), alkylacylphospholipids (ALP), sphingomyelin (SM), ceramide aminoethylphosphonate (CAEP), phosphatidylserine (PS), and cardiolipin (CL).

The process option illustrated in Figure 1 is for a batch process while the processing options illustrated in Figures 2-4 are for a continuous flow process.

15 ***Example 1: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract A, ethanol mass fraction 25%***

Lipid extract A is a total lipid extract obtained by a processes disclosed in PCT international applications PCT/NZ2005/000262 (published as WO 2006/041316).

20 40g of dairy lipid extract A, with composition shown in Table 1 (feed), was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 60°C and 300 bar. The ‘other compounds’ consist mainly of neutral lipids. 44% of the feed material was extracted (extract 1) using CO<sub>2</sub> only. This extract contained no phospholipids, and was entirely neutral lipids. A further 31% of the feed material (extract 2) was extracted using 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration  
25 in CO<sub>2</sub> of 25%. The total ethanol and water added was 880g. The composition of the fraction extracted with CO<sub>2</sub> and ethanol (extract 2), and the composition of the residual fraction are shown in Table 1. The extract is enriched in phosphatidylcholine (PC) and sphingomyelin (SM) which are more soluble in CO<sub>2</sub> and ethanol, while the residual fraction is substantially enriched in phosphatidylserine (PS). Phosphatidylserine levels are virtually undetectable in  
30 the extract phase indicating very low solubility in CO<sub>2</sub> and ethanol, and almost complete recovery of phosphatidylserine in the residue phase.

Table 1

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		11.2	2.8	4.3	13.2	7.8	2.2	58.3
Extract 2	31	28.2	0.0	0.2	14.4	15.4	4.9	37.0
Residue	25	6.5	10.5	15.6	30.8	10.2	3.6	22.8

5

**Example 2: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract A, ethanol mass fraction 31%**

41g of dairy lipid extract A, with composition as for example 1 was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 60°C and 300 bar as for example 1, using firstly CO<sub>2</sub> alone to extract 50 % of the feed material (extract 1), which is neutral lipids only, and then using 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration in CO<sub>2</sub> of 31%. 33% of the feed material was extracted (extract 2). The total ethanol and water added was 1150g. The composition of the residual fraction is shown in Table 2. The higher ethanol concentration gives a more complete extraction of lipids and the concentration of phosphatidylserine in the residue fraction is higher than found in example 1 at 19.3 %.

Table 2

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		11.2	2.8	4.3	13.2	7.8	2.2	58.3
Extract 2	33	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Residue	17	4.4	12.6	19.3	27.1	8.5	2.5	25.5

20

**Example 3: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract A, ethanol mass fraction 43%**

40g of dairy lipid extract A, with composition as for example 1 was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 60°C and 300 bar as for example 1, using firstly CO<sub>2</sub> alone to extract 41 % of the feed material (extract 1), which is neutral lipids only, and then using 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration in CO<sub>2</sub> of 43% to extract 32 % of the feed (extract 2). The total ethanol and water added was 960g. The composition of extract 2 and residual fractions are shown in Table 3. The concentration of phosphatidylserine in the residue fraction is higher than found in example 1 and example 2 at 20.7 %. The

30

concentration of SM in the extract, at 12.5 % by mass, is enriched relative to the feed, at 7.8 % by mass, even though it also contains a high level of neutral lipids.

Table 3

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		11.2	2.8	4.3	13.2	7.8	2.2	58.3
Extract 2	32	21.1	0.0	0.5	13.3	12.5	3.5	49.1
Residue	27	4.2	13.6	20.7	26.7	7.8	1.9	25.0

5

#### **Example 4: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract A, 40°C**

39g of dairy lipid extract A, with composition as for example 1 was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar using firstly CO<sub>2</sub> alone to extract 54 % of the feed material (extract 1), which is neutral lipids only, and then using 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration in CO<sub>2</sub> of 30 % to extract 12 % of the feed (extract 2). The temperature in this example was 40°C. The total ethanol and water added was 975g. The composition of the extracted and residual fractions are shown in Table 5. The degree of extraction of SM is lower than for examples 1 to 3 at 60°C, but the concentration in the extract is higher. The concentration of PS in the residue, at 12.4 %, is lower than examples 1 to 3.

10

15

Table 4

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		11.2	2.8	4.3	13.2	7.8	2.2	58.3
Extract 2	12	27.9	0.0	0.3	16.7	15.3	4.9	34.9
Residue	34	9.9	8.1	12.4	25.3	12.2	3.6	28.5

#### **Example 5: Fractionation of dairy phospholipid concentrate**

40g of a dairy phospholipid concentrate with composition as shown in Table 5 (feed) was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C without the prior CO<sub>2</sub> only extraction step. The ethanol (95% aqueous ethanol) mass fraction in CO<sub>2</sub> was 30%. The total ethanol and water added was 1026g. The composition of the extracted and residual fractions are shown in Table 5. Only 11% of the feed lipid was extracted, so the enrichment of phosphatidylserine in the residue is not significant, but the concentration did increase from 8% to 8.8%. The poor degree of extraction in this example is due to the

25

physical properties of the solid feed material limiting mass transfer. In comparison, the dairy lipid extract in examples 1 through 4, is liquid at the processing temperature and better extraction rates are observed.

- 5 Different feed preparation methods and/or longer equilibration times and/or greater solvent quantities are expected to increase the amount of extractable material.

Table 5

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		15.4	5.3	8.0	21.6	15.1	0.3	34.3
Extract	11							
Residue	89	13.0	5.9	8.8	21.4	10.9	2.8	37.2

10 **Example 6: Fractionation of dairy phospholipid concentrate using the batch extraction process**

19g of a dairy phospholipid concentrate with composition as described in example 5 was extracted using the batch extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C. A total of 22% of the feed mass was extracted in three sequential extractions each consisting of 140g of ethanol (95% aqueous ethanol) in 300mL of CO<sub>2</sub>. The composition of the extracted and final residual fractions are shown in Table 6. In this example 22% of the feed lipid was extracted, significantly higher than that obtained in the continuous extraction example (example 5) and using a lower total quantity of ethanol co-solvent. The phosphatidylserine concentration in the residue has increased from 8% to 11.2%; and the sphingomyelin concentration in the extract has increased from 15.1 to 16.7%. This example shows the increase in total extracted material by allowing a greater contacting time to more completely dissolve the soluble fraction.

25 Table 6

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		15.4	5.3	8.0	21.6	15.1	0.3	34.3
Extract	22	32.4	0.5	0.4	17.7	16.7	4.7	27.5
Residue	78	13.6	7.4	11.2	26.6	13.3	2.9	25.0

**Example 7: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract B, ethanol mass fraction 10%**

This example relates to extraction of dairy lipid extract B, a total lipid extract obtained from high fat whey protein concentrate processes disclosed in PCT international applications  
 5 PCT/NZ2004/000014 (published as WO WO2004/066744).

with composition shown in Table 7 (feed). The 'other compounds' listed include 2-3% gangliosides and about 3% lactose, both absent in dairy lipid extract A. In this example 42g of dairy lipid extract B was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at  
 10 300 bar and 60°C. 52% of the feed mass was extracted using CO<sub>2</sub> alone (extract 1). Only 3% of the feed lipid was further extracted using 460g of 95% aqueous ethanol (extract 2), and the extract contained less than 10% phospholipids. The extraction of phospholipids does not occur to any significant extent for ethanol mass fractions of 10% or lower. The ethanol does however extract some additional neutral lipid that is not extracted using CO<sub>2</sub> alone. In this  
 15 case, both the PS and SM are enriched in the residue.

Table 7

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		7.4	2.5	3.9	10.3	5.7	1.3	69.0
Extract 2	3	4.5	0.0	0.0	1.6	1.0	0.3	92.6
Residue	45	15.0	6.1	8.7	21.8	12.0	5.9	30.7

20

**Example 8: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract B, ethanol mass fraction 30%**

In this example 40g of dairy lipid extract B was extracted using the continuous extraction  
 25 mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C. 51% of the feed mass was extracted using CO<sub>2</sub> alone (extract 1). A further 7% of the feed material was extracted using 760g of 95% aqueous ethanol at a mass concentration of 30% in CO<sub>2</sub> (extract 2). Phospholipid profiles for the extract and residual fractions are shown in Table 8. Both PS and SM are enriched in the residue

Table 8

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		7.4	2.5	3.9	10.3	5.7	1.3	69.0
Extract (2)	7	22.5	0.5	0.4	14.0	11.2	3.3	48.2
Residue	41	12.0	5.5	8.5	20.2	10.0	2.4	41.5

5 **Example 9: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract A, ethanol mass fraction 3%**

This example shows that when the co-solvent concentration is below 10% by mass, no phospholipids are extracted.

10 In this example 27g of dairy lipid extract A, as described in example 1, was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C, using 98% ethanol at 3 % by mass ratio with CO<sub>2</sub>, without the CO<sub>2</sub> only extraction step. 62% of the feed mass was extracted. No detectable phospholipids were extracted. This extract represents 90% of the neutral lipid present in the feed material. The rate of extraction of neutral lipid from the feed  
15 material was substantially faster using the ethanol co-solvent than using CO<sub>2</sub> only. The extract material was substantially extracted using less than the total of 150g of ethanol in 4850g of CO<sub>2</sub> used, while typically 10 kg of CO<sub>2</sub> alone is required for extraction of neutral lipids, as in example 1.

20 **Example 10: Fractionation of egg yolk lecithin**

This example relates to fractionation of a commercially available egg yolk lecithin, with phospholipid profile shown in Table 9. No phosphatidylserine was detected in the feed lipid, indicating concentration levels <0.5%. In this example 34g of the feed material was  
25 extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C, and 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration of 25%. 45% of the feed mass was extracted as neutral lipids using CO<sub>2</sub> alone. A further 49% of the feed material was extracted using ethanol and CO<sub>2</sub> with a total ethanol flow of 640g. Phospholipid profiles for the extract and residual  
30 fractions are shown in Table 9. In this example, the phosphatidylserine levels in the residual material are substantially enriched compared with non-detectable levels in the feed material.

Table 9

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		56.4	N/D	N/D	6.4	2.0	5.7	29.4
Extract	49	43.5	N/D	N/D	9.2	2.6	2.1	42.5
Residue	6	17.4	8.0	5.9	19.1	3.8	3.8	42.0

### **Example 11: Fractionation of egg yolk phospholipid extract**

5 This example relates to fractionation of an egg yolk phospholipid fraction with phospholipid profile shown in Table 9. In this example 40g of the feed material was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C, and 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration of 28%. 50% of the feed mass was extracted as neutral lipids using CO<sub>2</sub> alone. A further 46% of the feed material was extracted using ethanol and CO<sub>2</sub> with a total ethanol  
10 flow of 800g. Phospholipid profiles for the extract and residual fractions are shown in Table 10. In this example, the phosphatidylserine levels in the residual material are substantially enriched compared with levels in the feed material, while sphingomyelin is enriched in the extract relative to the feed.

15 Table 10

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		21.2	0.6	0.4	5.2	1.6	0.9	70.1
Extract	46	65.6	0.3	N/D	6.3	2.8	2.3	22.8
Residue	4	12.9	11.2	8.2	27.6	2.8	8.2	29.2

### **Example 12: Fractionation of Hoki head lipid extract**

20 This example relates to fractionation of a Hoki head lipid extract with phospholipid profile shown in Table 11. In this example 25g of the feed material was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C, and 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration of 31%. 1% of the feed mass was extracted as neutral lipids using CO<sub>2</sub> alone. A further 72% of the feed material was extracted using ethanol and CO<sub>2</sub> with a total ethanol  
25 flow of 940g. Phospholipid profiles for the extract and residual fractions are shown in Table 11. In this example, the phosphatidylserine levels in the residual material are substantially enriched compared with levels in the feed material. Some PS is also observed in the extract phase. The alkylacylphosphatidylcholine (AAPC), a type of alkylacylphospholipid, is completely extracted.

Table 11

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %							Other phosph	Other compounds
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	AAPC			
Feed	1	9.2	1.1	1.4	4.8	0.5	1.1	1.8	80.8	
Extract	72	14.2	0.0	0.7	5.3	0.5	1.6	0.6	71.2	
Residue	27	14.3	7.1	7.6	13.9	0.0	0.0	6.2	47.7	

### Example 13: Fractionation of bovine heart lipid extract

5

This example relates to fractionation of a bovine heart phospholipid lipid extract with phospholipid profile shown in Table 9. In this example 40g of the feed material was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C, and 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration of 33% in CO<sub>2</sub>. No lipid was extracted using CO<sub>2</sub> alone.

10 79% of the feed material was extracted using ethanol and CO<sub>2</sub> with a total ethanol flow of 960g. Phospholipid profiles for the extract and residual fractions are shown in Table 12. The phosphatidylserine levels in the residual material are substantially enriched compared with levels in the feed material. Cardiolipin is also significantly enriched in the residue.

15 Table 12

	Yield wt% of feed	Composition, wt%							Other Phospholipid s	Other compounds
		CL	PC	PI	PS	PE	SM			
Feed		16.8	13.4	3.2	1.5	12.3	3.6	15.3	33.9	
Extract	79	8.2	18.6	0.8	0.4	8.6	3.5	13.1	46.7	
Residue	21	42.2	2.8	14.1	4.7	23.4		12.8	0.0	

### Example 14: Fractionation of dairy lipid extract A with propan-2-ol co-solvent

20

In this example 39g of the dairy lipid extract A, as described in example 1, was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C, and 95% aqueous propan-2-ol at a mass concentration of 35% in CO<sub>2</sub>. 48% of the feed material was extracted as neutral lipids using CO<sub>2</sub> alone. 23% of the feed material was further extracted using the propan-2-ol co-solvent and CO<sub>2</sub> with a total propanol mass of 810g. Phospholipid profiles for the extract and residual fractions are shown in Table 13. The phosphatidylserine levels in the residual material are substantially enriched, and the result is comparable to results for examples 1 and 2. A slightly lower total PS level is achieved than for example 2 using a

25

comparable concentration of ethanol. The levels of PS observed in the extracted fraction is also higher suggesting the propan-2-ol is not as selective as ethanol. On this basis alone ethanol would be the preferred co-solvent.

5 Table 13

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		11.2	2.8	4.3	13.2	7.8	2.2	58.3
Extract	23	27.9	0.8	1.3	19.5	14.0	4.2	32.4
Residue	29	10.7	8.6	13.0	23.8	15.5	3.4	25.0

### **Example 15: Fractionation of soy lecithin**

10 This example relates to fractionation of a soy lecithin (Healtheries Lecithin natural dietary supplement, Healtheries of New Zealand Limited) with composition shown in Table 9 . In this example 42g of feed material was extracted using the continuous extraction mode of operation at 300 bar and 60°C, and 95% aqueous ethanol at a concentration of 33% in CO<sub>2</sub>. No lipid was extracted using CO<sub>2</sub> alone. 91% of the feed material was extracted using ethanol and CO<sub>2</sub> with a total ethanol flow of 520g. Phospholipid profiles for the extract and  
15 residual fractions are shown in Table 14. PC and PE are preferentially extracted and are significantly enriched in the extract. There are no detectable levels of PS or SM in this example.

Table 14

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
Feed		22.2	12.3	0.0	17.4	0.0	11.7	36.4
Extract	9	31.9	0.7	0.0	9.9	0.0	6.1	51.4
Residue	91	20.7	13.2	0.0	18.4	0.0	12.4	35.2

20

### **Example 16: Continuous fractionation of egg yolk lipids**

25 This example relates to fractionation of an egg yolk lipid extract containing 15% phospholipids and the balance mostly neutral lipids by HPLC analysis. The phospholipid fraction contains 55% PC, 29% PE, and 14% PI . The feed lipid was pumped into the top of a 10L pressure vessel, and contacted with CO<sub>2</sub> containing 8.7 % of 98% aqueous ethanol flowing upwards through the vessel at 300 bar pressure and temperature of 60°C. An extract phase was continuously taken from the top of the contacting vessel, and a raffinate phase

was periodically withdrawn from the bottom of the vessel. The lipid feed rate was 1.5 kg/hr. The CO<sub>2</sub>+ co-solvent flow rate was 27 kg/hr.

The extract phase was predominantly neutral lipids but contained 20% of the phospholipids present in the feed stream. The phospholipids in the extract fraction consisted of between  
 5 70% and 100% PC, with the balance mostly PE. This represents a preferential extraction of PC over other phospholipids.

In a second experiment, feed lipid was premixed with 98% ethanol (with 2 % water) at a concentration of 10.2% lipid. This mixture was pumped into the top of the pressure vessel and contacted with CO<sub>2</sub> in upflow. The overall concentration of ethanol in CO<sub>2</sub> under steady  
 10 state processing conditions was 5.9%. In this case 50% of the mass of phospholipids in the feed were extracted. The composition of the extract phase consisted of between 60% and 70% PC, with the balance mostly PE. The presence of PI and other phospholipids in the extract was not detectable by the HPLC method used.

### **Example 17: Fractionation of green-lipped mussel lipid extract**

15

This example relates to fractionation of a green-lipped mussel lipid extract with phospholipid profile shown in Table 11. In this example 12.2g of the feed material was extracted using a batch stirred tank method at 250 bar and 60°C using CO<sub>2</sub> and ethanol (containing 5 % water) at a concentration of 30.5 %. The lipid was placed in the stirred tank, CO<sub>2</sub> was added to give  
 20 the desired pressure and then the 95 % ethanol was added in during constant stirring. 65 % of the feed material was then extracted using CO<sub>2</sub> and ethanol after stirring for 1 hour by sampling the extract phase at constant pressure. Phospholipid profiles for the extract and residual fractions are shown in Table 15. In this example, the CAEP levels in the residual material are substantially enriched compared with levels in the feed material. The  
 25 alkylacylphosphatidylcholine (AAPC), a type of alkylacylphospholipid, is partially extracted.

Table 15

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %							Other compounds
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM	AAPC	CAEP	
Feed		1.89	0.0	0.0	1.60	0.0	0.8	2.0	92.2
Extract	65.3	1.97	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.9	0.71	96.0
Residue	34.7	3.77	0.0	0.0	3.67	0.0	1.3	3.22	84.0

**Example 18: Fractionation of krill lipids**

This example shows the fractionation of krill lipids from krill powder and demonstrates concentration of AAPC in the extract, and AAPE in the residue. 5619.9 g of freeze-dried krill powder containing 21.4 % lipid and corresponding phospholipids concentrations shown in table 16 was extracted continuously with supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> at 300 bar and 313 K until no further extract was obtained. This extract (extract 1) contained no phospholipids, and was substantially all neutral lipids. A total of 650 g of this extract was obtained, and 66.41 kg of CO<sub>2</sub> was used. The residual powder was then extracted with CO<sub>2</sub> and absolute ethanol, using a mass ratio of ethanol to CO<sub>2</sub> of 11 %. The CO<sub>2</sub> and ethanol extract phase was passed through two sequential separators in which the pressure was 95 and 60 bar respectively. The bulk of the phospholipids-rich extract (extract 2) was obtained in the first separator, and the bulk of the co-solvent in the second separator (extract 3). The composition of extract 2 and residual powder are shown in table 16. The alkylacylphosphatidylcholine (AAPC), a type of alkylacylphospholipid, is highly enriched in the concentrated phospholipids-rich extract, whilst alkylacylphosphatidylethanolamine (AAPE), another type of alkylacylphospholipid, is not extracted to any great degree.

Table 16

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %							Other compounds
		PC	PI	PS	PE	CL	AAPC	AAPE	
Feed		6.6	0.0	0.0	0.4	0.1	0.6	0.1	78.6
Extract 2	4.3	39.8	0.0	0.0	0.3	0.2	4.6	0.2	53.7
Residue	79.2	3.6	0.0	0.0	0.3	0.2	0.5	0.1	93.4

**Example 18: Fractionation of dairy lipids from beta-serum powder**

This example shows the fractionation of dairy lipids from beta-serum powder (a milk fat globular membrane concentrate powder) and demonstrates concentration of PS in the residual powder, and concentration of SM in the extract obtained using supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> + ethanol. 5835.3 grams of beta-serum powder containing phospholipids in the concentrations shown in table 17, was extracted continuously with supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> at 300 bar and 313 K until no further extract was obtained. This extract contained no phospholipids, and was substantially all neutral lipids. 1085.6 g of this extract (extract 1) was obtained using 94.42 kg of CO<sub>2</sub>. 2906.3 grams of the residual powder was then re-extracted with CO<sub>2</sub> and anhydrous ethanol at 300 bar and 323 K, using a mass ratio of ethanol to CO<sub>2</sub> of 25 %. The powder was extracted with this mixture for 90 minutes (7.82 kg ethanol). The CO<sub>2</sub> and

ethanol extract phase was passed through two sequential separators in which the pressure was 100 (extract 2) and 54 bar (extract 3) respectively. The extract was split between both separators. A total of 262.2 g of extract was obtained. The composition of the combined extract (extract 2 and 3) and residual powder are shown in table 17. The extract is highly enriched in sphingomyelin, whilst the residue is enriched in phosphatidylserine.

Table 17

	Yield % of feed	Composition, %						Other Phospholipids	Other compounds
		PC	PI	PS	PE	SM			
Feed		4.9	1.5	2.3	5.6	4.3	0.1	81.3	
Extract 2+3	9.02	49.6	0.0	0.0	12.4	30.1	0.7	7.1	
Residue	71.14	0.3	2.0	3.0	3.0	0.5	0.1	91.1	

## INDUSTRIAL APPLICATION

The present invention has utility in providing products with high levels of particular phospholipids and/or glycolipids including cardiolipin and phosphatidyl serine, and sphingomyelin. The described compositions and methods of the invention may be employed in a number of applications, including infant formulas, brain health, sports nutrition and dermatological compositions.

## REFERENCES

15

1. Palacios, L.E., Wang, T., Extraction of egg-yolk lecithin, JAOCS 82,8,2005
2. Kang, D.H., Row, K.H., Fractionation of soybean phospholipids by preparative high-performance liquid chromatography with sorbents of various particle size, Journal of Chromatography A, 949, 2002
- 20 3. Kearns, J.J., Tremblay, P.A., Robey, R.J., Sunder, S., Process for purification of phospholipids, US patent 4814111, 1989
4. Teberikler, L., Koseoglu, S., Akgerman, A., Selective extraction of phosphatidylcholine from lecithin by supercritical carbon dioxide/ethanol mixture, JAOCS 78,2,2001

5. Montanari, L., Fantozzi, P., Snyder, J.M., King, J.W., Selective extraction of phospholipids from soybeans with supercritical carbon dioxide and ethanol, *J Supercritical Fluids*, 14, 1999
- 5 6. Taylor, S.L., King, J.W., Montanari, L., Fantozzi, P., Blanco, M.A., Enrichment and fractionation of phospholipid concentrates by supercritical fluid extraction and chromatography, *Ital J Food Sci*, 1,12,2000
7. Tanaka, Y., Sakaki, I., Extraction of phospholipids from unused natural resources with supercritical carbon dioxide and an entrainer, *Journal of oleo science*, 54, 11, 2005
- 10 8. Bulley, N.R., Labay, L., Arntfield, S.D., Extraction/Fractionation of egg yolk using supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> and alcohol entrainers, *J supercritical fluids*, 5, 1992.

**WHAT WE CLAIM IS:**

1. A process for separating a feed material into soluble and insoluble components, comprising
  - 5 (e) providing a feed material comprising one or more of:
    - (i) at least 1% by mass phosphatidyl serine
    - (ii) at least 1% by mass sphingomyelin
    - (iii) at least 0.3 % by mass acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens
    - (iv) at least 0.5 % by mass aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids
    - 10 (v) at least 1% by mass cardiolipin
    - (vi) at least 0.3% by mass gangliosides
  - (f) providing a solvent comprising:
    - (i) supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>, and
    - (ii) a co-solvent comprising one or more C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohols, and water
  - 15 wherein the co-solvent makes up at least 10% by mass of the CO<sub>2</sub>, and the water content of the co-solvent is 0 to 40 % by mass
  - (g) contacting the feed material and the solvent and subsequently separating the solvent containing the soluble components from the insoluble components
  - (h) optionally separating the soluble components and the solvent.
- 20 2. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% phosphatidyl serine.
3. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2% phosphatidyl serine.
4. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5%  
25 phosphatidyl serine.

5. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% sphingomyelin.
6. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5% sphingomyelin.
- 5 7. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 15% sphingomyelin.
8. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% cardiolipin.
9. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2% cardiolipin.
10. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5% cardiolipin.
- 10 11. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 0.3% gangliosides.
12. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% gangliosides.
13. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2%  
15 gangliosides.
14. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
15. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
- 20 16. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 10% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
17. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.
18. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5%  
25 aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.
19. The process of claim 1 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 20% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.

20. A process for separating a feed material into soluble and insoluble components, comprising

(h) providing a feed material comprising one or more of:

(i) at least 1% by mass phosphatidyl serine,

5 (ii) at least 1% by mass sphingomyelin,

(iii) at least 0.3 % by mass acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens

(iv) at least 0.5 % by mass aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids

(v) at least 1% by mass cardiolipin, or

(vi) at least 0.3% by mass gangliosides

10 (i) providing a first solvent comprising supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>

(j) contacting the feed material and the first solvent and subsequently separating the first solvent containing the first soluble components from the first insoluble components

(k) optionally separating the first soluble components and the first solvent

(l) providing a second solvent comprising:

15 (iii) supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub>, and

(iv) a co-solvent comprising one or more C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohols, and water

wherein the co-solvent makes up at least 10% by mass of the CO<sub>2</sub>, and the water content of the co-solvent is 0 to 40% by mass

20 (m) contacting the first insoluble components and the second solvent and subsequently separating the second solvent containing the second soluble components from the second insoluble components

(n) optionally separating the second soluble components and the second solvent.

21. The process of claim 20 wherein the first solvent comprises a mixture of supercritical or near-critical CO<sub>2</sub> and less than 10% C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> monohydric alcohol.

22. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% phosphatidyl serine.
23. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2% phosphatidyl serine.
- 5 24. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5% phosphatidyl serine.
25. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% sphingomyelin.
26. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5%  
10 sphingomyelin.
27. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 15% sphingomyelin.
28. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% cardiolipin.
- 15 29. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2% cardiolipin.
30. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5% cardiolipin.
31. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than  
20 0.3% gangliosides.
32. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 1% gangliosides.
33. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2% gangliosides.
- 25 34. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% acylalkylphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.

35. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 2% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
36. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 10% acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
- 5 37. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 0.5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.
38. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than 5% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.
39. The process of claim 20 or claim 21 wherein the feed material comprises greater than  
10 20% aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.
40. The process of any one of claim 1 to 39 wherein the feed material is derived from terrestrial animals, marine animals, terrestrial plants, marine plants, or micro-organisms such as microalgae, yeast and bacteria.
41. The process of claim 40 wherein the feed material is derived from sheep, goat, pig,  
15 mouse, water buffalo, camel, yak, horse, donkey, llama, bovine or human.
42. The process of claim 40 or claim 41 wherein the feed material is selected from: tissue, a tissue fraction, organ, an organ fraction, milk, a milk fraction, colostrum, a colostrum fraction, blood and a blood fraction.
43. The process of claim 40 wherein the feed material is derived from dairy material, soy  
20 material, eggs, animal tissue, animal organ or animal blood.
44. The process of claim 40 wherein the feed material is selected from: a composition comprising dairy lipids, a composition comprising egg lipids, and a composition comprising marine lipids.
45. The process of any one of claims 1 to 44 wherein the feed material is a bovine milk  
25 fraction.
46. The process of claim 45 wherein the feed material is selected from: buttermilk, a buttermilk fraction, beta serum, a beta serum fraction, butter serum, a butter serum fraction, whey, a whey fraction, colostrum, and a colostrum fraction.

47. The process of any one of claims 1 to 46 wherein the feed material comprises milk fat globule membrane.
48. The process of any one of claims 1 to 47 wherein the feed material comprises at least:
- (a) 1% phosphatidyl serine, and
  - 5 (b) 0.3% gangliosides.
49. The process of claim 48 wherein the feed material comprises at least:
- (a) 1% phosphatidyl serine,
  - (b) 1% sphingomyelin, and
  - (c) 0.3% gangliosides.
- 10 50. The process of claim 48 wherein the feed material comprises at least:
- (a) 1% phosphatidyl serine,
  - (b) 1% sphingomyelin,
  - (c) 1% cardiolipin, and
  - (d) 0.3% gangliosides.
- 15 51. The process of any one of claims 1 to 50 wherein the feed material has been genetically modified.
52. The process of any one of claims 1 to 51 wherein the feed material is in solid form.
53. The process of claim 52 wherein the feed material is cryomilled before contact with a solvent.
- 20 54. The process of any one of claims 1 to 53 wherein the co-solvent comprises:
- (a) an alcohol selected from: methanol, ethanol, n-propanol, isopropanol and mixtures thereof; and
  - (b) 0-40% by mass water.

55. The process of claim 54 wherein the co-solvent comprises between 0 and 20% by mass water.
56. The process of claim 54 wherein the co-solvent comprises between 1 and 10% by mass water.
- 5 57. The process of any one of claims 54 to 56 wherein the alcohol is ethanol.
58. The process of any one of claims 1 to 57 wherein the co-solvent is 95% aqueous ethanol.
59. The process of any one of claims 1 to 58 wherein the mass fraction of the co-solvent in CO<sub>2</sub> is between 5% and 60%.
60. The process of claim 59 wherein the mass fraction is between 20% and 50%.
- 10 61. The process of claim 59 wherein the mass fraction is between 25% and 30%.
62. The process of any one of claims 1 to 61 wherein the contacting temperature between the feed material and solvent is between 10°C and 80°C.
63. The process of claim 62 wherein the contacting temperature is between 55°C and 65°C.
64. The process of any one of claims 1 to 63 wherein the contacting pressure is between 100  
15 bar and 500 bar.
65. The process of claim 64 wherein the contacting pressure is between 200 bar and 300 bar.
66. The process of any one of claims 1 to 65 wherein the ratio of the co-solvent to feed material is in the range 10:1 to 200:1.
67. The process of claim 66 wherein the ratio of the co-solvent to feed material is in the  
20 range 15:1 to 50:1.
68. The process of any one of claims 1 to 67 wherein the separating pressure is between atmospheric pressure and 90 bar.
69. The process of claim 68 wherein the separating pressure is between 40 bar and 60 bar.
70. The process of any one of claims 1 to 69 wherein the co-solvent is recycled for further  
25 use.
71. The process of any one of claims 1 to 70 wherein the CO<sub>2</sub> is recycled for further use.

72. The process of any one of claims 1 to 71 wherein the co-solvent is removed by evaporation under vacuum.
73. The process of any one of claims 1 to 72 wherein the feed material is contacted with a continuous flow of solvent.
- 5 74. The process of any one of claims 1 to 72 wherein the feed material is contacted with one or more batches of solvent.
75. The process of any one of claims 1 to 73 wherein the lipid and solvent streams are fed continuously.
76. The process of any one of claims 1 to 75 wherein the feed material and co-solvent  
10 streams are mixed prior to contacting with CO<sub>2</sub>.
77. A product produced by the process of any one of claims 1 to 76.
78. The product of claim 77 wherein the product contains more sphingomyelin than the feed material.
79. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 3% sphingomyelin.
- 15 80. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 10% sphingomyelin.
81. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 15% sphingomyelin.
82. The product of claim 77 wherein the product contains more phosphatidyl serine than the feed material.
83. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 5% phosphatidyl  
20 serine.
84. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 30% phosphatidyl serine.
85. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 70% phosphatidyl serine.
- 25 86. The product of claim 77 wherein the product contains more gangliosides than the feed material.

87. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 2% gangliosides.
88. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 4% gangliosides.
89. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 6% gangliosides.
90. The product of claim 77 wherein the product contains more cardiolipin than the feed  
5 material.
91. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 5% cardiolipin.
92. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 10% cardiolipin.
93. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 25% cardiolipin.
94. The product of claim 77 wherein the product contains more acylalkyphospholipids  
10 and/or plasmalogens than the feed material.
95. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 5%  
acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
96. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 10%  
acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
- 15 97. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 25%  
acylalkyphospholipids and/or plasmalogens.
98. The product of claim 77 wherein the product contains more aminoethylphosphonate  
and/or other phosphonolipids than the feed material.
99. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 5%  
20 aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.
100. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 10%  
aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.
101. The product of claim 77 wherein the product comprises greater than 25%  
aminoethylphosphonate and/or other phosphonolipids.

25

Figure 1

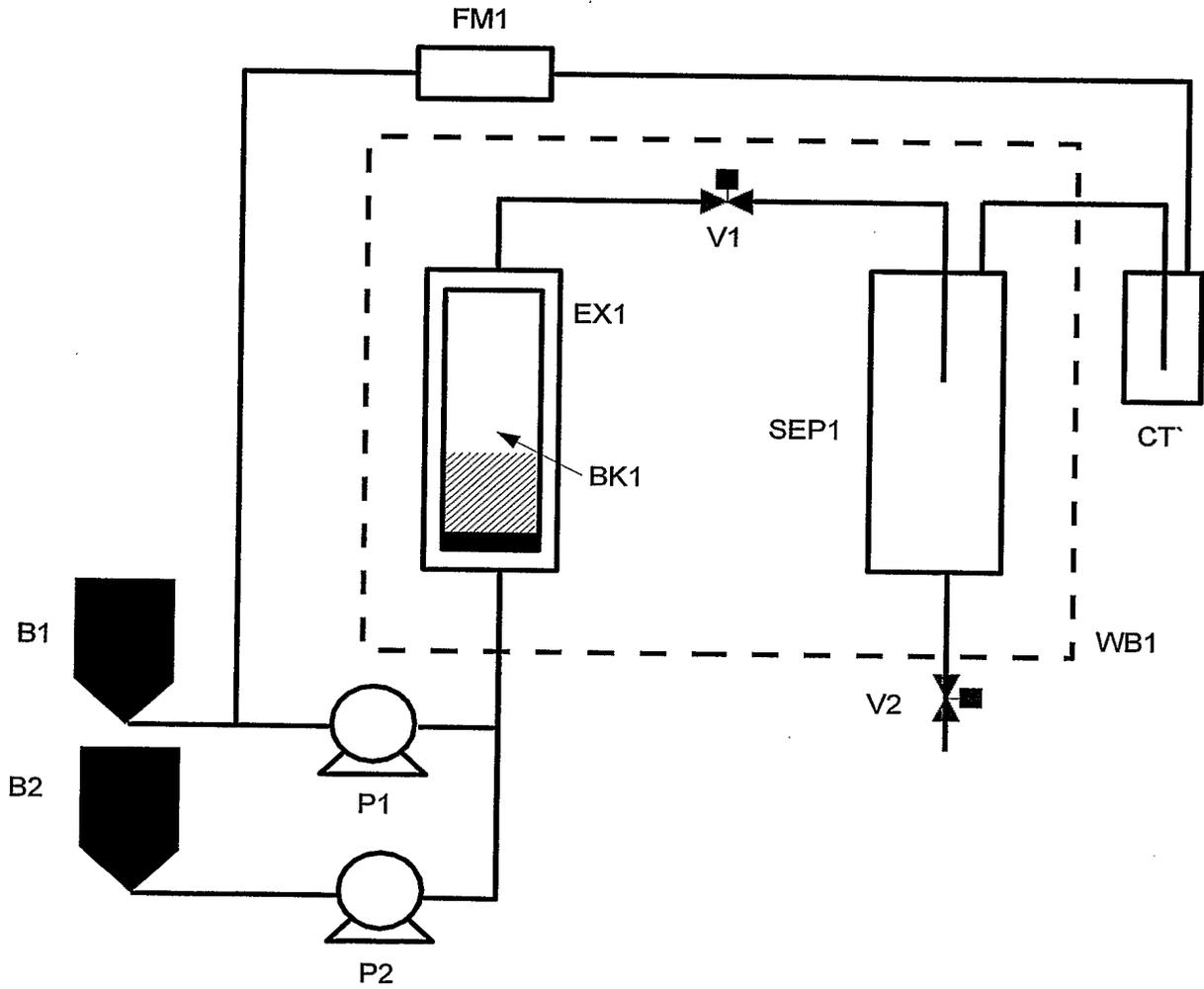


Figure 2

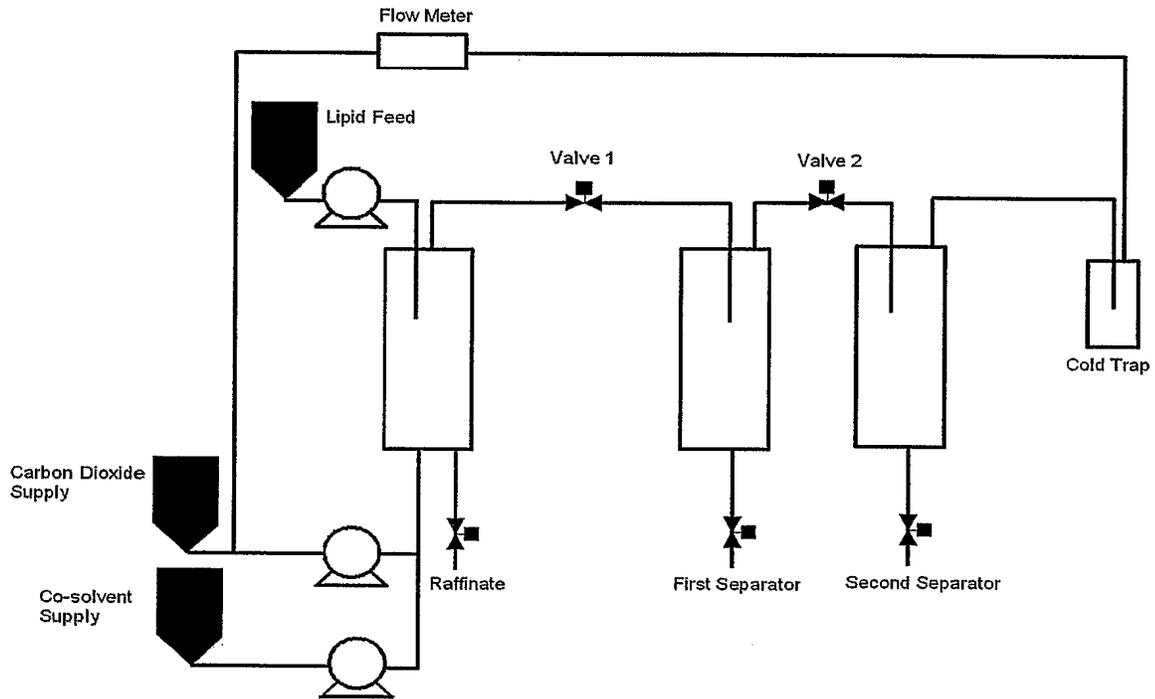


Figure 3

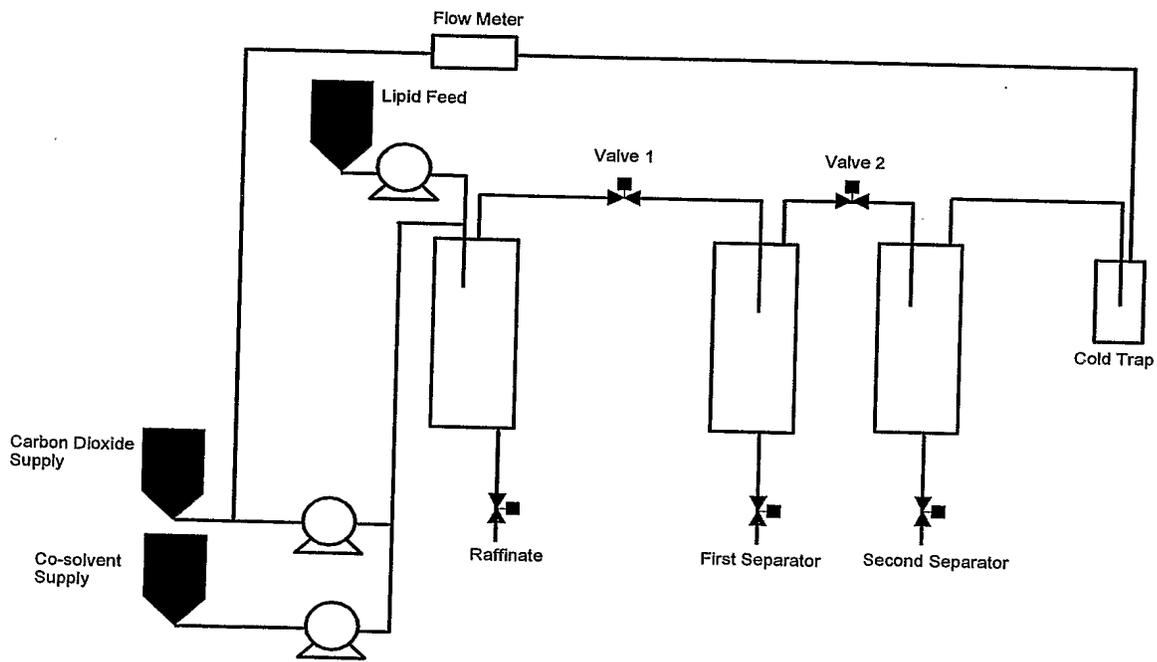
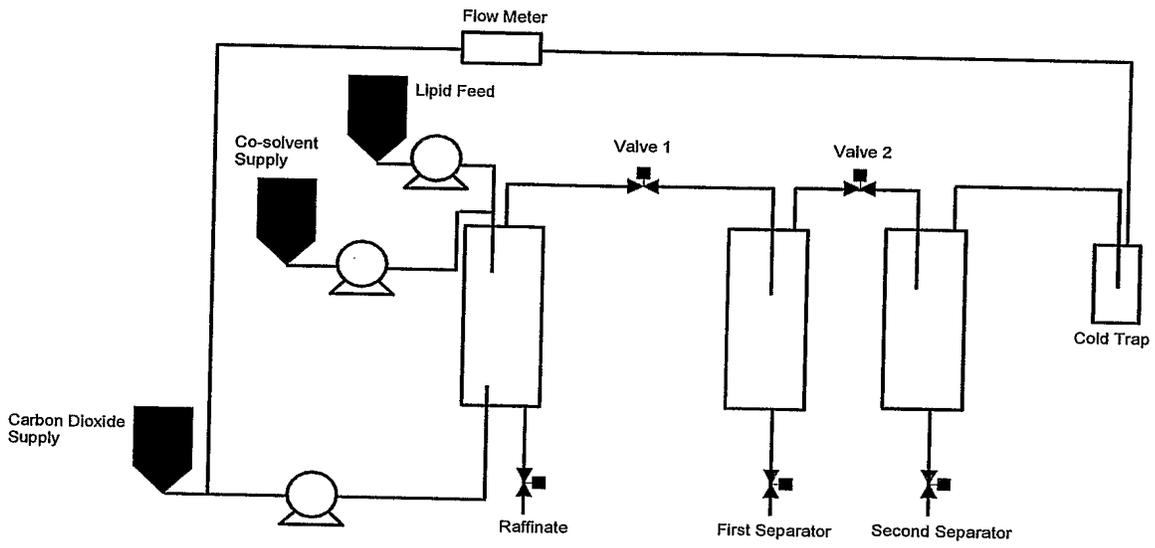


Figure 4



## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/NZ2007/000087

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

Int. Cl.

**C11B 7/00** (2006.01)      **C11B 1/10** (2006.01)      **A23L 1/48** (2006.01)

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)  
DWPI, JAPIO, FSTA, ESPACE, USPTO (phospholipid+, phosphatidylserine, carbon dioxide)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US 2005/0170063 A1 (CHORDIA et al.) 4 August 2005 See entire document.	1-101
A	Derwent abstract accession no. 2000-500083/45, Class D23 E11, EP 1004245 A2 (KRUPP UHDE GMBH) 31 May 2000. See abstract.	1, 20
A	Derwent abstract accession no. 2003-117963/11, Class B04 D13, KR 2002064645 A (GOSHENCRITEC CO LTD) 9 August 2002. See abstract.	1, 20
A	Patent Abstracts of Japan, JP 03-133991 (GREEN CROSS CORP: THE CHLORINE ENG CORP LTD) 7 June 1991 See abstract.	1, 20

 Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C See patent family annex

* Special categories of cited documents:		
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention	
"E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone	
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art	
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"&" document member of the same patent family	
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search  
21 June 2007Date of mailing of the international search report  
28 JUN 2007Name and mailing address of the ISA/AU  
AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE  
PO BOX 200, WODEN ACT 2606, AUSTRALIA  
E-mail address: pct@ipaaustralia.gov.au  
Facsimile No. (02) 6285 3929Authorized officer  
**ALBERT S. J. YONG**  
AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE  
(ISO 9001 Quality Certified Service)  
Telephone No : (02) 6283 2160

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

Information on patent family members

International application No.

**PCT/NZ2007/000087**

This Annex lists the known "A" publication level patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report. The Australian Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information.

Patent Document Cited in Search Report	Patent Family Member
US 2005170063	
EP 1004245	AU 61700/99 DE 19854807
CA 2288469	CN 1257660
KR 2002064645	
JP 3133991	

Due to data integration issues this family listing may not include 10 digit Australian applications filed since May 2001.

END OF ANNEX

(19) 世界知的所有権機関  
国際事務局



(43) 国際公開日  
2008年6月19日 (19.06.2008)

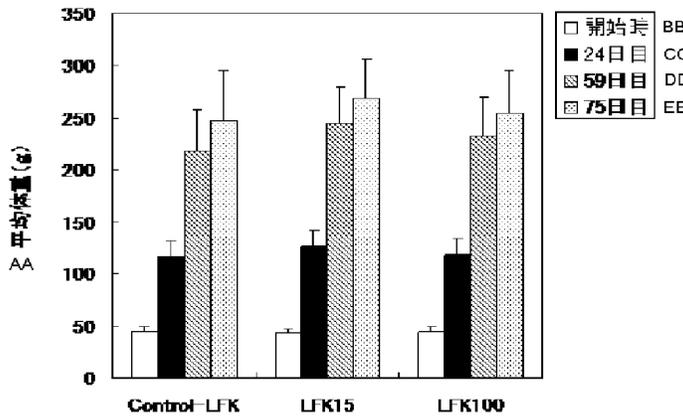
PCT

(10) 国際公開番号  
WO 2008/072563 A1

- (51) 国際特許分類: A23K 1/10 (2006.01) A23K 1/18 (2006.01)
  - (21) 国際出願番号: PCT/JP2007/073669
  - (22) 国際出願日: 2007年12月7日 (07.12.2007)
  - (25) 国際出願の言語: 日本語
  - (26) 国際公開の言語: 日本語
  - (30) 優先権データ: 特願 2006-333329  
2006年12月11日 (11.12.2006) JP
  - (71) 出願人 (米国を除く全ての指定国について): 日本水産株式会社 (NIPPON SUISAN KAISHA, LTD.) [JP/JP]; 〒1008686 東京都千代田区大手町2丁目6番2号 Tokyo (JP).
  - (72) 発明者; および
  - (75) 発明者/出願人 (米国についてのみ): 吉富 文司 (YOSHITOMI, Bunji) [JP/JP]; 〒1920906 東京都八王子市北野町559-6 日本水産株式会社中央研究所内 Tokyo (JP).
  - (81) 指定国 (表示のない限り、全ての種類の国内保護が可能): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SV, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.
  - (84) 指定国 (表示のない限り、全ての種類の広域保護が可能): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), ユーラシア (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), ヨーロッパ (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MT, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).
- 添付公開書類:  
— 国際調査報告書

(54) Title: FEED USING PEELED KRILL AS THE STARTING MATERIAL AND METHOD OF PREVENTING DECREASE IN FISH GROWTH RATE BY USING THE SAME

(54) 発明の名称: 原料として外殻を除去したオキアミを用いた飼料及びそれを用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下の抑制方法



AA. AVERAGE BODY WEIGHT (g)  
 BB. STARTING  
 CC. DAY 24  
 DD. DAY 59  
 EE. DAY 75

(57) Abstract: It is intended to provide a substitute for fish meal that has been used as a protein source in feeds for cultured fishes. It is also intended to effectively utilize krill as a feed material which has been employed as a feed material only for limited purposes. Specifically, a feed using krill as a part or the whole of the protein source, characterized in that peeled krill are used as the krill. It is preferable that the fluorine content of the krill has been lowered to 250 mg/kg or less on the basis of dry weight by peeling. A method of preventing a decrease in the growth rate of fish by using krill as a starting material of a feed characterized in that peeled krill are employed as the protein source of the feed for cultured fish.

(57) 要約: 養魚用飼料のタンパク源である魚粉の代替物を提供するものであり、また、飼料原料としての利用が限定されていたオキアミの飼料原料としての活用を可能とするものである。具体的には、飼料のタンパク源の全量または一部としてオキアミを用いた飼料であって、オキアミとして外殻を除去したオキアミを用いたことを特徴

とする飼料であり、外殻を除去したことによりフッ素含有量が250mg/kg乾燥重量以下に減少したものが好ましい。外殻を除去したオキアミを養魚用飼料のタンパク源として用いることを特徴とする、オキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法である。

WO 2008/072563 A1

## 明 細 書

原料として外殻を除去したオキアミを用いた飼料及びそれを用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下の抑制方法

## 技術分野

[0001] 本発明は、飼料のタンパク原料である魚粉の代替物に関する。

## 背景技術

[0002] Food and Agriculture Organizationによれば、全世界における肉食性の養殖魚の生産量は1990年代に大きく増加し、この成長は今後も続くと予想されている。水産養殖業界で使用される飼料は通常イワシ、カタクチイワシ、アジ、マアジなどの多穫魚の魚粉及び魚油を主原料としている。しかし、これらの資源は利用しつくされており、かつ、生産量増加の見込みは少ない。これが魚類飼料の水産原料の代替物の研究に推進力を与えている。魚粉の代替としては水産物由来のタンパク質よりも安く入手しやすい植物由来のものがあるが、必須アミノ酸とミネラルが不十分であり、反栄養的因子や炭水化物複合物の存在などのためそれらの使用は限られている。畜肉ミール、骨粉、ブラッドミール、フェザーミールなどの動物由来タンパク質が魚粉の一部代替として用いられていたが、狂牛病、鳥インフルエンザのために養魚用飼料への使用は制限された。その結果、現在、魚粉の代替として用いられている動物性タンパク質は存在しない。

[0003] 水産資源には未利用あるいは低利用でありかつ大量のバイオマスがあるものがある。オキアミはそれらのうちもっとも期待できる資源のひとつである。オキアミは「euphausiids」に対して一般的に用いられている用語である。世界では、およそ85種類のオキアミが報告されている。特に南極オキアミ(*Euphausia superba*)は南洋の生態系において重要な種である。なぜならオキアミは鯨、あざらし、海鳥など多くの上位捕獲者の主要な食料であり、植物性プランクトンの主要な消費者である。オキアミは1960年代以降商業的に漁獲されてきており、今日では数カ国による活発な漁獲の対象となっている。南極オキアミの現在の資源量は5億トンと推定されている。2004年12月から2005年11月の漁獲量は約12万7千トンであった。Convention on the

Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living resourcesにより設定されている南極オキアミに対する漁獲制限量は音波調査によるバイオマスから推定している;南大西洋の漁獲制限量は2000年には400万トンであり、実際の漁獲量のおよそ40倍である。

大量のバイオマスの存在にもかかわらず、需要がないために現在の世界のオキアミの漁獲量は限られている。オキアミ製品のうち圧倒的に多いのは船上で凍結されたオキアミであり、ほとんどが水産養殖又は釣り用に使用されている。オキアミ、特に南極オキアミについてはヒトの食料に適した製品の開発にかなりの努力が払われてきたが、ヒトの食料用の市場サイズはいまだ小さい。

- [0004] オキアミの飼料原料としての適性は1980年代のいくつかの論文の題材となっており、オキアミは魚類用飼料に用いることができると結論された(非特許文献1～3)が、それ以上研究は進まなかった。そのひとつの理由は、オキアミのフッ素含有量が高いこと(南極オキアミでは1000-2500mg/kg)及び欧州連合が飼料中のフッ素の最大量を150mg/kg dry feedと規定したことによる。

オキアミミールを含有する試験試料を給餌された魚Barramundi (*Lates calcarifer*) の幼生は成長性の減少と甲状腺ホルモン(T4)の減少を示したことが報告されている(非特許文献4)。サケ科魚類の飼料の原料の魚粉の一部または全部をオキアミミールで置換した試験が報告されている(非特許文献3)。多くの場合、飼料中の魚粉をすべてオキアミで代替すると成長率と飼料効率が低下し、魚粉の一部をオキアミで代替すると同等あるいは優れた結果が得られる(非特許文献5)。飼料中の魚粉の全量をオキアミで代替することは行われていない。

Julshamn ら(非特許文献6)は海水のアトランティックサーモン(*Salmo salar*)に市販の魚粉飼料の魚粉をオキアミミールで10-30%置換した飼料を12週間摂餌させる試験を行い、サケの飼料においては、魚粉の48%までオキアミミールで置換しても成長性や生存率に影響を与えないと報告している。

オキアミのフッ素が外殻に高濃度で存在することは知られている(非特許文献7)。

- [0005] 非特許文献1: Aquaculture 24, p191-196 (1981), Grave, H., "Fluoride content of salmonids fed on Antarctic krill."

非特許文献2: Diet. Bull. Japan Soc. Sci. Fish 50, p815-820 (1984), Allahpichay, Ian

d Shimizu, C., “Supplemental effect of the whole body krill meal and thenon-muscle krill meal of *Euphausia superba* in fish diet.”

非特許文献3: *Aquaculture* 70, p193-205 (1988), Storebakken, T., “Krill as a potential feed source for Salmonids.”

非特許文献4: *Aquaculture* 257, p453-464 (2006), Nankervis, L. and Southgate, P., “An integrated assessment of gross marine protein sources used in formulated microb round diets for barramundi (*Lates calcarifer*) larvae.”

非特許文献5: *Proc. World Symp. Finfish Nutrition and Fishfeed Technology*. Hamburg, 20-23 June 1978. Vol. II. Heenemann, Berlin, p281-292 (1979), Koops et al., “Krill in trout diets.”

非特許文献6: *Aquaculture Nutr.* 10, p9-13 (2004), Julshamn, K. et al., “Fluoride retention of Antarctic salmon (*Salmo salar*) fed krill meal.”

非特許文献7: *J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can.* 36, p1414-1416 (1979), Soevik, T. and Braekkan, O. R., “Fluoride in Antarctic krill (*Euphausia superba*) and Atlantic krill (*Meganoc ytiphanes norvegica*).”

## 発明の開示

### 発明が解決しようとする課題

- [0006] 本発明は、今後不足が予想される、養魚用飼料のタンパク源である魚粉の代替物を提供することを課題とする。また、飼料原料としての利用が限定されていたオキアミの飼料原料としての活用を可能とすることを課題とする。

### 課題を解決するための手段

- [0007] オキアミは魚類飼料に一定割合以上使用すると、魚類の成長率が低下することが知られている。発明者は、その原因がオキアミの高いフッ素含量によるのではないかと考え、本発明を完成させた。オキアミのフッ素含量が高いことからヒトへの影響を考慮して飼料への使用が制限されている。したがって、オキアミを一定以上飼料原料として用いることを誰も試みることがなかった。しかし、オキアミのうちフッ素含量が最も高い外殻を除去することによりオキアミのフッ素含量を1/4以下に減少させることができることを確認し、それを飼料に添加し飼育試験を行うことにより、飼料原料のタン

パク質として100%オキアミを使用しても魚類の成長率に悪影響を及ぼさないことを確認し、本発明を完成させた。

[0008] 本発明は、(1)～(6)の飼料を要旨とする。

(1)飼料のタンパク源の全量または一部としてオキアミを用いた飼料であって、オキアミとして外殻を除去したオキアミを用いたことを特徴とする飼料。

(2)飼料のタンパク源である魚粉の全量または一部をオキアミで代替した飼料であって、オキアミとして外殻を除去したオキアミを用いたことを特徴とする(1)の飼料。

(3)外殻を除去したオキアミが、オキアミを加熱乾燥し、得られたオキアミ乾燥物を裁断し、外殻等の軽量画分を風力分級機により除いて得られたものである(1)又は(2)の飼料。

(4)外殻を除去したオキアミが、外殻を除去したことによりフッ素含有量が250mg/kg乾燥重量以下に減少したものである(1)ないし(3)いずれかの飼料。

(5)外殻を除去したオキアミを飼料のタンパク源の50重量%以上用いることを特徴とする(1)ないし(4)いずれかの飼料。

(6)飼料が養魚用飼料である(1)ないし(5)いずれかの飼料。

[0009] 本発明は、(7)～(11)のオキアミを飼料に添加することによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法を要旨とする。

(7)外殻を除去したオキアミを養魚用飼料のタンパク源として用いることを特徴とする、オキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。

(8)外殻を除去したオキアミを魚粉の代替として用いることを特徴とする、(7)のオキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。

(9)外殻を除去したオキアミが、オキアミを加熱乾燥し、得られたオキアミ乾燥物を裁断し、外殻等の軽量画分を風力分級機により除いて得られたものである(7)又は(8)のオキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。

(10)外殻を除去したオキアミが、外殻を除去したことによりフッ素含有量が250mg/kg乾燥重量以下に減少したものである(7)ないし(9)いずれかのオキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。

(11)外殻を除去したオキアミを飼料のタンパク源の50重量%以上用いることを特徴

とする(7)ないし(10)のオキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。

### 発明の効果

- [0010] 本発明の飼料は、フッ素による悪影響を発現することなく、飼料のタンパク源として用いることができる。養魚用飼料として用いた場合、魚類の成長性に悪影響を与えることなく、魚粉を原料とする養魚用飼料と同等に用いることができる。従来、魚粉の一部の代替としてしか用いることができなかつたオキアミを高い割合で、あるいは、全部の代替として用いることができる。

### 図面の簡単な説明

- [0011] [図1]95日間の試験期間中の魚のフッ素取り込みと脊椎骨のフッ素濃度の関係を示した図である。魚のフッ素取り込みは、「各魚の飼料摂取量×飼料中のフッ素濃度」で計算した。
- [図2]試験試料を95日間摂取したニジマスの肝臓切片。図の符号は表2と同じ。写真中の線分は20 $\mu$ m。
- [図3]比較例1のニジマスの成長率を示す図である。
- [図4]比較例2のブリの成長率を示す図である。
- [図5]実施例3のブリの成長率を示す図である。

### 発明を実施するための最良の形態

- [0012] 本発明において飼料とは、主に魚粉を原料とする水産養殖、畜産、養鶏、ペット用などの飼料である。通常、これらの飼料は魚粉等の動物質性飼料原料に、穀類、そうこう類、植物性油かす類、植物性蛋白質類、ビタミン類、ミネラル類、さらに色素等を加えてペレット、顆粒、粉末状等の製品とされる。本発明は、特に魚粉を多く用いる養魚用、甲殻類用の水産養殖用飼料に適している。養魚、甲殻類としてはマダイなどのタイ類、ニジマス、サケ、マス等のサケ類、ハマチ、シマアジ、マス、ヒラメ、ウナギ、エビ等の養殖対象魚が例示される。

本発明において使用するオキアミは、資源量が豊富な南極オキアミが好ましいが、その他のオキアミでも同様に使用できる。

従来、オキアミは外殻も含んだ全体をボイルして乾燥したものがオキアミミールと称

されて用いられてきた。

本発明において、外殻を除去したオキアミとは、オキアミの触角、顎脚、脚、頭部外殻、胴部外殻、尾部外殻部分を除去したものである。100%除去するに越したことはないが、実質的には、75%程度以上除去したものを使用することができる。フッ素含有量で表現すれば、外殻を除去したことによりフッ素含有量が250mg/kg以下に減少したものが好ましい。通常の魚粉でもフッ素含有量は100~200mg/kg程度含まれる。

外殻を除去する方法は、オキアミを煮熟、蒸煮、誘電加熱、マイクロ波等の方法により加熱した後、もしくは加熱を行わず直接、乾燥し、水分を15%以下にする。乾燥方法は熱風乾燥、真空凍結乾燥などが例示されるが、どんな方法でもよい。得られたオキアミ乾燥物を約5mm程度の断片に裁断し、風力分級機に供し、外殻等の軽量画分と主にオキアミ筋肉等の重量画分とに分級する。重量画分に外殻を除去したオキアミ画分を得ることができる。あるいは、オキアミの外殻をロール式むき身機等(特公昭57-1207、特公平7-40868等)で除去することもできる。

タンパク源の全量又は一部としてオキアミを用いるとは、通常飼料の原料として用いられる、魚粉(フィッシュミール)他の動物タンパク質、又は、大豆粕他の植物タンパク質等の合計重量の全部あるいは一部分をオキアミで置換する意味である。外殻を除去したオキアミを飼料のタンパク源の30重量%以上用いるとは、これらタンパク質の合計重量の30重量%以上を外殻を除いたオキアミで置換する意味である。

[0013] 以下に本発明の実施例を記載するが、本発明はこれらに何ら限定されるものではない。

#### 実施例

[0014] <製造例1>外殻を除去したオキアミミール(以下、低フッ素オキアミミール、又は、L FKとも表記する。)の製造

凍結した生の南極オキアミ(日本水産株式会社製)を室温で解凍し、95°Cで10分間煮てから、連続ベルト式乾燥機(DC-200, Samson Co., Ltd., Kagawa, Japan)を用いて120°C(温風温度)でオキアミの水分量が10%以下になるまで乾燥した。乾燥したオキアミ全体をハンマーミル(D-3, Dalton

Co., Ltd, Tokyo, Japan)と5mmのメッシュのふるいを用いて粉砕した。粉砕したオキアミは風力分級機 (VS10, Hattori Seisakusho Co., Ltd., Kyoto, Japan)にかけ、低フッ素オキアミール(LFK)と外殻とに分離した。

表1にオキアミ全体の乾燥物、LFKおよび外殻の組成を示した。外殻を除去することにより、粗タンパクはオキアミ全体の乾燥物では66.04%であるのに対し、LFKでは76.76%と約10%高くなった。除去した外殻の粗タンパクは56.74%であった。LFKの粗脂肪、灰分及びアスタキサンチンはオキアミ全体の乾燥物や除去した外殻よりも低かった。これはアスタキサンチンを含有するオキアミの脂肪組織が除去した外殻にしっかりと付着していたからである。

LFKのフッ素含有量は210mg/kgであり、オキアミ全体の乾燥物の870mg/kgと比較すると約1/4であった。除去した外殻には1800mg/kgのフッ素が含まれていた。オキアミ全体の乾燥物、LFK、及び除去した外殻の脂肪酸組成はほとんど同じであった。脂質種類のうち、トリアシルグリセロールは、LFKでは20.6%で、オキアミ全体の乾燥物では26.2%とLFKのほうが低く、リン脂質では、LFKでは77.3%、オキアミ全体の乾燥物では72.0%とLFKのほうが高かった。

[0015] [表1]

オキアミミールと低フッ素オキアミミールの比較(乾燥物ベース(重量%))			
	オキアミ全体の 乾燥物	低フッ素 オキアミミール	除去した外殻
粗タンパク	66.04	76.76	56.74
粗脂肪	19.87	13.27	21.51
粗繊維	2.44	0.11	4.46
灰分	11.65	9.18	14.83
可溶性無窒素物	0	0.79	2.45
アスタキサンチン(mg/kg)	90	38	96
フッ素(mg/kg)	870	210	1800
<b>脂肪酸組成</b>			
14:00	11.33	10.81	11.45
16:00	21.67	22.11	21.82
16:1n-7	8.07	7.73	7.78
18:1n-9	19.1	19.28	19.33
18:2n-6	1.39	1.48	1.5
18:3n-3	0.71	0.77	0.75
18:4n-3	2.38	2.24	2.54
20:1n-9	1.04	1	1.04
20:4n-3	0.36	0.37	0.36
20:4n-6	0.29	0.3	0.31
20:5n-3	14.21	14.31	13.55
22:5n-3	0.37	0.37	0.36
22:6n-3	7.12	8.11	6.87
<b>脂質分類</b>			
炭化水素	0	0	0
ワックスエステル	微量	微量	微量
トリアシルグリセロール	26.2	20.6	26.1
遊離脂肪酸	1	1.4	1.3
ステロール	0.8	0.7	0.8
リン脂質	72	77.3	71.8

[0016] <実施例1> 低フッ素オキアミミール(LFK)を使用した飼料の製造

表2に示した配合で試験飼料を製造した。各飼料の組成を表2に示した。2軸エクストルーダ( $\alpha$ -50, Suehiro EPM Corporation, Mie, Japan)を用いて、LFKで魚粉の一定量を代替した5種類の飼料とコントロールとして、100%魚粉を用いた飼料を製造した。飼料の主要蛋白源としては、褐色魚粉を用い、魚粉のうち、7.69% (LFK7)、15.39% (LFK15)、30.77% (LFK30)、46.16% (LFK46)、100.00% (LFK100)をLFKで置換する配合とした。魚粉をLFKで代替する割合が増加すると、飼料中の粗タンパクは52.05% (Control)から54.18% (LFK100)と増加し、フッ素量は89mg/kg (Control)から220mg/kg (LFK100)と増加した。しかし、灰分は12.38% (Control)から8.24% (LFK100)と減少した。精製魚油(日本水産株式会社製)を主脂質源として添加した。飼料の粗脂肪は16.51%から17.21%であった。

表3に試験飼料の必須アミノ酸含有量を示した。飼料中のLFKによる代替率が高まるほど、ヒスチジン以外の全アミノ酸が増加した。

表4に飼料の脂肪酸組成と脂質分類を示した。n-3系高度不飽和脂肪酸は総脂肪酸のうちの26.13%から30.45%であった。エイコサペンタエン酸 (EPA; 20:5 n-3)は飼料中のLFK割合の増加に伴い、コントロール8.92%からLFK100の12.42%と増加し、ドコサヘキサエン酸 (DHA; 22:6 n-3)はコントロール13.84% からLFK100の10.56%へと減少した。飼料中の脂質分類では、飼料中の魚粉がLFKで代替される率が高くなると、トリアシルグリセロールはコントロールの70.9%からLFK100の42.0%へと減少し、リン脂質はコントロールの27.9%からLFK100の56.8%へと増加した。

[0017] [表2]

試験飼料の配合と化学組成 (乾燥物ベース (重量%))

	飼料					
	コントロール	LFK7	LFK15	LMK30	LFK46	LFK100
褐色魚粉	57.98	53.52	49.06	40.14	31.22	0
低フッ素オキアミミール (LFK)	0	4.46	8.92	17.84	26.76	57.98
小麦粉 (Off grade)	11.6	11.6	11.6	11.6	11.6	11.6
脱脂大豆ミール	8.92	8.92	8.92	8.92	8.92	8.92
キャツサバ澱粉	7.14	7.14	7.14	7.14	7.14	7.14
ビタミンプレミックス	1.83	1.83	1.83	1.83	1.83	1.83
ミネラルプレミックス	1.83	1.83	1.83	1.83	1.83	1.83
飼料用魚油	10.7	10.7	10.7	10.7	10.7	10.7
合計	100	100	100	100	100	100
LFKによる魚粉の代替率 (%)	0	7.69	15.39	30.77	46.16	100
粗タンパク	52.05	52.56	52.32	52.59	53.06	54.18
粗脂肪	17.21	16.51	16.98	17.14	17.19	17.02
粗繊維	0.42	0.63	0.63	0.53	0.53	0.64
灰分	12.38	12.23	11.81	11.22	10.55	8.24
可溶性無窒素物	17.94	18.08	18.35	18.62	18.67	19.91
アスタキサンチン (mg/kg)	ND	3.2	5.5	7.5	7.6	8.6
フッ素 (mg/kg)	89	100	110	130	150	220

Vitamin premix and mineral premix according to National Research Council (NRC, 1993) recommendations.

ND: Not detectable (検出限界 0.5mg/kg)

[0018] [表3]

試験飼料の必須アミノ酸含有量 (g/100g diet, wet basis)

	Diets					
	コントロール	LFK7	LFK15	LFK30	LFK46	LFK100
アルギニン	2.774	2.843	2.945	2.922	2.925	3.231
ヒスチジン	1.308	1.279	1.279	1.101	1.133	1.013
イソロイシン	2.058	2.083	2.19	2.2	2.181	2.461
ロイシン	3.426	3.489	3.659	3.588	3.593	3.901
リジン	3.449	3.501	3.663	3.642	3.565	3.963
メチオニン	1.081	1.094	1.169	1.146	1.146	1.337
システイン	0.218	0.25	0.257	0.244	0.261	0.236
フェニルアラニン	1.919	1.963	2.068	2.069	2.051	2.306
チロシン	1.284	1.33	1.414	1.444	1.429	1.584
スレオニン	1.783	1.801	1.876	1.793	1.816	1.849
バリン	2.359	2.37	2.45	2.347	2.377	2.431

[0019] [表4]

試験飼料の脂肪酸組成 (総脂肪酸中の重量%) 及び脂質分類 (総脂質中の重量%)

	Diets					
	コントロール	LFK7	LFK15	LFK30	LFK46	LFK100
14:00	4.75	5	4.51	5.83	5.14	6.69
16:00	14.41	15.01	12.63	16.36	13.3	15.06
16:1 <i>n</i> -7	5.51	5.55	6.09	6.19	6.36	7.66
18:1 <i>n</i> -9	15.59	15.73	16.48	17.37	16.55	19.85
18:2 <i>n</i> -6	4.55	4.44	4.67	4.59	5.05	5.04
18:3 <i>n</i> -3	1.16	1.14	1.24	1.11	1.3	1.2
18:4 <i>n</i> -3	1.89	1.86	2.13	2.02	2.32	2.22
20:1 <i>n</i> -9	6.34	6.13	5.93	5.92	4.76	3.53
20:4 <i>n</i> -3	0.68	0.66	0.73	0.66	0.7	0.54
20:4 <i>n</i> -6	0.95	0.92	0.99	0.88	0.91	0.63
20:5 <i>n</i> -3 (EPA)	8.92	9.08	10.39	10.25	12.08	12.42
22:5 <i>n</i> -3	1.6	1.54	1.67	1.47	1.51	1
22:6 <i>n</i> -3 (DHA)	13.84	13.39	14.43	13.2	14.05	10.56
炭化水素	0	0	0	0	0	0
ワックスエステル	微量	微量	微量	微量	微量	微量
トリアシルグリセロール	70.9	67.1	62.5	60.5	60.3	42
遊離脂肪酸	0.7	0.8	1.1	1.2	1	1.2
ステロール	0.5	0	0	0	0.7	0
リン脂質	27.9	32.1	36.4	38.3	38	56.8

[0020] &lt;実施例2&gt;

## 1. 試験方法

95日間の給餌試験を高知大学農学部の淡水試験施設にて行った。試験魚として、愛媛県の藤岡養鱒場から入手したニジマスを用いた。試験開始前、魚には市販の飼料(初期餌料 D-2、日本水産株式会社製)を給餌し、無作為に2×100尾ずつの6群に分けた。各群の魚は約4.1gであった。全群とも屋内の200L円形ポリカーボネートの水槽に保持し、各水槽には100L/hの速度で井戸水を供給した。試験期間中の平

均水温は $18.4 \pm 0.3^{\circ}\text{C}$ であり、すべての水槽を曝気した。試験期間中(2005年10月－2006年1月)の日照時間は現地の自然条件のままである( $33^{\circ} 34' \text{ N}$ ,  $133^{\circ} 39' \text{ E}$ )。

試験飼料として、実施例1で製造した6種類の飼料を用いた。試験飼料は人手により1日2回(9時と15時)飽食給餌し、飼料消費量を毎日記録した。

[0021] 試験開始時、摂餌開始後36、64、95日目に、各群の全魚の体重をフェノキシエタノール麻酔下で測定した。魚はサンプリング前24時間絶食させた。試験終了時に各水槽から15尾の魚を無作為にサンプリングした。それらの体重と摘出した肝臓の重量を測定し、肝重量比(HSI)を計算し、肝臓のパラフィン切片を調整した。皮を除いた背部の筋肉と脊椎骨を用いて化学組成とフッ素の解析を行った。脊椎骨は $95^{\circ}\text{C}$ で60分間煮た後、0.1%濃度のアルカラーゼ2.4L FG (Novozymes A/S, Bagsvaerd, Denmark)中、室温下で一晩攪拌した。骨を蒸留水で洗浄し、 $85^{\circ}\text{C}$ で3時間乾燥させた。分析するまで、すべてのサンプルを $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$ で保存した。

## [0022] 2. 分析方法

分析は財団法人日本食品分析センター、又は、日本水産株式会社食品分析センターにて行った。水分含量は $105^{\circ}\text{C}$ で2時間乾燥後の重量の減少から計算した。粗タンパク量はケールダール法(窒素係数6.25)により測定した。粗脂肪量はジエチルエーテルで抽出後、重量測定法に測定した。灰分量は $550^{\circ}\text{C}$ で燃焼後測定した。可溶性無窒素物は次式により計算した:総湿重量－(水分含量＋粗タンパク量＋粗脂肪量＋粗繊維＋灰分量)。フッ素は、 $\text{H}_2\text{SiF}_6$ としてアリザリンコンプレキソンーランタン試薬で発色させ、620nmの波長で吸光度を測定した。

アミノ酸組成は高速液体クロマトグラフとアミノ酸分析機(L-8500, 日立 High-Technologies Corporation)を用いた常法であるニンヒドリン反応法により測定した。トリプトファンは測定しなかった。

総脂質はBligh and Dyerの変法(Bligh and Dyer, 1959)により抽出した。脂肪酸組成はDB-WAX fused silica capillary column付きのガスクロマトグラフ(HP-6800, Hewlett-Packard, Yokogawa Electric, Tokyo, Japan)を用いて測定した。総脂質の組成は薄層クロマトグラフと水素イオン化検出器(Iatroscan TH-10 TLC-FLD Analyzer, Iatron laboratories Inc., Tokyo,

Japan)を用いて解析した。

試験終了後、各群から15尾の魚を無作為にサンプリングし、肝臓の組織標本を切り出し、中性10%ホルマリンで固定し、パラフィン包埋した。4  $\mu$  mの切片とし、ヘマトキシリン及びエオジンで染色した。

[0023] 3. 統計解析

各水槽の魚体重はPearsonのカイ二乗検定により正規分布していることを確認した。各水槽の魚体重の差を検定するために一元配置分散分析(ANOVA)を行った。群間の差を比較するときはデータを、重複した水槽を偶然要因とする多重比較検定(Scheffe's F)を用いて検定した。摂餌量(FI)の差、特殊成長率(SGR)、飼料効率(FE)、肝臓重量比(HSI)は一元配置分散分析を用いて検定した。生残率はLogrank検定を用いて比較した。各魚のフッ素摂取量と脊椎骨中のフッ素濃度の相関直線は、マイクロソフトエクセル(Microsoft Cooperation, Redmond, WA)を用いて、作図した。すべての統計的データ処理はマッキントッシュ用Statcel™(OMS-Publishing, Saitama, Japan)を用いて行った。

$P < 0.05$ を有意差ありとした。

[0024] 4. 結果

(1)成長性

表5に6種の試験飼料を摂餌した魚の成長性を示す。0、36、64及び95日目に各群の体重を測定したが、どの中間時点においても平均体重から有意差はなかった( $P < 0.05$ )。95日目の成長性についてもいずれの試験群のFI, SGR, FE, HSI及び生存率においても顕著な差は認められなかった( $P < 0.05$ )。表6は95日目の背部の筋肉の化学組成を示す。コントロール群と各試験群間に、水分量(75.5-76.0%)、粗タンパク(20.1-20.9%)、粗脂肪(2.5-2.9%)、灰分(1.4-2.1%)においても顕著な差は認められなかった。

[0025] [表5]

	試験飼料					
	コントロール	LFK7	LFK15	LFK30	LFK46	LFK100
試験前体重 (g)	4.19±1.37 <sup>a</sup>	4.00±1.27 <sup>a</sup>	4.20±1.44 <sup>a</sup>	4.04±1.25 <sup>a</sup>	4.26±1.24 <sup>a</sup>	4.10±1.23 <sup>a</sup>
36日目の体重 (g)	18.35±6.72 <sup>a</sup>	17.98±6.36 <sup>a</sup>	17.83±6.30 <sup>a</sup>	17.94±5.74 <sup>a</sup>	18.86±6.14 <sup>a</sup>	17.27±5.74 <sup>a</sup>
64日目の体重 (g)	39.97±13.86 <sup>a</sup>	41.10±13.68 <sup>a</sup>	41.34±14.37 <sup>a</sup>	40.01±12.42 <sup>a</sup>	41.95±13.53 <sup>a</sup>	39.17±12.20 <sup>a</sup>
95日目の最終体重 (g)	73.94±22.49 <sup>a</sup>	72.75±21.21 <sup>a</sup>	72.64±25.37 <sup>a</sup>	72.79±20.83 <sup>a</sup>	73.31±22.76 <sup>a</sup>	72.90±20.31 <sup>a</sup>
飼料摂取量 (FI) (g/fish)	64.35±0.60 <sup>a</sup>	62.91±1.01 <sup>a</sup>	62.77±1.43 <sup>a</sup>	64.50±3.88 <sup>a</sup>	61.10±1.58 <sup>a</sup>	64.35±0.06 <sup>a</sup>
比増重速度 (SGR) (%)	3.06±0.06 <sup>a</sup>	3.01±0.06 <sup>a</sup>	2.99±0.01 <sup>a</sup>	3.06±0.03 <sup>a</sup>	3.01±0.02 <sup>a</sup>	3.01±0.00 <sup>a</sup>
飼料効率 (FE)	0.87±0.03 <sup>a</sup>	0.87±0.02 <sup>a</sup>	0.87±0.02 <sup>a</sup>	0.86±0.03 <sup>a</sup>	0.88±0.02 <sup>a</sup>	0.86±0.01 <sup>a</sup>
肝臓重量比 (HSI)	0.90±0.15 <sup>a</sup>	0.95±0.11 <sup>a</sup>	0.88±0.13 <sup>a</sup>	0.87±0.11 <sup>a</sup>	0.97±0.14 <sup>a</sup>	0.93±0.10 <sup>a</sup>
生残率 (%)	98.50±0.71 <sup>a</sup>	99.50±0.71 <sup>a</sup>	97.50±0.71 <sup>a</sup>	98.00±0.00 <sup>a</sup>	97.00±1.41 <sup>a</sup>	99.50±0.71 <sup>a</sup>

飼料摂取量 (FI) = 乾飼料摂取量/魚数  
 比増重速度 (SGR) = [ln(最終魚体重) - ln(試験前魚体重)]/日数 × 100  
 飼料効率 (FE) = 湿増加体重量/乾飼料摂取量  
 肝臓重量比 (HSI) = 湿肝臓重量/湿体重 × 100  
 数値は平均値 ± 標準偏差  
 同列において同じ文字がついていない数値間には有意差あり (P < 0.05)

[0026] (2) フッ素濃度

95日目の背部の筋肉中及び脊椎骨のフッ素濃度を解析した(表6)。LFK100群を除く各試験群の背部の筋肉中のフッ素濃度は検出限界(1mg/kg)以下であり、LFK100群を除く各試験群の脊椎骨中のフッ素濃度は340mg/kg～420mg/kgであった。LFK100群の背部の筋肉及び脊椎骨のフッ素濃度はそれぞれ1mg/kg、1800mg/kgであり、コントロール群の脊椎骨中では、他の群より低く220mg/kgであった。

図1には、総フッ素摂取量と脊椎骨中のフッ素濃度間の相関直線を示す。フッ素の摂取量と濃度は正の相関を示した。

(3) 組織学的研究

肝臓組織は6つの試験群においてほとんど同じであり、組織病理学的変化は認められなかった(図2)。これは、飼料由来のフッ素が肝臓組織に影響を与えなかったことを示唆するものである。

[0027] [表6]

試験終了時の背部筋肉の化学組成(%)及び背部筋肉と脊椎骨のフッ素濃度(mg/kg, dry basis)

	試験飼料					
	コントロール	LFK7	LFK15	LFK30	LFK46	LFK100
水分量	75.5 <sup>a</sup>	75.8 <sup>a</sup>	75.5 <sup>a</sup>	75.6 <sup>a</sup>	75.5 <sup>a</sup>	76.0 <sup>a</sup>
粗タンパク	20.4 <sup>a</sup>	20.6 <sup>a</sup>	20.6 <sup>a</sup>	20.9 <sup>a</sup>	20.8 <sup>a</sup>	20.1 <sup>a</sup>
粗脂肪	2.9 <sup>a</sup>	2.5 <sup>a</sup>	2.5 <sup>a</sup>	2.6 <sup>a</sup>	2.7 <sup>a</sup>	2.5 <sup>a</sup>
灰分	2.1 <sup>a</sup>	2.1 <sup>a</sup>	1.7 <sup>a</sup>	2.0 <sup>a</sup>	1.9 <sup>a</sup>	1.4 <sup>a</sup>
	フッ素濃度					
背部筋肉	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	1
脊椎骨	220 <sup>a</sup>	420 <sup>b</sup>	340 <sup>b</sup>	380 <sup>b</sup>	350 <sup>b</sup>	1800 <sup>c</sup>

数値は平均値 (n = two dietary groups, each containing pooled sample of 15 individuals)

同列において同じ文字がついていない数値間には有意差あり (P<0.05)

フッ素分析方法の検出限界は1 mg/kg

ND: 検出せず

#### [0028] <比較例1>

淡水中のニジマスに魚粉を主原料とする飼料の魚粉を0%、7%、15%、30%オキアミミール(外殻を含む従来のもので置換した飼料を92日間摂餌させる試験を行った。これらの飼料のフッ素濃度はそれぞれ105、184、238、444mg/kgであった。試験終了時、各試験群の背部の筋肉のフッ素濃度は検出限界(1mg/kg)以下であったが、脊椎骨ではオキアミミールの添加量の増加に伴って490mg/kg ~2400mg/kgに増加し、成長率(図3)も低下した。

#### [0029] <比較例2>

海水中のブリに魚粉を主原料とする飼料の魚粉を0%、15%、100%オキアミミール(外殻を含む従来のもので置換した飼料を95日間摂餌させる試験を行った。ブリでは、15%置換では成長率に影響は認められなかったが、100%置換した飼料では大幅な成長率の低下が認められた(図4)。

#### [0030] <実施例3>

一方、海水中のブリに対し、魚粉を主原料とする飼料中の魚粉を0%、15%、そして100%低フッ素オキアミミール(LFK)で置換した飼料を75日間飼示させる試験を行った。この結果、いずれの試験区でも成長に差が見られず、オキアミ外殻を除去することにより得られた低フッ素オキアミミール(LFK)と魚粉は飼料原料として同等の性能を有することが判った(図5)。

産業上の利用可能性

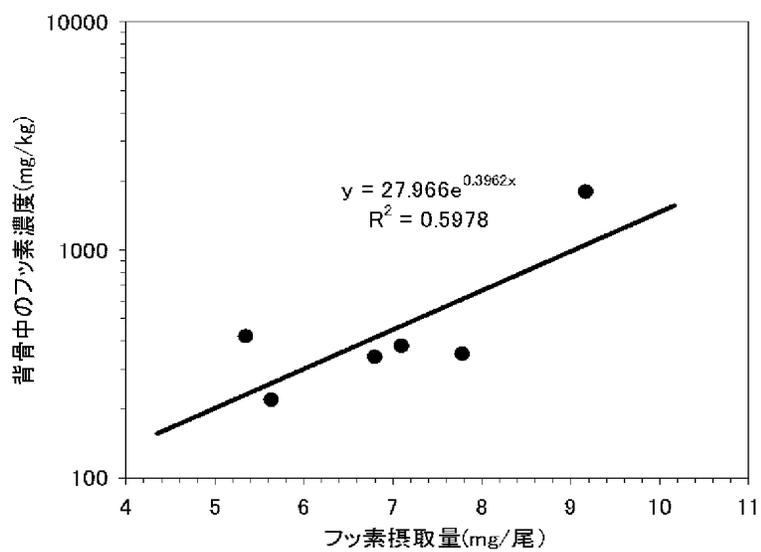
[0031] 本発明により、魚粉の代替タンパク源として制限なく使用することができる、新しい

動物性タンパク源を提供することができる。従来オキアミミールを飼料に一定割合以上添加すると、魚類の成長率の低下が認められたが、本発明によりオキアミを添加しても成長率を低下させない方法を提供することができる。

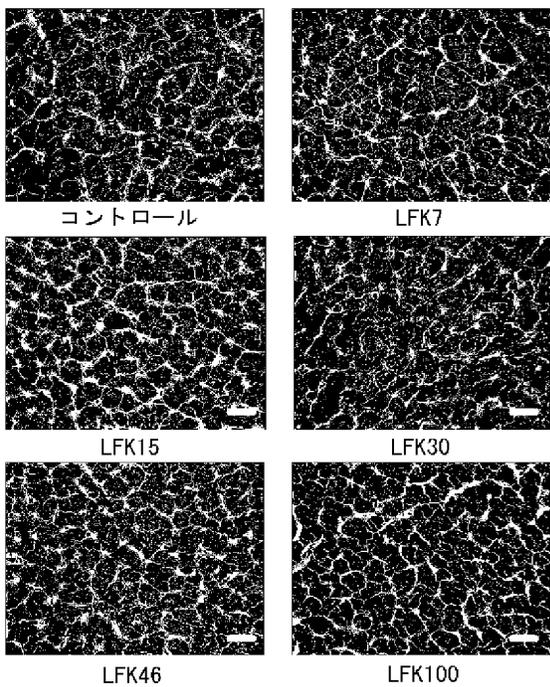
## 請求の範囲

- [1] 飼料のタンパク源の全量または一部としてオキアミを用いた飼料であって、オキアミとして外殻を除去したオキアミを用いたことを特徴とする飼料。
- [2] 飼料のタンパク源である魚粉の全量または一部をオキアミで代替した飼料であって、オキアミとして外殻を除去したオキアミを用いたことを特徴とする請求項1の飼料。
- [3] 外殻を除去したオキアミが、オキアミを加熱乾燥し、得られたオキアミ乾燥物を裁断し、外殻等の軽量画分を風力分級機により除いて得られたものである請求項1又は2の飼料。
- [4] 外殻を除去したオキアミが、外殻を除去したことによりフッ素含有量が250mg/kg乾燥重量以下に減少したものである請求項1、2又は3の飼料。
- [5] 外殻を除去したオキアミを飼料のタンパク源の50重量%以上用いることを特徴とする請求項1ないし4いずれかの飼料。
- [6] 飼料が養魚用飼料である請求項1ないし5いずれかの飼料。
- [7] 外殻を除去したオキアミを養魚用飼料のタンパク源として用いることを特徴とする、オキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。
- [8] 外殻を除去したオキアミを魚粉の代替として用いることを特徴とする、請求項7のオキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。
- [9] 外殻を除去したオキアミが、オキアミを加熱乾燥し、得られたオキアミ乾燥物を裁断し、外殻等の軽量画分を風力分級機により除いて得られたものである請求項7又は8のオキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。
- [10] 外殻を除去したオキアミが、外殻を除去したことによりフッ素含有量が250mg/kg乾燥重量以下に減少したものである請求項7、8又は9の飼料。
- [11] 外殻を除去したオキアミを飼料のタンパク源の50重量%以上用いることを特徴とする請求項7ないし10いずれかのオキアミを飼料原料として用いることによる魚類の成長率の低下を抑制する方法。

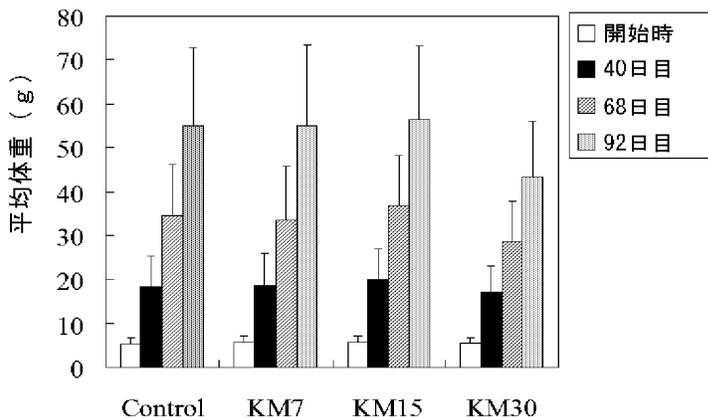
[図1]



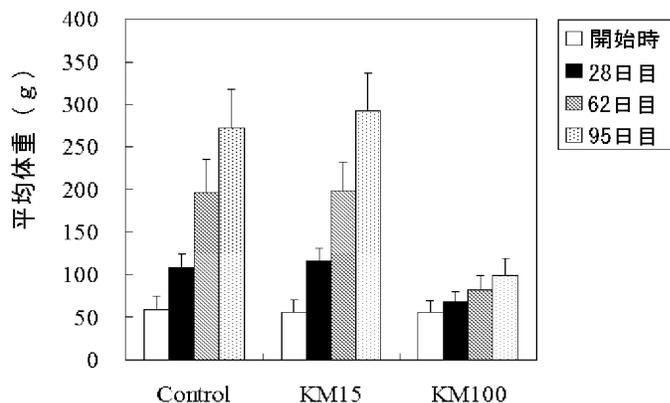
[図2]



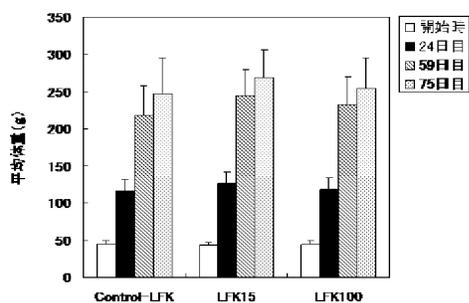
[図3]



[図4]



[図5]



**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

International application No.  
PCT/JP2007/073669

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER  
A23K1/10(2006.01) i, A23K1/18(2006.01) i

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
A23K1/00-3/04, A23L1/33

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Jitsuyo Shinan Koho	1922-1996	Jitsuyo Shinan Toroku Koho	1996-2008
Kokai Jitsuyo Shinan Koho	1971-2008	Toroku Jitsuyo Shinan Koho	1994-2008

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X A	JP 61-274653 A (Nippon Nosan Kogyo Kabushiki Kaisha), 04 December, 1986 (04.12.86), Full text (Family: none)	1-8, 10, 11 9
A	JP 8-322474 A (Mitsuyoshi TOKUMOTO), 10 December, 1996 (10.12.96), Full text (Family: none)	1-11
A	JP 56-64767 A (Alfa-Laval AB.), 02 June, 1981 (02.06.81), Full text & DE 3038190 A & NO 803050 A & SE 7908433 A	1-11

Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.  See patent family annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents:

“A” document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	“T” later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
“E” earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date	“X” document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
“L” document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	“Y” document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
“O” document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	“&” document member of the same patent family
“P” document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search 19 February, 2008 (19.02.08)	Date of mailing of the international search report 26 February, 2008 (26.02.08)
---	--

Name and mailing address of the ISA/ Japanese Patent Office	Authorized officer
Facsimile No.	Telephone No.

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

International application No.  
PCT/JP2007/073669

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	JP 3-240448 A (Korea Food Research Institute), 25 October, 1991 (25.10.91), Full text & GB 2240786 A                      & KR 9201478 B	1-11

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

International application No.

PCT/JP2007/073669

**Box No. II Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)**

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
  
2.  Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
  
3.  Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

**Box No. III Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 3 of first sheet)**

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

Although the matter common to the inventions according to claims 1 to 11 resides in "using peeled krill as the protein source in a feed", this matter is not novel because of having been disclosed by document JP 61-274653 A (Nippon Nosan Kogyo Kabushiki Kaisha), 4 December, 1986 (04.12.86) and, therefore, cannot be recognized as "a special technical feature" in the meaning within the second sentence of PCT Rule 13.2., Such being the case, it does not appear that there is a technical relationship among the inventions according to claims 1 to 11 involving one or more of the same or corresponding special technical features and, therefore, these inventions are not so linked as to form a single general inventive concept.

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying additional fees, this Authority did not invite payment of additional fees.
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
  
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

**Remark on Protest**  
the

- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest and, where applicable, payment of a protest fee.
- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest but the applicable protest fee was not paid within the time limit specified in the invitation.
- No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

**RIMEROST EXHIBIT 1024 page 0381**

A. 発明の属する分野の分類 (国際特許分類 (IPC))

Int.Cl. A23K1/10(2006.01)i, A23K1/18(2006.01)i

B. 調査を行った分野

調査を行った最小限資料 (国際特許分類 (IPC))

Int.Cl. A23K1/00-3/04, A23L1/33

最小限資料以外の資料で調査を行った分野に含まれるもの

日本国実用新案公報	1922-1996年
日本国公開実用新案公報	1971-2008年
日本国実用新案登録公報	1996-2008年
日本国登録実用新案公報	1994-2008年

国際調査で使用した電子データベース (データベースの名称、調査に使用した用語)

C. 関連すると認められる文献

引用文献の カテゴリー*	引用文献名 及び一部の箇所が関連するときは、その関連する箇所の表示	関連する 請求の範囲の番号
X A	JP 61-274653 A (日本農産工業株式会社) 1986. 12. 04, 全文 (ファミリーなし)	1-8, 10, 11 9
A	JP 8-322474 A (徳元 光義) 1996. 12. 10, 全文 (ファミリーなし)	1-11
A	JP 56-64767 A (アルファーラヴアル・アクツイエボラーク) 1981. 06. 02, 全文 & DE 3038190 A & NO 803050 A & SE 7908433 A	1-11

C欄の続きにも文献が列挙されている。

パテントファミリーに関する別紙を参照。

\* 引用文献のカテゴリー

「A」特に関連のある文献ではなく、一般的技術水準を示すもの  
 「E」国際出願日前の出願または特許であるが、国際出願日以後に公表されたもの  
 「L」優先権主張に疑義を提起する文献又は他の文献の発行日若しくは他の特別な理由を確立するために引用する文献 (理由を付す)  
 「O」口頭による開示、使用、展示等に言及する文献  
 「P」国際出願日前で、かつ優先権の主張の基礎となる出願

の日の後に公表された文献  
 「T」国際出願日又は優先日後に公表された文献であって出願と矛盾するものではなく、発明の原理又は理論の理解のために引用するもの  
 「X」特に関連のある文献であって、当該文献のみで発明の新規性又は進歩性がないと考えられるもの  
 「Y」特に関連のある文献であって、当該文献と他の1以上の文献との、当業者にとって自明である組合せによって進歩性がないと考えられるもの  
 「&」同一パテントファミリー文献

国際調査を完了した日  
19. 02. 2008

国際調査報告の発送日  
26. 02. 2008

国際調査機関の名称及びあて先  
 日本国特許庁 (ISA/J P)  
 郵便番号100-8915  
 東京都千代田区霞が関三丁目4番3号

特許庁審査官 (権限のある職員)  
 木村 隆一  
 電話番号 03-3581-1101 内線 3237

2 B 3 3 0 1

C (続き) . 関連すると認められる文献		
引用文献の カテゴリー*	引用文献名 及び一部の箇所が関連するときは、その関連する箇所の表示	関連する 請求の範囲の番号
A	JP 3-240448 A (財団法人韓国食品開発研究院) 1991. 10. 25, 全文 & GB 2240786 A & KR 9201478 B	1-11

## 第II欄 請求の範囲の一部の調査ができないときの意見（第1ページの2の続き）

法第8条第3項（PCT17条(2)(a)）の規定により、この国際調査報告は次の理由により請求の範囲の一部について作成しなかった。

1.  請求の範囲 \_\_\_\_\_ は、この国際調査機関が調査をすることを要しない対象に係るものである。つまり、
2.  請求の範囲 \_\_\_\_\_ は、有意義な国際調査をすることができる程度まで所定の要件を満たしていない国際出願の部分に係るものである。つまり、
3.  請求の範囲 \_\_\_\_\_ は、従属請求の範囲であってPCT規則6.4(a)の第2文及び第3文の規定に従って記載されていない。

## 第III欄 発明の単一性が欠如しているときの意見（第1ページの3の続き）

次に述べるようにこの国際出願に二以上の発明があるとこの国際調査機関は認めた。

請求の範囲1-11に係る発明に共通する事項は、「外壳を除去したオキアミを飼料のタンパク源として用いる」という点であるが、かかる事項は、文献JP61-274653A（日本農産工業株式会社）1986.12.4に開示されているように新規なものではなく、PCT規則13.2の第2文でいう「特別な技術的特徴」とは認められない。よって、請求の範囲1-11に係る発明は、一又は二以上の同一又は対応する特別な技術的特徴を含む技術的な関係になく、単一の一般的発明概念を形成するように連関していない。

1.  出願人が必要な追加調査手数料をすべて期間内に納付したので、この国際調査報告は、すべての調査可能な請求の範囲について作成した。
2.  追加調査手数料を要求するまでもなく、すべての調査可能な請求の範囲について調査することができたので、追加調査手数料の納付を求めなかった。
3.  出願人が必要な追加調査手数料を一部のみしか期間内に納付しなかったため、この国際調査報告は、手数料の納付のあった次の請求の範囲のみについて作成した。
4.  出願人が必要な追加調査手数料を期間内に納付しなかったため、この国際調査報告は、請求の範囲の最初に記載されている発明に係る次の請求の範囲について作成した。

## 追加調査手数料の異議の申立てに関する注意

- 追加調査手数料及び、該当する場合には、異議申立手数料の納付と共に、出願人から異議申立てがあった。
- 追加調査手数料の納付と共に出願人から異議申立てがあったが、異議申立手数料が納付命令書に示した期間内に支払われなかった。
- 追加調査手数料の納付はあったが、異議申立てはなかった。

## Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775			
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-Mar-2008			
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS			
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim			
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones			
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD			
Filed as Large Entity				
<b>Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)</b>				
<b>Description</b>	<b>Fee Code</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Sub-Total in USD(\$)</b>
<b>Basic Filing:</b>				
<b>Pages:</b>				
<b>Claims:</b>				
<b>Miscellaneous-Filing:</b>				
<b>Petition:</b>				
<b>Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:</b>				
<b>Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:</b>				
<b>Extension-of-Time:</b>				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
<b>Miscellaneous:</b>				
Submission- Information Disclosure Stmt	1806	1	180	180
<b>Total in USD (\$)</b>				<b>180</b>

## Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

<b>EFS ID:</b>	20979444
<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775
<b>International Application Number:</b>	
<b>Confirmation Number:</b>	1945
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim
<b>Customer Number:</b>	72960
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones/Vickie Hoeft
<b>Filer Authorized By:</b>	John Mitchell Jones
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD
<b>Receipt Date:</b>	17-DEC-2014
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-MAR-2008
<b>Time Stamp:</b>	17:30:36
<b>Application Type:</b>	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

### Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$180
RAM confirmation Number	3922
Deposit Account	504302
Authorized User	

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

--	--	--	--	--	--

**File Listing:**

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	14409US5IDSLetter12152014.pdf	81261	no	1
			d26dbc2f715eb11344fc6602d1e93f5abbfcd50		

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

2	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	14409_US5_IDs.pdf	614317	no	7
			4f0f62bdc278bf43a0de9bd4eed8ade627fb9dde		

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

3	Other Reference-Patent/App/Search documents	CL_40348_App102_1995_patente_EnglishTrans.pdf	1977383	no	76
			885ace055996975c639f26eb30f3c3bb2d3e186f		

**Warnings:**

The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing

**Information:**

4	Foreign Reference	WO001031A1.pdf	2443714	no	20
			59cc3f6ddbbe4d8b438fd9818e42a988518a175f		

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

5	Foreign Reference	WO010960A1.pdf	4457079	no	36
			73fa13a7c452be58aa0da6d7f5427d57c0a367bb		

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

6	Foreign Reference	WO1997038585A1.pdf	499494	no	19
			c70abd9354e0fd615f0a0a3c64b51f40a2ec9e0e		

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

7	Foreign Reference	WO1998034498A1.pdf	1088473	no	59
			d878be3a1f2a4cf4828d431c7723b748213579d		

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

8	Foreign Reference	WO1999039589A1.pdf	1149668	no	59
			9bf1ac2abcabde04358ac34952ac43114217310		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
9	Foreign Reference	WO2006111633A3.pdf	147703	no	7
			064a2f4ffc7be7d0c1769cd6e56deb9305aaa75c		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
10	Foreign Reference	WO2007123424A1.pdf	1133186	no	42
			a072a421fcf9ed84d7ce845e19405dd199166f8		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
11	Foreign Reference	WO2008072563A1.pdf	386379	no	25
			b480125948fca9fe6a8cdd67db2edfc8f65379cf		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
12	Other Reference-Patent/App/Search documents	14409EP1PCT_NoticeofOppositionFiled02-14-2014.pdf	15222775	no	131
			47f9023abc353c46c7fb262f8e1bb27220623db3		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
13	Non Patent Literature	BrzustowiczBiochemistry2002.pdf	3329266	no	13
			ffe2d2067245992f4b093f68af56161ef7be2aaf		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
14	Non Patent Literature	Jong_Ho_Lee_D1_cute.pdf	1105425	no	8
			70c8335c47f80c2a45355281e5b4f3eb35b883dc		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
15	Non Patent Literature	Ki_woong_Cho_D2_cute.pdf	1245361	no	8
			3d1649e40ba0f981b85a2ebadfd531f03374e700		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
16	Non Patent Literature	HvattumJournalofChromatography2000.pdf	1888912	no	15
			1786ba65bcbbe031cf31aa3934eb7f17f5789c4		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					

17	Non Patent Literature	IGARASHI2001_English.pdf	429031 53b1ca1ba56a69d280d913a69ed5bde80dc42a85	no	12
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
18	Non Patent Literature	TOCHIZAWAJpnOilChemSoc1997.pdf	609363 76bb7f5bd1ae2944be3f540162b569131cdc7f9e	no	9
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
19	Non Patent Literature	Zerouga1995.pdf	1057697 e7fb4e1e888a02b223d6e1604ce2b2b6394161de	no	9
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
20	Non Patent Literature	Eung_Ho_Lee_D8cute.pdf	1465563 93e7e748bd7215dca4c38f9dfd4246f48a6dd7a39	no	10
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
21	Non Patent Literature	Hyun_ku_Kim_D5_cute.pdf	910799 69dd8dca935835d6eb6f6b5ab3cb59204f3877de	no	6
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
22	Non Patent Literature	Mi_Yae_Shon_D3_cute.pdf	571990 593230ffc0d00efd719f755fa8450b73e362840	no	6
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
23	Other Reference-Patent/App/Search documents	SummonsMaterials_EP08718910_6.pdf	428722 ee9960446697a4c01871a6dd2d6fb727f7989b39	no	12
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
24	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30517 65f5ad899b26c2771d308f0159e83ce9cb31efea	no	2
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
<b>Total Files Size (in bytes):</b>			42274078		

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**

**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**

**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**

**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of:	Bruheim, et al	Confirmation:	1945
Serial No.:	12/057775	Group No.:	1651
Filed:	03-28-2008	Examiner:	D.K. Ware
Entitled:	<b>BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS</b>		

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT LETTER

EFS Web Filed  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir or Madam:

The citations listed in the attached **IDS Form SB08A** may be material to the examination of the above-identified application, and are therefore submitted in compliance with the duty of disclosure defined in 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.56 and 1.97.

Applicants wish to bring to the Examiner’s attention that we are not providing copies of US Patents as instructed under 37 CFR 1.98(a)(2). The Examiner is requested to make these citations of official record in this application.

This Information Disclosure Statement under 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.56 and 1.97 is not to be construed as a representation that a search has been made, that additional information material to the examination of this application does not exist, or that any one or more of these citations constitutes prior art.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any required fees or credit any overpayments to Attorney Deposit Account No.: **50-4302**, referencing Attorney Docket No.: AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD.

Dated: December 16, 2014

/J. Mitchell Jones/  
J. Mitchell Jones  
Registration No. 44,174  
CASIMIR JONES, S.C.  
2275 Deming Way, Suite 310  
Middleton, WI 53562  
608.662.1277

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775
	Filing Date		2008-03-28
	First Named Inventor	Bruheim	
	Art Unit	1651	
	Examiner Name	D.K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	2652235		1953-09-15	Samuelsen	
	2	5006281		1991-04-09	Rubin et al.	
	3	4251557		1981-02-17	Shimose et al.	
	4	4505936		1985-03-19	Meyers et al.	
	5	6214396		2001-04-10	Barrier	
	6	4036993		1977-07-19	Ikeda	
	7	6346276		2002-02-12	Tanouchi et al.	
If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.						Add
<b>U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS</b>						Remove

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D.K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. **Add**

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

Remove

Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup>	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	1098900	CA		1981-04-07	Inst. Elementoorganicheskikh So, et al.		<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

Remove

Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	VALERI, D., et al., "Visocities of Fatty acids, triglycerides and their binary mixtures," JAOCS 74 (1997) pp. 1221-1226	<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	CRC 2013-2014, 94th ed., pp. 6-231-6-235	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	
--------------------	--	-----------------	--

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775
Filing Date	2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Bruheim
Art Unit	1651
Examiner Name	D.K. Ware
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775		
Filing Date	2008-03-28		
First Named Inventor	Bruheim		
Art Unit	1651		
Examiner Name	D.K. Ware		
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

- See attached certification statement.
- The fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/J. Mitchell Jones/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2014-06-12
Name/Print	J. Mitchell Jones	Registration Number	44174

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

(11) (A) No. 1098900

(45) ISSUED 810407

(52) CLASS 260-129  
C.R. CL. 260-219;  
260-497

(51) INT. CL. <sup>2</sup> C07G 7/00, C08B 37/08

(19) (CA) **CANADIAN PATENT** (12)

(54) METHOD FOR THE PROCESSING OF KRILL TO PRODUCE PROTEIN,  
LIPIDS AND CHITIN

(72) Rogozhin, Sergei V.;  
Vainerman, Efim S.;  
Burmistrova, Ljubov M.;  
Davidovich, Jury A.;  
Ryashentsev, Vladimir J.;  
Kulakova, Valentina K.;  
Lagunov, Lev L.;  
Bykov, Vladimir P.,  
USSR

(73) Granted to Institut Elementoorganicheskikh Soedineny  
Akademii Nauk SSSR, USSR Vsesojuzny  
Nauchno-Issledovatel'sky Institut Rybnogo Khozyaistva  
I Okeanografii, VNIRO, USSR

(21) APPLICATION No. 293,095

(22) FILED 771214

No. OF CLAIMS 3 - NO DRAWING

DISTRIBUTED BY THE PATENT OFFICE, OTTAWA.  
CCA-274 (3-80)

293095

1098900

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

APR 7 1981

A<sup>1</sup>

The method for the processing of ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> to produce protein, lipids and chitin comprises emulsification of lipids by intensively stirring ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> in an aqueous medium. The resultant emulsion of lipids is separated from the ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> mass and from the ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> mass proteins are extracted at a pH of 10 to 12. The alkaline extract of proteins is separated from chitin integuments and protein is separated therefrom.

1098900

METHOD FOR THE PROCESSING OF KRILL  
TO PRODUCE PROTEIN, LIPIDS AND CHITIN

The present invention relates to methods for the processing of krill to produce protein, lipids and chitin. Krill is a prospective source of food protein and other practically useful products such as chitin and lipids which find wide application in different branches of the national economy -- the food industry, textile and paint and varnish industry, in agriculture and medicine.

Known in the art is a method for the production of a proteinaceous nutritive substance from krill residing in comminuting and pressing fresh or frozen and then defrosted krill. The liquid separated during pressing is heated for 10 to 15 minutes at a temperature of 90 to 95°C for coagulation of proteins contained therein. The proteinaceous coagulate is separated from the broth by filtration or centrifugation to produce a mass which is used in the USSR under a trade name of the Okean protein paste.

A disadvantage of said method for the processing of krill is loss of nutritive substances, particularly protein, and an insufficiently full utilization of other components of krill. The broth containing a considerable amount of nutritive substances is not processed and is poured off. The yield of protein is 35 to 40%. It should be pointed out that the Okean paste is a perishable product and should be stored only when frozen at a temperature not exceeding -18°C for not more than 12 to 14 months. The thermally denatured protein contained in the Okean paste possesses low functional properties (foam-forming and gel-forming properties, a water-holding capacity, etc.) which makes its processing and use difficult. The cake formed after pressing comprising a portion of the starting

proteins, lipids and chitin integuments can at present be processed and used only as feed meal.

Known in the art is a method for the production of a protein concentrate from frozen krill kept at a temperature of -20°C comprising defrostation, comminution of krill, extraction with isopropanol with subsequent removal of the solvent, and drying under vacuum at 70°C.

10 Using the present method a proteinaceous concentrate is produced with a content of protein of 710 to 775%, lipids of 0.3%, and chitin of 5.8 to 6.4% (as calculated for dry substance). Said method has the following disadvantages. The use of organic solvent makes the production more difficult. In addition, the solvent itself and the process for the removal thereof may deteriorate the quality of the protein. The proteinaceous concentrate has a comparatively low content of protein and a high chitin content.

20 It is an object of the present invention to develop such a method for the processing of krill which would make it possible to produce protein, lipids and chitin with a high yield and quality.

The method for the processing krill to produce protein, lipids and chitin, according to the invention, is characterized in comprising emulsification of lipids of krill in an aqueous medium; separation of the emulsion of lipids from the krill mass; alkaline extraction of proteins from the krill mass at a pH of 10 to 12; separation of the protein extract produced from chitin integuments; separation of protein from the protein extract.

30 The invention makes it possible to obtain a protein product with a content of protein of up to 95% by weight as calculated for dry substance.

According to the invention, the first stage of the

X

processing of krill provides for extraction of lipids. This extraction of lipids is effected by emulsification using various techniques such as intensive stirring in an apparatus with a stirrer, or an ultrasonic method. Used as a medium in which emulsification is conducted is water or aqueous solutions of salts. To reduce losses of protein in the process of emulsification the pH of the emulsifying medium should be maintained within 4.5 to 5.0. In emulsification lipids are separated with a yield of up to 95% by weight.

10

The krill after separation of lipids therefrom is treated with an alkaline solution with a pH of 10 to 12 for extraction of proteins therefrom. A two-phase system is formed comprising an aqueous-alkaline solution containing protein, and a solid residue containing chitin integuments and other insoluble substances. The aqueous-alkaline solution containing protein is separated from the solid residue by filtration or centrifugation. Protein is separated from the resultant aqueous-alkaline solution by various methods, for example, by precipitation with alcohol or ultrafiltration, precipitation in the isoelectric point, or thermal coagulation. The isoelectric precipitation is carried out by food acids at a pH of 4 to 5. A curdled, easily settling precipitate of protein is formed which is separated and washed with 2 to 5 volumes of water. The washed precipitate is dried. As a result a product is obtained with a protein content of up to 95% by weight as calculated for dry substance.

20

Thus, the proposed method for the processing of krill makes it possible to produce such valuable substances as protein, lipids and chitin.

30

The simple technology and the availability of the reactants used make the process commercially profitable.

For a better understanding of the present invention

examples are presented below.

Example 1

In an apparatus with a capacity of 10 l provided with a stirrer there is placed 1 kg of krill which is filled with water and stirred at 1,000 rpm for 0.3 hour. The resultant emulsion of lipids is separated from the krill mass by filtration through a stainless steel screen having a mesh size of 1x1 mm. The krill mass is transferred to the vessel with a stirrer into which there is added 3 l of an aqueous solution of NaOH of such a concentration as to reach a pH of the mixture of 10 and stirred for half an hour. When krill is treated with alkali extraction of proteins takes place. The resultant extract of proteins is separated from the insoluble residue of chitin integuments by filtration through a metal screen with a mesh size of 1x1 mm and centrifuged at 25,000 rpm for 0.15 hour to remove impurities. To the purified extract of proteins there is added while stirring a 1-mole solution of HCl to reach a pH of 4.5, protein being precipitated. The precipitate is left to settle for 3 hours, thereafter it is separated from the liquid, washed with 3 liters of water and dried lyophilically. The protein product obtained in an amount of 50 g is a pale-pink odorless powder, having a moisture content of 10% by weight and comprising 85% by weight of protein and 2% by weight of lipids.

The residue of krill produced after separation of the extract of proteins is pressed to remove moisture and dried to produce 17 g of chitin integuments.

Example 2

The processing of krill is carried out in the same manner as in Example 1, except that emulsification of lipids is conducted in a 0.15 mole aqueous solution of sodium chloride at a pH of 4.5. The protein product obtained in an amount of 54 g has a moisture content of 12% and comprises 80% by weight of protein and 3% by weight of lipids.

chitin integuments.

Examples 3

The processing of krill is conducted in the same manner as in Example 1, except that emulsification of lipids is carried out for half an hour, and protein is precipitated from the alkaline extract by adding thereto a 1 mole solution of acetic acid. The resultant protein precipitate is washed with 5 volumes of water to produce 60 g of a protein product having a moisture content of 8% and comprising 85% by weight of protein, 5% by weight of lipids and 18 g of chitin integuments.

Example 4

The processing of krill is carried out in the same manner as in Example 1, except that precipitation of protein from the alkaline extract is conducted by adding thereto a 0.8 mole solution of sulfuric acid. The resultant precipitate of protein is washed with 3 volumes of water to produce 54 g of a protein product having a moisture content of 11% and comprising 80% by weight of protein and 5% by weight of lipids, and 24 g of chitin integuments.

Example 5

The processing of krill is conducted in the same manner as in Example 1, except that emulsification of lipids is conducted in an aqueous solution of salts -- 0.2 mole of NaCl; 0.03 mole of  $MgCl_2$ ; 0.01 mole of  $MgSO_4$ ; and 0.005 mole of  $CaSO_4$ .

The protein product obtained in an amount of 60 g has a moisture content of 10% and comprises 82% by weight of protein, 4.2% by weight of lipids, and 20 g of chitin integuments.

liquid, washed with 3 liters of water and dried lyophilically. The protein product obtained in an amount of 50 g is a pale-pink odorless powder, having a moisture content of 10% by weight and comprising 85% by weight of protein and 2% by weight of lipids.

A

The residue of ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> produced after separation of the extract of proteins is pressed to remove moisture and dried to produce 17 g of chitin integuments.

## Example 2

The processing of ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> is carried out in the same manner as in Example 1, except that emulsification of lipids is conducted in a 0.15 mole aqueous solution of sodium chloride at a pH of 4.5. The protein product obtained in an amount of 54 g has a moisture content of 12% and comprises 80% by weight of protein and 3% by weight of lipids, and 20 g of chitin integuments.

## Example 3

The processing of ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> is conducted in the same manner as in Example 1, except that emulsification of lipids is carried out for half an hour, and protein is precipitated from the alkaline extract by adding thereto a 1 mole solution of acetic acid. The resultant protein precipitate is washed with 5 volumes of water to produce 60 g of a protein product having a moisture content of 8% and comprising 85% by weight of protein, 5% by weight of lipids and 18 g

of chitin integuments.

Example 4

A

The processing of ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> is carried out in the same manner as in Example 1, except that precipitation of protein from the alkaline extract is conducted by adding thereto a 0.8 mole solution of sulfuric acid. The resultant precipitate of protein is washed with 3 volumes of water to produce 54 g of a protein product having a moisture content of 11% and comprising 80% by weight of protein and 5% by weight of lipids, and 24 g of chitin integuments.

Example 5

The processing of ~~krill~~<sup>krill</sup> is conducted in the same manner as in Example 1, except that emulsification of lipids is conducted in an aqueous solution of salts -- 0.2 mole of NaCl; 0.03 mole of MgCl<sub>2</sub>; 0.01 mole of MgSO<sub>4</sub>; and 0.005 mole of CaSO<sub>4</sub>.

The protein product obtained in an amount of 60 g has a moisture content of 10% and comprises 82% by weight of protein, 4.2% by weight of lipids, and 20 g of chitin integuments.

**1098900**

THE EMBODIMENTS OF THE INVENTION IN WHICH AN EXCLUSIVE PROPERTY OR PRIVILEGE IS CLAIMED ARE DEFINED AS FOLLOWS:

1. A method for the processing of krill to produce protein, lipids and chitin which comprises emulsification of lipids of krill in an aqueous medium; separation of the resultant emulsion of lipids from the krill mass; alkaline extraction of proteins from the krill mass at a pH of 10 to 12; separation of the alkaline extract of proteins from chitin integuments; separation of protein from the alkaline extract.

2. A method as claimed in claim 1, wherein emulsification is carried out in the presence of mineral salts.

3. A method as claimed in claim 1, wherein emulsification is carried out at a pH of the medium of 4.5 to 5.0.



**SUBSTITUTE**

***REMPLACEMENT***

**SECTION is not Present**

***Cette Section est Absente***

## Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

<b>EFS ID:</b>	19284188
<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775
<b>International Application Number:</b>	
<b>Confirmation Number:</b>	1945
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim
<b>Customer Number:</b>	72960
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones/Amanda Jones
<b>Filer Authorized By:</b>	John Mitchell Jones
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD
<b>Receipt Date:</b>	12-JUN-2014
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-MAR-2008
<b>Time Stamp:</b>	16:09:04
<b>Application Type:</b>	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

### Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no
------------------------	----

### File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	14409US5_IDSLetter.pdf	82780 <small>e3aa67bf19b94f48d0c0eeae8bf8d8be1dfa3e84</small>	no	1

### Warnings:

### Information:

2	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	14409US5_IDS_June2014.pdf	612659	no	5
			e74cd32d083b3427adf8a9d39a4ce697e4b1914a		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
3	Foreign Reference	CA1098900.pdf	445086	no	11
			f00e547133aaaf3cc4adea4f3843b70636d720ab		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
4	Non Patent Literature	VALERI.pdf	360428	no	6
			0fd6bc3596f268ee25b716c9ad89f2934bab79ec		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
5	Non Patent Literature	CRC.pdf	261666	no	5
			b0e6f92385faf3c61201f41ac79428bcff150b56		
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
<b>Total Files Size (in bytes):</b>			1762619		

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**

**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**

**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**

**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

In re Application of:	Bruheim, et al	Confirmation:	1945
Serial No.:	12/057775	Group No.:	1651
Filed:	03-28-2008	Examiner:	D.K. Ware
Entitled:	<b>BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS</b>		

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT LETTER**

EFS Web Filed  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir or Madam:

The citations listed in the attached **IDS Form SB08A** may be material to the examination of the above-identified application, and are therefore submitted in compliance with the duty of disclosure defined in 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.56 and 1.97.

Applicants wish to bring to the Examiner's attention that we are not providing copies of US Patents as instructed under 37 CFR 1.98(a)(2). The Examiner is requested to make these citations of official record in this application.

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Applicants wish to bring to the Examiner's attention that the references supplied in this IDS are from a May 23, 2014 AU Examination Report from related AU Patent Application No. 2013202260. Also, the VALERI and CRC references are from the March 26, 2014 Office Action from corresponding U.S. Patent Application No. 12/711,553. This IDS is filed within three months of the mailing of the Search Report and U.S. Office Action; therefore, applicants believe that no fees are due.

This Information Disclosure Statement under 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.56 and 1.97 is not to be construed as a representation that a search has been made, that additional information material to the examination of this application does not exist, or that any one or more of these citations constitutes prior art.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any required fees or credit any overpayments to Attorney Deposit Account No.: **50-4302**, referencing Attorney Docket No.: AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD.

Dated: June 12, 2014

/J. Mitchell Jones/  
J. Mitchell Jones  
Registration No. 44,174  
CASIMIR JONES, S.C.  
2275 Deming Way, Suite 310  
Middleton, WI 53562  
608.662.1277

## Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

<b>EFS ID:</b>	17912463
<b>Application Number:</b>	12057775
<b>International Application Number:</b>	
<b>Confirmation Number:</b>	1945
<b>Title of Invention:</b>	BIOEFFECTIVE KRILL OIL COMPOSITIONS
<b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b>	Inge Bruheim
<b>Customer Number:</b>	72960
<b>Filer:</b>	John Mitchell Jones/Thomas Vita
<b>Filer Authorized By:</b>	John Mitchell Jones
<b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD
<b>Receipt Date:</b>	15-JAN-2014
<b>Filing Date:</b>	28-MAR-2008
<b>Time Stamp:</b>	14:57:05
<b>Application Type:</b>	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

### Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no
------------------------	----

### File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Non Patent Literature	Grit_1989_pp1-6.pdf	641658 <small>bfd7ae9bee58e13c6381186f015bca31efd57441</small>	no	6

### Warnings:

### Information:

2	Non Patent Literature	Henderson_1994_pp311-317.pdf	6645569 c65db91ec3d35a2aff33c1817732b17747afe22d	no	7
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
3	Non Patent Literature	Herman-Groves_1993_pp774-776.pdf	244315 e2f691b02deaa18b8980e60dd40d1d87e280abf4	no	3
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
4	Non Patent Literature	Itano_1994_pp1-16.pdf	1295233 9441357ccb70d9e5cf09b6f03170e7008ade2dab	no	16
<b>Warnings:</b>					
The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing					
<b>Information:</b>					
5	Non Patent Literature	Johnson_1983_pp229-242.pdf	2198687 c8f4ab46c281d535004a072f71eb55ba80efda07	no	14
<b>Warnings:</b>					
The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing					
<b>Information:</b>					
6	Non Patent Literature	LeGrandois_2009_pp6014-20.pdf	934258 8f7e7a9b738636197bf95e47ac4f63798cfc3004	no	7
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
7	Non Patent Literature	Lin_1994_pp794-803.pdf	1329895 f96890bfa276072d6851e8bdd0562c3058e03380	no	10
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
8	Non Patent Literature	Medina_1994_pp479-82.pdf	789751 67db1a33d4aeb19c8d956cd04d27f4777c01b94c	no	4
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
9	Non Patent Literature	October-24-2012-Office-Action-675-patent.pdf	268862 6c8bee479f01a8cd3edcc5c9adc3382c9be28c3d	no	7
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					

10	Non Patent Literature	OfficeAction-Jan-5-2012-351-patent.pdf	543851 2e0c04a3848be427a36a60cd25f5004ac22612df	no	14
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
11	Non Patent Literature	Provisional-Application-60307842.pdf	1580888 42b2ae5ee9877fe7e1daf7de750a00e5adcfb3a4	no	37
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
12	Non Patent Literature	Supplemental-Declaration-Bjorn-Ole-Haugsgjerd-8030348.pdf	948103 c9ae46045ddbca460a4ab1f5c767787857b00f006	no	4
<b>Warnings:</b>					
The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing					
<b>Information:</b>					
13	Non Patent Literature	Supplemental-Declaration-Earl-White-8030348.pdf	1503773 85940899180baf6d3b6a07423db92247480a5341	no	19
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
14	Non Patent Literature	Supplemental-Declaration-Earl-White-8278351.pdf	487925 a2c3da8c882191cfd4d2af9cc427507b8f443e52	no	7
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
15	Non Patent Literature	Suzuki_1990_119-147.pdf	5529614 287be569a5e1715327e9e52d71bf085c5c85ff15	no	30
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
16	Non Patent Literature	Takahashi_1986_pp80-84.pdf	299970 fcc068b9d51aeb13777b4e2d2b91e92a022f434d	no	6
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
17	Non Patent Literature	Takahashi_1982_pp1803-1814.pdf	575928 9741092eb72162a77696b88b3ff9d4beabfa7936	no	12
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
18	Non Patent Literature	Takahashi_1987_pp398-404.pdf	333964	no	8

<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
19	Non Patent Literature	Tanaka_1999_pp189-194.pdf	335180 5caad1b7c9a6f68d2fb54048ccd3906eea22d3d0	no	6
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
20	Non Patent Literature	Supplemental-Declaration-Thomas-Gundersen-8030348.pdf	3042898 7d1c0f18a6a48056f8b479e72e983ca2afcbf13e	no	42
<b>Warnings:</b>					
The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing					
<b>Information:</b>					
21	Non Patent Literature	Tocher_1995_Chapter-6.pdf	2980058 7d0fc14bb86a79e671c5114cd9a2c1f0f07508ea	no	39
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
22	Non Patent Literature	Watanabe_1991_pp681-694.pdf	788087 1203c5f19a27e567b8b641614d0697fcbcb69756	no	14
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
23	Non Patent Literature	WHO-News_1995_pp547-51.pdf	4533905 ba3db6f08be4d5c0fb86ebe4d7e82e6e98cea3e1	no	11
<b>Warnings:</b>					
<b>Information:</b>					
<b>Total Files Size (in bytes):</b>			37832372		

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**

**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**

**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**

**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	4714571		1987-12-22	Kearns et al.	
	2	8278351		2012-10-02	Sampalis	
	3	8383675		2013-02-26	Sampalis	

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

Add

U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button.

Add

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS								Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup> j	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	2251265	CA		2000-04-21	Beaudoin		<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775
	Filing Date	2008-03-28
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim
	Art Unit	1651
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

2	60-153779	JP		1985-08-13	Honen Seiyu Co. Ltd.	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	H08-231391	JP		1996-09-10	Kanagawa Kagaku Kenkyuujo Co., Ltd. Et al.	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

**Remove**

Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T <sup>5</sup>
	1	"Neptune Technologies & Bioresources Soon to Obtain a Major Patent in Over 30 Countries" ("2001 Press Release,")	<input type="checkbox"/>
	2	Action Closing Prosecution, '348 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
	3	April 2, 2012 Response to Office Action, '351 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
	4	Balassa et al., Microencapsulation in the Food Industry, Critical Reviews in Food Technology, 2:2, 245-265 (1971) ("Balassa")	<input type="checkbox"/>
	5	Bell and Dick, Molecular Species Composition of the Major Diacyl Glycerophospholipids from Muscle, Liver, Retina and Brain of Cod (Gadus morhua), Lipids, Vol. 26, No. 8, pp. 565-573 (1991) ("Bell and Dick")	<input type="checkbox"/>
	6	Bell, Molecular Species Analysis of Phosphoglycerides from the Ripe Roes of Cod, Lipids, Vol. 24, No. 7 (1989)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	7	Bell, Molecular Species Composition of Phosphatidylcholine from Cryptocodium cohnii in Relation to Growth Temperature Lipids 25, 115-118 (1990)	<input type="checkbox"/>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number		12057775
Filing Date		2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
Art Unit	1651	
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

8	Bergelson (ed.), Lipid Biochemical Preparations, Chapter I.1, pp. 1-13 (1980) ("Bergelson")	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	Bottino, N.R., "Lipid Composition of Two Species of Antarctic Krill: Euphausia Superba and E. Crystallorophias," Comp. Biochem. Physiol., 1975, Vol. 50B, pp. 479-484 ("Bottino")	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	Buchi R-220 Rotovapor® Manual	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	Buda, Structural order of membranes and composition of phospholipids in fish brain cells during thermal acclimatization, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA Vol. 91, pp. 8234-8238, August 1994	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	Certificate of translation of Ex. 1072: Fisheries Agency, General Report on Research and Development of Techniques in Processing and Utilization of Marine Products, Chapter 6, Development of technology for recovery of valuable substances (astaxanthin) from krill, by Takao Fujita, pp. 273-307 (March 1985); Japanese language document	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Certificate of translation of Ex. 1074: Japanese Patent No. 60-153779, entitled "Nutritional Supplement"	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Certificate of translation of Ex. 1076: Japanese Patent Publication No. H08-231391, entitled "Medicine for Improvement of Dementia Symptoms"	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	Certification of translation of Ex. 1070: Japanese Unexamined Patent Application Publication No. 02-215351	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	Certified translation of Ex. 1070: Japanese Unexamined Patent Application Publication No. 02-215351, titled Krill Phospholipids Fractioning Method ("Maruyama,"); Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1071.	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	Certified translation of Ex. 1072: Fisheries Agency, General Report on Research and Development of Techniques in Processing and Utilization of Marine Products, Chapter 6, Development of technology for recovery of valuable substances (astaxanthin) from krill, by Takao Fujita, pp. 273-307 (March 1985) ("Fujita") ; Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1073.	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	Certified translation of Ex. 1074: Japanese Patent No. 60-153779, entitled "Nutritional Supplement" ("Fukuoka "); Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1075	<input type="checkbox"/>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775
Filing Date	2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim
Art Unit	1651
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

19	Certified translation of Ex. 1076: Japanese Patent Publication No. H08-231391, entitled "Medicine for Improvement of Dementia Symptoms" ("Yasawa"); Certificate of Translation provided as Ex. 1077.	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	Declaration of Bjorn Ole Haugsgjerd in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Haugsgjerd")	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	Declaration of Bjorn Ole Haugsgjerd submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Haugsgjerd '348 Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	Declaration of Dr. Albert Lee in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Lee")	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	Declaration of Dr. Albert Lee in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Lee")	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	Declaration of Dr. Chong Lee submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Yeboah Reexam Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	Declaration of Dr. Earl White submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("2011 White Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	Declaration of Dr. Ivar Storrø in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Storrø")	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	Declaration of Dr. Ivar Storrø in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Storrø")	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	Declaration of Dr. Jacek Jaczynski from inter partes reexamination of the parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Jaczynski Reexam. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
29	Declaration of Dr. Jaczynski submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 (Jaczynski '351 Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775
Filing Date	2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim
Art Unit	1651
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

30	Declaration of Dr. Jeff Moore in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Moore")	<input type="checkbox"/>
31	Declaration of Dr. Jeff Moore in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Moore")	<input type="checkbox"/>
32	Declaration of Dr. Richard van Breemen in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Van Breemen")	<input type="checkbox"/>
33	Declaration of Dr. Richard van Breemen in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Van Breemen")	<input type="checkbox"/>
34	Declaration of Dr. Shahidi submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 (Shahidi Reexam. Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
35	Declaration of Dr. Shahidi submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 (Shahidi '351 Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
36	Declaration of Dr. Suzanne Budge in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351 ("Budge")	<input type="checkbox"/>
37	Declaration of Dr. Suzanne Budge in Support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675 ("Budge")	<input type="checkbox"/>
38	Declaration of Dr. Thomas Brenna in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,278,351	<input type="checkbox"/>
39	Declaration of Dr. Thomas Brenna in support of Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 8,383,675	<input type="checkbox"/>
40	Declaration of Dr. Thomas Gundersen submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Gundersen Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775
Filing Date	2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim
Art Unit	1651
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

41	Declaration of Dr. Tina Sampalis submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 (Sampalis")	<input type="checkbox"/>
42	Declaration of Dr. Van Breemen submitted during Ex parte Reexamination of the '351 patent (Van Breemen '351 Reexam. Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
43	Declaration of Dr. Van Breemen submitted during Inter partes Reexamination of the '348 patent (Van Breemen '348 Reexam Decl.)	<input type="checkbox"/>
44	Declaration of Dr. Yeboah submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Yeboah Reexam Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
45	Declaration of Dr. Yeboah submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 ("Yeboah '351 Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
46	Eichberg, "Lecithin – It Manufacture and Use in the Fat and Oil Industry," Oils and Soap 51-54, 1939 ("Eichberg")	<input type="checkbox"/>
47	Expert Witness Report of Dr. Theodore Welch submitted in relation to ITC Investigation No. 337-TA-877 ("Welch")	<input type="checkbox"/>
48	Farkas, Composition and Physical State of Phospholipids in Calanoid Copepods from India and Norway, LIPIDS, Vol. 23, No. 6 (1988)	<input type="checkbox"/>
49	Final Prospectus dated May 11, 2001 ("Final Prospectus")	<input type="checkbox"/>
50	Fisheries Agency, General Report on Research and Development of Techniques in Processing and Utilization of Marine Products, Chapter 6, Development of technology for recovery of valuable substances (astaxanthin) from krill, by Takao Fujita, pp. 273-307 (March 1985); Japanese language document	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button [Add](#)

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number	12057775
	Filing Date	2008-03-28
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim
	Art Unit	1651
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	
--------------------	--	-----------------	--

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775		
Filing Date	2008-03-28		
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
Art Unit	1651		
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

See attached certification statement.

The fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/J. Mitchell Jones/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2014-01-14
Name/Print	J. Mitchell Jones	Registration Number	44174

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775	
	Filing Date		2008-03-28	
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
	Art Unit	1651		
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
	Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

U.S.PATENTS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Patent Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button. Add

U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS						Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Publication Number	Kind Code <sup>1</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1					

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. Add

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS								Remove
Examiner Initial*	Cite No	Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup>	Country Code <sup>2</sup> j	Kind Code <sup>4</sup>	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T <sup>5</sup>
	1							<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button Add

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS				Remove
Examiner Initials*	Cite No	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.		T <sup>5</sup>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number		12057775
Filing Date		2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
Art Unit	1651	
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

1	Folch, et al., A Simple Method for the Isolation and Purification of Total Lipids from Animal Tissues. J. Biol. Chem., 226, 497-509 (1957)	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Grant of Request for Ex parte Reexamination of the '351 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Grit et al., Hydrolysis of phosphatidylcholine in aqueous liposome dispersions, Int. J. Pharmaceutics 50:1-6 (1989)	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Henderson et al., Lipid Composition of the Pineal Organ from Rainbow Trout ( <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i> ), Lipids, Vol. 29, No. 5, pp. 311-317 (1994) ("Henderson ")	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Herman and Groves, The Influence of Free Fatty Acid Formation on the pH of Phospholipid-Stabilized Triglyceride Emulsions, Pharmaceutical Research 10(5):774-776 (1993)	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	Itano Refrigerated Food Co., Ltd., Bio & High Technology Announcement and Natural Astaxanthin & Krill Lecithin, pp. 1-16 (on or before December 28, 1994) ("Itano")	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	Johnson and Lucas, Comparison of Alternative Solvents for Oils Extraction, JAOCS 60(2):229-242 (1983)	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	Le Grandois et al., Investigation of Natural Phosphatidylholine Sources: Separation and Identification by Liquid Chromatography -Electrospray Ionization-Tandem Mass Spectrometry (LC-ESI-MS2) of Molecular Species, J. Agric. Food Chem., 57, 6014-20 (2009) ("Le Grandois")	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	Lin et al., Effect of Dietary N-3 Fatty Acids Upon the PhospholipidMolecular Species of the Monkey Retina, Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 1994;35:794-803	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	Medina et al., C Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Monitoring of Free Fatty Acid Release After Fish Thermal Processing, J. Amer. Oil Chem. Soc. 71(5):479-82 (1994)	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	October 24, 2012 Office Action, '675 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number		12057775
Filing Date		2008-03-28
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
Art Unit	1651	
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD	

12	Office Action dated January 5, 2012, '351 patent	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Provisional Application No. 60/307,842 (Priority document for the '351 patent)	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Supplemental Declaration of Bjorn Ole Haugsgjerd submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Haugsgjerd '348 Supp. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	Supplemental Declaration of Dr. Earl White submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("White Supp. Reexam. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	Supplemental Declaration of Dr. Earl White submitted during prosecution of parent patent U.S. 8,278,351 ("White Supp. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	Supplemental Declaration of Dr. Thomas Gundersen submitted during inter partes reexamination of parent patent U.S. 8,030,348 ("Gundersen Supp. Decl.")	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	Suzuki, T. and Shibata, N., "The utilization of Antarctic krill for human food," Food Rev. Int'l, 6:1, 119-147 (1990) ("Suzuki")	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	Takahashi et al., Compositional Changes in Molecular Species of Fish Muscle Phosphatidylcholine During Storage, Bull. Fac. Fish. Hokkaido Univ. 37(1), 80-84 1986.	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	Takahashi et al., Molecular Species of Fish Muscle Lecithin, Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Scientific Fisheries 48 (12), 1803-1814 (1982)	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	Takahashi et al., Prediction of Relative Retention Value of the Individual Molecular Species of Diacyl Glycerolipid on High Performance Liquid Chromatography, Bull. Fac. Fish. Hokkaido Univ. 38(4), 398-404. 1987	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	Tanaka, Biosynthesis of 1,2-dieicosapentaenoyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphocholine in Caenorhabditis elegans, Eur. J. Biochem. 263, 189±194 (1999)	<input type="checkbox"/>

<b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b> ( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)	Application Number		12057775
	Filing Date		2008-03-28
	First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim	
	Art Unit		1651
	Examiner Name	D. K. Ware	
	Attorney Docket Number		AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD

23	Tocher, Chapter 6, Glycerophospholipid metabolism, Biochemistry and molecular biology of fishes, vol. 4, Hochachka and Mommsen (eds.)(1995)	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	Watanabe et al., Effective Components in Cuttlefish Meal and Raw Krill for Improvement of Quality of Red Seabream Pagrus major Eggs, Nippon Suisan Gakkaishi 57(4):681-694 (1991)("Watanabe")	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	WHO News and Activities, Bulletin of the World Health Organization, 73(4), pp. 547-51 (1995) ("WHO Bulletin")	<input type="checkbox"/>

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button Add

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

Examiner Signature	Date Considered
--------------------	-----------------

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	12057775		
Filing Date	2008-03-28		
First Named Inventor	Inge Bruheim		
Art Unit	1651		
Examiner Name	D. K. Ware		
Attorney Docket Number	AKBM-14409/US-5/ORD		

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

- See attached certification statement.
- The fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/J. Mitchell Jones/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2014-01-14
Name/Print	J. Mitchell Jones	Registration Number	44174

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.



- (72) BEAUDOIN, Adrien, CA  
(72) MARTIN, Geneviève, CA  
(71) UNIVERSITÉ DE SHERBROOKE, CA  
(51) Int.Cl.<sup>6</sup> C11B 1/10, A23J 1/04, A23D 9/02  
(54) **PROCEDE D'EXTRACTION DES LIPIDES DE TISSUS  
D'ANIMAUX AQUATIQUES PRODUISANT UN RESIDU  
DESHYDRATE**  
(54) **PROCESS FOR LIPID EXTRACTION OF AQUATIC ANIMAL  
TISSUES PRODUCING A DEHYDRATED RESIDUE**

(57) The procedure includes the suspension of freshly collected material in an equal volume of acetone under inert gas atmosphere. Lipids are extracted by successive acetone and ethanol treatments. The procedure produces two lipid fractions and a dry residue enriched in protein and other material insoluble in organic solvents. Recovery of total lipids is comparable or superior to the Folch et al. (1957) procedure. It has been tested with krill, Calanus and fish tissues.

**TITLE OF THE INVENTION**

**PROCESS FOR LIPID EXTRACTION OF AQUATIC ANIMAL TISSUES  
PRODUCING A DEHYDRATED RESIDUE**

**FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

The present invention relates to a method for lipid extraction of animal tissues and to the lipid and dry residue fractions obtained therefrom. More particularly, the present invention relates to a lipid extraction method using krill, *Calanus* and fish tissues as starting material.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION****Extraction process**

Fresh (or frozen) material (*Euphausia pacifica* and other species) is suspended in cold acetone for a given period of time at low temperature (5°C or lower). A ratio of krill-acetone 1:6 (w/v) and an incubation time of 2 h in acetone were found to be optimal. Alternatively the material can be kept in an equal volume of acetone at low temperature for long periods of time (months) under inert atmosphere. The size of the material is an important factor for the penetration of acetone. Indeed, it is preferable to grind material with dimensions superior to 5 mm before getting it in contact with acetone. The suspension is swirled for a short period of time (about 20 min) after acetone addition. After filtration on an organic solvent resistant filter (metal, glass or paper) the residue is washed with two volumes of pure acetone. The combined filtrates are evaporated under reduced pressure. The water residue obtained after evaporation is allowed to separate from the oil phase (fraction I) at low temperature. The solid residue collected on the filter is suspended and extracted with two volumes (original volume of frozen material) of 100% ethanol. The ethanol filtrate is evaporated leaving a second fraction of lipids (identified as fraction II).

**Variations of the process**

Variable volumes of acetone relative to the levels of sample can be used. It is also applicable to the volume of acetone used to wash and to the volume of ethanol used to extract. Incubation times in solvents may vary. Particle size affect the recovery of lipids and the material could be ground in various sizes of particles, depending on the grinder used. Temperature of the organic solvents and temperature of the sample are not critical parameters, but it is preferable to be as cold as possible.

### Methods

To compare the efficiency of the extraction process, a classical technique (Folch et al. 1957) implying chloroform and methanol was applied to krill. This is the standard of reference for the efficiency of the extraction process. Lipid recovery was estimated by suspending lipid fractions in small volumes of their original solvents and measuring by gravimetry small aliquots after evaporation.

To analyze lipid composition, small aliquots of the various extracts were loaded on silica-gel plates and fractionated by thin layer chromatography, TLC (Bowyer et al. 1962) with the following solvents. Neutral lipids: hexane, ethyl ether, acetic acid (90:10:1 v/v) and phospholipids: chloroform, methanol, water (80:25:2 v/v). Fatty acid composition of *E. pacifica* was analyzed by gas liquid chromatography, GLC (Bowyer et al. 1962) including some modifications to the original technique: 1h at 65°C instead of 2h at 80°C, three washes with hexane instead of two and no wash with water.

The dry residue is wetted with ethanol to facilitate a progressive rehydration of the proteins.

To get rid of traces of organic solvents, lipid fraction I and II are warmed (60°C for fraction I and 70°C for fraction II) for 5 min under inert atmosphere.

## Applications

The different fractions (oil, proteins, and others) of aquatic animal biomass extracted by the current procedure could be used in many fields:

### 1-Aquaculture

As mentioned in results, fatty acids 20:5 (eicosapentaenoic acid) and 22:6 (docosahexaenoic acid) are found in high concentrations in krill, *Calanus*, and fish. Farming fish on high quality marine oils rich in docosahexaenoic and eicosapentaenoic (EPA) acids is an efficient means of delivering these essential nutrients in human diets and also efficiently exploiting a strictly limited marine bioresource (Sargent 1997). Krill may be used as food supplement for fish and shrimp (Sargent 1997) because of its capacity to improve growth and survival capacity against diseases (Runge 1994), as pigmentation enhancer for ornamental fish species and as starter diet for marine and fresh water species (Prawn Hatchery Food 1997).

### 2-Nutraceuticals

Considering the beneficial effects of omega-3 fatty acids, the marine oils from krill, *Calanus* and fish could be used as dietary supplements to human diet. 22:6 *n*-3 fatty acid is essential for proper development of the brain and the eye (Sargent 1997). The beneficial effects of *n*-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids in reducing the incidence of cardiovascular disease by lowering plasma triacylglycerol level and altering platelet function towards a more anti-atherogenic state has been reviewed (Christensen 1994). Also, dietary krill oil, like fish oil, can suppress the development of autoimmune murine lupus: EPA substitutes for arachidonic acid, a substrate for cyclooxygenase thereby reducing the production of prostaglandins (Chandrasekar 1996). The effects of dietary supplementation with *w*-3 lipid-rich krill oil includes decreased expression of TGF $\beta$  in kidneys and of the oncogene-*c-ras* in splenocytes (Chandrasekar 1996). Krill oil has beneficial effects on life span and amelioration of renal disease similar to those previously described in studies with fish oil (Chandrasekar 1996).

### 3-Animal food

Feeding the animals with omega-3 fatty acids may increase the level of unsaturated fatty acids and decrease cholesterol levels of meat. This property is exploited in the poultry industry to improve the quality of eggs. *Calanus*, in particular, is a full of promise ingredient of domestic animal's food (Runge 1994).

### 4-Cosmetic industry

*Calanus* is used for the production of moisturizing creams (Runge 1994).

### 5-Medical applications

Krill may be used as a source of enzymes for medical application like the debridement of ulcers and wounds (Hellgren 1991) or to facilitate food digestion.

Finally, these marine products are also rich in liposoluble vitamins A, D, E and K and carotenoids that are extracted with lipids. The chitin of krill and *Calanus* could be exploited to protect plants against fungi. Also, marine oils contain unidentified antioxidants which may have potential therapeutic properties.

Other objects, advantages and features of the present invention will become more apparent upon reading of the following non-restrictive description of preferred embodiments with reference to the accompanying drawing which is exemplary and should not be interpreted as limiting the scope of the present invention.

## **DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT**

### **Results**

#### ***Note on experimental conditions***

The lipid extraction with acetone, then ethanol is practicable under different experimental conditions, as mentioned on page 1 of this document (variation of the process). Moreover, the majority of data shown in this document are from experiments made with sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v) incubated overnight at 4°C and with sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v) incubated 1h at 4°C. In addition, no material has been ground in most experiments. Only later, tests have been made to standardize the method for extraction of lipids with acetone, then ethanol. As shown in Figure 9 and 11, it appears that optimal ratios of sample-solvent are 1:6 (w/v) for acetone and 1:2 (w/v) for ethanol. Figure 10 and Figure 12 show that optimal incubation times are 2 h for the first solvent and 30 min for the second. Grinding has been experimented and it is clear that solvents have a better impact on ground material, as shown in Table 5. Then, experimental conditions are specified for each experiment.

Diagram 1 illustrates the procedure of lipid extraction from frozen krill which is the same used with dry krill and other fresh species as *Calanus*, mackerel, trout and herring.

#### ***Interpretation of results***

Table 1 shows that higher levels of lipids are extracted by acetone followed by ethanol as compared to the classical procedure of Folch et al. (1957). The same information is found in Table 5 concerning another krill species (*Megayctiphanes norvegica*). Back to Table 1, one can see that the combination of acetone and ethanol as a single step did not improve the extraction process.

Table 2 shows the results of lipid extraction from frozen *Euphausia pacifica*, a species of krill from Pacific Ocean. Assuming an eighty percent content of water, the lipid content is comparable to dry krill as shown in Table 1. Samples of *E. pacifica* incubated in different ratios of acetone at 4°C for 112 days have been inoculated on NA medium containing Bacto beef extract 0,3%, Bacto peptone 0,5% and Bacto agar 1,5% (Difco 1984) then incubated at room temperature or 4°C for 18 days. No significant bacterial growth was observed at a ratio of 1 volume of acetone per gram of krill. At higher proportions of acetone (2 volumes and 5 volumes), there was no bacterial growth at all, which means that acetone preserves krill samples. Acetone is known as an efficient bactericidal and viricidal agent (Goodman et al. 1980).

Table 3 shows the yield of lipids from *M. norvegica*. The percentage of lipids is lower (3,67 %) than for *E. pacifica* (4,04 %) shown in Table 2. These variations can be attributable to the season of catch.

Table 4 shows the krill composition obtained from experiments 3 and 4 with frozen *E. pacifica* (Table 2). One finds about 83% of water, 4% of lipids and 12% of dry residue.

Table 5 shows the influence of grinding on the efficiency of extraction of *M. norvegica* lipids. These extractions were carried out under optimal conditions and show the definite advantage of the procedure over the classical method (4,46 % versus 3,30 %). It also shows that grinding may be an important factor when the species is large (4,46% versus 3,53 %).

Considerable quantity of lipids were obtained from *Calanus* (Table 6). Some variations in *Calanus* species composition may explain the variations between experiments 1 and 2 (8,22 % and 10,90 % of fresh weight).

When the technique was applied to fish (mackerel) peripheral tissues (mainly muscles) or viscera, an amount of lipids was extracted (Table 7) but it appeared less efficient than the classical method since extractions of the residue with the latter technique allowed us to recover less lipid. Overall, our technique would allow us to exploit parts of fish that are usually wasted after the withdrawal of fillets of the fish or lipid extracts from fishes not used for human consumption. Those fish tissues not used after the transformation of the fish for human consumption could be stored in acetone, then lipids could be extracted with our process. Extraction of lipids from trout and herring were carried out in parallel with the classical method. Results appear in Table 8 and 9. The yield is not significantly different for the viscera whereas with peripheral tissues (muscles) the classical technique is superior (14,93 % versus 6,70 %). Technique using acetone followed by ethanol for trout and herring (and maybe for other species) seems applicable as well as for mackerel. Table 11 shows the suggested procedure for lipid extraction of aquatic animal tissues.

Figures 1 to 4 show chromatograms of fatty acid composition of *E. pacifica* lipids. On each of them, high proportions of 20:5 and 22:6 fatty acids (characteristic of marine oils) are noticeable and represented by two distinct peaks. The concentration of the sample on Figure 4 was lower than the others, so the peaks don't have the same amplitude. With retention times and amounts gave by the chromatograph, identification and compilation of the majority of the fatty acids have been done (see Table 10).

Figures 5 to 8 (TLC) show a higher proportion of neutral lipids as compared to phospholipids in marine oils.

The influence of incubation time on the efficiency of the acetone to extract lipids from *E. pacifica* is illustrated in Figure 9. Extraction is already completed at 2 h. With this time, we proceeded to determine the influence of the sample-acetone ratio (Figure 10). Results show that a ratio of 1:6 (w/v) produce the best yield. The second lipid extraction is carried out with ethanol. The incubation time in this solvent should be at least 30 min as indicated by the results of Figure 11. The volume of ethanol does not appear to be critical since the same yield was obtained with different volumes of ethanol.

One of the inventors, Mr Adrien Beaudoin, has tasted the different lipid fractions. No side effect was observed. The fraction I has the taste of the cod liver oil and the insoluble material tastes like salty shrimps.

### DIAGRAM 1. KRILL LIPID EXTRACTION PROCESS

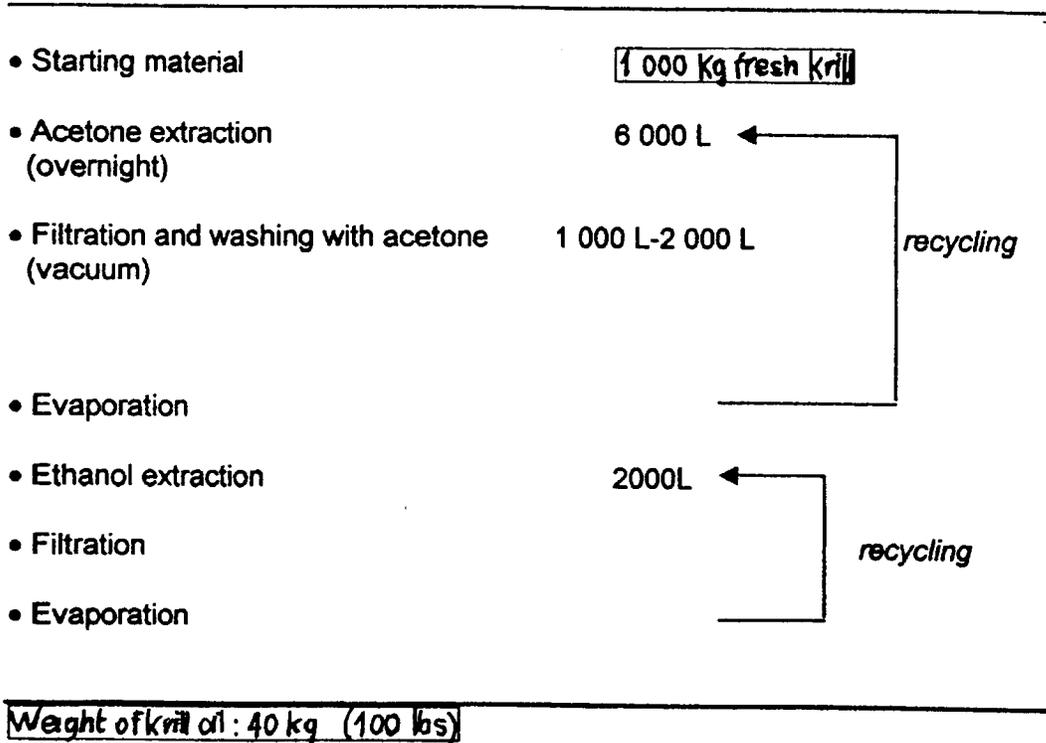


TABLE 1. EXTRACTION OF DRY KRILL LIPIDS (*E. pacifica*)

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-	acetone <sup>a)</sup> ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	8,00 7,60	15,60
2-	"	19,70 6,90	26,60
3-	"	8,15 11,20	19,35
4-	"	6,80 13,60	20,40
			<b><math>\bar{x}=20,49</math></b> <b><math>\sigma= 3,95</math></b>
5-	Chlor : MeOH <sup>c)</sup>		15,50
6-	"		14,90
			<b><math>\bar{x}=15,20</math></b> <b><math>\sigma= 0,30</math></b>
7-	Combined acetone-ethanol <sup>d)</sup>		14,30

Determinations in triplicates (variation < 5 %).

<sup>a)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v), no incubation.

<sup>b)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v),  
incubated 1 night at 4°C.

<sup>c)</sup> :Folch et al. 1957

<sup>d)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-acetone-ethanol ratio of 1:5:5, no incubation.

**TABLE 2. EXTRACTION OF FROZEN KRILL LIPIDS (*E. pacifica*)**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-	acetone <sup>a)</sup> ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	2,26 2,14	4,40
2-	"	2,25 1,13	3,38
3-	"	2,71 1,80	4,50 <sup>c)</sup>
4-	"	2,94 1,45	4,39 <sup>c)</sup>
5-	"	2,44 1,43	3,87
6-	"	2,54 1,23	3,77
7-	"	2,58 1,46	4,04
8-	"	2,48 1,39	3,87
9-	"	2,46 1,72	4,18
			$\bar{x}=4,04$ $\sigma=0,34$

Determinations in triplicates (variation < 5 %).

<sup>a)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v),  
incubated 1 night at 4°C.

<sup>b)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v), incubated 1h at 4°C.

<sup>c)</sup> :See Table 4 for total composition.

**TABLE 3. EXTRACTION OF FROZEN KRILL LIPIDS  
(*M. norvegica*)**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-	acetone <sup>a)</sup>	1,82	3,64
	ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	1,82	
2-	"	1,15	3,50
		2,35	
3-	"	1,68	3,87
		2,19	
			$\bar{x}=3,67$
			$\sigma=0,15$

Determinations in triplicates (variation < 5 %).

<sup>a)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v),  
incubated 1 night at 4°C.

<sup>b)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v), incubated 1 h at 4°C.

**TABLE 4. FROZEN KRILL COMPOSITION (*E. pacifica*)  
on a fresh weight basis**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Lipids</u>	<u>Insoluble material</u>	<u>Water</u>
3-	4,50	12,50	83,00
4-	4,39	11,50	84,11
	$\bar{x}=4,44$ $\sigma=0,05$	$\bar{x}=12,00$ $\sigma= 0,50$	$\bar{x}=83,55$ $\sigma= 0,55$

Determinations in triplicates (variation < 5 %).  
Experience numbers refer to Table 2.

**TABLE 5. INFLUENCE OF GRINDING ON EXTRACTION OF FROZEN KRILL LIPIDS (*M. norvegica*)**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Krill ground before 1<sup>st</sup> extraction</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-	acetone <sup>a)</sup> ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	yes	3,10 1,07	4,17
2-	"	no	2,14 1,39	3,53
3-	"	yes	3,32 1,14	4,46
4-	Chlor : MeOH <sup>c)</sup>	yes		3,30
5-	"	yes		3,26

Determinations in triplicates (variation < 5 %).

<sup>a)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:6, incubated 2 h at 4°C

<sup>b)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:2, incubated 30 min at 4°C.

<sup>c)</sup> :Folch et al. 1957.

**TABLE 6. EXTRACTION OF FROZEN *Calanus* LIPIDS  
(*Calanus* sp.)**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-	acetone <sup>a)</sup>	6,18	8,22
	ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	2,04	
2-	"	8,64	10,90
		2,26	
			$\bar{x}=9,56$
			$\sigma=1,34$

Determinations in triplicates (variation < 5 %).

<sup>a)</sup>: Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v),  
incubated 1 night at 4°C.

<sup>b)</sup>: Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v),  
incubated 1 h at 4°C.

**TABLE 7. EXTRACTION OF FRESH FISH.LIPIDS (Mackerel)**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-viscera fish 1	acetone <sup>a)</sup> ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	6,11 0,59	6,70
2-tissues fish 1	"	3,78 0,91	4,69
3-viscera fish 2	"	10,46 0,57	11,03
4-tissues fish 2	"	6,65 1,41	8,06
5-viscera fish 3	"	8,39 0,66	9,05
6-tissues fish 3	"	5,27 0,97	6,24
7-viscera fish 4	"	8,47 0,69	9,16
8-tissues fish 4	"	8,40 1,02	9,42
9-viscera fish 1	Chlor.MeOH <sup>c)</sup>		0,52
10-tissues fish 1	"		1,45

<sup>a)</sup>: Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v),  
incubation time:

-fish 1 viscera: 4h, fish 1 tissues: 23h

-fish 2 viscera: 23h45, fish 2 tissues: 45h30

-fish 3 viscera: 8 days 2h20, fish 3 tissues: 8 days 22h30

-fish 4 viscera: 17 days 23h, fish 4 tissues: 18 days 2h25

<sup>b)</sup>: Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v), incubated 1h at 4°C.

<sup>c)</sup>: Folch et al. 1957.

**TABLE 8. EXTRACTION OF FRESH FISH LIPIDS (Trout)**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-viscera	acetone <sup>a)</sup>	34,70	36,88
	ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	2,18	
2-tissues	"	5,53	6,70
		1,17	
3-viscera	Chlor:MeOH <sup>c)</sup>		39,81
4-tissues	"		14,93

Determinations in triplicates (variation < 5 %).

<sup>a)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v),  
incubated 1 night at 4°C.

<sup>b)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v), incubated 1 h at 4°C.

<sup>c)</sup> :Folch et al. 1957.

**TABLE 9. EXTRACTION OF FRESH FISH LIPIDS (Herring)**

<u>Exp. No.</u>	<u>Technique</u>	<u>Yield (%)</u>	<u>Total (%)</u>
1-tissues and viscera	acetone <sup>a)</sup>	2,09	2,77
	ethanol <sup>b)</sup>	0,68	
2-tissues and viscera	Chlor:MeOH <sup>c)</sup>		5,95

Determination in triplicates (variation < 5 %).

<sup>a)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-acetone ratio of 1:9 (w/v), incubated 1 night at 4°.

<sup>b)</sup> :Extraction made with a sample-ethanol ratio of 1:4 (w/v), incubated 1 h at 4°C.

<sup>c)</sup> :Folch et al. 1957.